

ARCHIL ORDENIDZE

პოეტური ღირსების

ენა

LANGUAGE

OF POETIC DIGNITY

SELF-INSTRUCTION MANUAL OF THE GEORGIAN LANGUAGE

INITIAL COURSE

SECTION I: COLLECTION OF LESSONS

TBILISI

2023

Work on the section of collection of lessons was completed on October 25, 2023

"The voice of Georgian songs is pleasant; one of them was translated for me word for word; It seems to have been composed in modern times; there is some kind of oriental nonsense in it, which has its own poetic dignity ... "

Alexander Pushkin (May 27, 1799 - January 29, 1837)

An excerpt from the work of A. S. Pushkin "Travels to Arzrum during the campaign of 1829" *

* Information sources:

"Pushkin and the Georgian public". Pages 100-101. The author - Vano Shaduri. Publishing House "Literatura da khelovneba". Tbilisi. 1966.

"Aragva makes noise before me..." (175 years since the birth of A. S. Pushkin). Pages 49-50. Compiled by V. Shaduri. Publishing house "Merani". Tbilisi. 1974

"The Georgian language expresses everything that can be expressed by any language of the globe... The Georgian language highly artistically embodies every thought, without distorting or perverting it... The Georgian language is so rich that in its internal properties it is a language of world significance.. .» **

Nikolai Marr (December 25, 1864 / January 6, 1865 - December 20, 1934)

Professor of St. Petersburg University (since 1901)

Full member of the Russian Academy of Sciences (since 1912)

** Information source:

"Self-instruction manual of the Georgian language (elementary course)". Page 3. The author is Giorgi Tsibakhashvili. Publishing house of the Tbilisi University. Tbilisi. 1978.

"Eleventh session of the Intergovernmental Committee for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage at its meeting from 28 November to 2 December 2016:

1. Notes that Georgia has nominated the living culture of the three writing systems of the Georgian alphabet for inclusion in the Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity...

2. Notes that the living culture of the three writing systems of the Georgian alphabet is practiced by the vast majority of the Georgian population as an important part of their cultural identity and self-expression...

3. Decides that the inclusion of the living culture of the three writing systems of the Georgian alphabet in the representative list is likely to contribute to the consideration of the writing systems as intangible cultural heritage throughout the world...

4. Includes the living culture of the three writing systems of the Georgian alphabet in the Representative List of the Intangible Cultural Heritage of Humanity..." ***

*** Information source: <http://www.unesco.org/culture/ich/en/decisions/11.COM/10.B.13>

Content:

Name of components:	Page numbers:
Introduction	7-12
Lesson #1 (Introduction to the Georgian letters)	13-15
Lesson #2 (Sounds of the Georgian letters)	16-27
Lesson #3 (Names of the Georgian letters)	28-35
Lesson #4 (How to write the Georgian letters)	36-51
Lesson #5 (Difficult-to-pronounce the Georgian letters)	52-56
Lesson #6 (Difficult-to-pronounce the Georgian letters)	57-59
Lesson #7 (The Georgian names of countries and regions)	60-64
Lesson #8 (The Georgian words about origin)	65-68
Lesson #9 (The Georgian words about origin)	69-72
Lesson #10 (The Georgian relative adjectives)	73-76
Lesson #11 (The Georgian words about places of activity or location of a person)	77-80
Lesson #12 (The Georgian words about human professions)	81-84
Lesson #13 (The Georgian adverbs of mode of action)	85-88
Lesson #14 (The Georgian verbal action names)	89-92
Lesson #15 (The Georgian names of relatives and acquaintances)	93-96
Lesson #16 (Names and surnames of the Georgian poets and writers)	97-101
Lesson #17 (Names and surnames of the English-speaking poets and writers)	102-106
Lesson No. 18 (Names and surnames of the participants of the educational process in Georgian)	107-112
Lesson #19 (The Georgian words about parts of the human body)	113-115
Lesson #20 (The Georgian words about nature and wildlife)	116-118
Lesson #21 (The Georgian words about fruits and vegetables)	119-121

Lesson #22 (The Georgian words for time)	122-124
Lesson #23 (The Georgian pronouns)	125-128
Lesson #24 (The Georgian pronouns)	129-132
Lesson #25 (The Georgian words in the plural)	133-136
Lesson #26 (The Georgian grammatical cases)	137-140
Lesson #27 (The Georgian vocative case)	141-145
Lesson #28 (The Georgian postpositions)	146-152
Lesson #29 (The Georgian postpositions)	153-158
Lesson #30 (The Georgian postpositions)	159-166
Lesson #31 (The Georgian postpositions)	167-174
Lesson #32 (The Georgian words about simple cardinal numbers)	175-177
Lesson #33 (The Georgian words about multiplicity)	178-183
Lesson #34 (The Georgian words about simple ordinal numbers)	184-189
Lesson #35 (The Georgian words about multiplicity)	190-195
Lesson #36 (The Georgian words about fractional parts)	196-202
Lesson #37 (The Georgian words about compound cardinal numbers)	203-210
Lesson #38 (The Georgian words about compound ordinal numbers)	211-216
Lesson #39 (The Georgian linking verbs in the present tense)	217-225
Lesson 40 (Let's talk in Georgian about ourselves and our relatives)	226-230
Lesson #41 (The Georgian linking verbs in the past tense)	231-238
Lesson #42 (The Georgian linking verbs in the future tense)	239-246
Lesson #43 (The Georgian sentences about arithmetic operations with numbers)	247-253
Lesson #44 (The Georgian linking verbs in interrogative sentences)	254-259
Lesson #45 (The Georgian verbs in present tense)	260-268
Lesson #46 (The Georgian verbs in the past tense)	269-276
Lesson #47 (The Georgian verbs in the future tense)	277-284

Lesson #48 (The Georgian verbs in interrogative sentences)	285-290
Lesson #49 (The Georgian verbs in present tense)	291-298
Lesson #50 (The Georgian verbs in the past tense)	299-306
Lesson #51 (The Georgian verbs in the future tense)	307-314
Lesson #52 (The Georgian verbs in interrogative sentences)	315-320
Lesson #53 (The Georgian prefixes)	321-324
Lesson #54 (The familiar wishes in Georgian)	325-333
Lesson #55 (The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences)	334-343
Lesson #56 (The Georgian interrogative sentences with pronouns)	344-353
Lesson #57 (The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences)	354-362
Lesson #58 (The negative particles in Georgian sentences)	363-372
Lesson #59 (The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences)	373-381
Lesson #60 (The Georgian interrogative sentences with pronouns)	382-390
Lesson #61 (The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences)	391-399
Lesson #62 (The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences)	400-408
Lesson #63 (The negative particles in Georgian sentences)	409-418
Lesson #64 (The Georgian compound sentences)	419-426
Lesson #65 (The Georgian words from the vocabulary of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze)	427-430
Lesson #66 (The Georgian words from the vocabulary of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze)	431-433
Lesson #67 (The Georgian words from the vocabulary of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze)	434-436
Lesson #68 (The Georgian poem by Galaktion Tabidze)	437-442
Information about the literature used	443-453
Information about the author of the self-instruction manual	454-457

That is my work I dedicate to memory
of my mother - Tamara Markoishvili-Ordenidze,
a teacher of Russian language and literature

Introductory part

(Organizational and preparatory stage before the beginning of the learning process)

That self-instruction manual entitled "Language of Poetic Dignity" (initial course) is intended for any persons:

- a) who live outside of Georgia (Knowledge of the Georgian language is not required for these persons);
- b) who do not have any skills in relation to Georgian speech (These persons do not understand Georgian speech, and therefore cannot write and read Georgian);
- c) who are fluent in English (These persons can read and understand English words);
- d) who have a desire to learn Georgian speech and Georgian writing (These persons are ready to sacrifice their free time from work or study and their financial and / or material resources for the sake of learning the Georgian language).

The peculiarity of this manual lies in the fact that an attempt was made to offer a learning process based on the use of methods of both formal and non-formal education. Consequently, the content of the lessons of this manual predetermines exclusively the joint (collective) study of the Georgian language by those persons mentioned in the previous paragraph.

It is also logical that every case requires a leader. Moreover, this facilitator, if possible, should always try to find another facilitator for himself. The practical advantages of this approach are that it is easier for two supervisors to help students during their work in small groups or to answer specific questions of individual participants in the educational process. With two facilitators, it is easier to change the pace and rhythm of the session so that the participants do not lose interest and are constantly waiting for something new. Two facilitators can help each other if the lesson suddenly does not go according to plan. In addition, it is always easier to assess the lessons done with someone than alone.

Who can be in charge of the learning process? - The lead manager can be a coach, a school teacher or teacher of advanced training courses, a seminar leader, a member of a church discussion group, or simply a person who is fluent in English, familiar with the basics of linguistics and pedagogy, and also has the practical skills to lead the work of a group of individuals.

Another no less important organizational issue is the number of students in the study group and the duration of the lessons. Frankly, the more people, the better for consolidating the knowledge that people can acquire during the educational process. After all, a group of students studying the Georgian language can become a kind of hearth and distributor of Georgian speech. On the other hand, the lessons of the educational process cannot be too long, because study can become tedious and painful. To determine the number of listeners, the author of this educational process is guided by the recommendations of the European textbook "Compass" (this textbook was developed and approved by the Council of Europe in 2001 for teaching human rights with the participation of young people and using interactive non-formal learning

methods). The list of training sessions is dominated by lessons, where the number of students ranges from 12 to 23 persons (the average number is 17.5 units). For this number of students, the duration of a lesson ranges from 60 to 120 minutes (average duration is 90 minutes).

From what has been said, the following follows:

- 1) the optimal number of participants in the group of the educational process is 18 people;
- 2) the optimal duration of the lessons of the educational process is 90 minutes.

This manual in almost all lessons proposes the division of students into 6 groups. Thus, the presence of 18 students in one group means the formation of 6 groups of 3 people. Sometimes the leaders of the study group may join the training sessions. In such cases, these facilitators will appear as the 19th and 20th participants in the direct learning process (The author of this manual, when describing the lessons, assumes that 18 listeners and 2 facilitators participate in the learning process).

Professional educators may object that 18 students in one group will be too crowded. It is very difficult to manage so many people and involve them in a productive learning process. All possible difficulties can be overcome if the learning process is not only interesting, but also easy and fun using interactive non-formal learning methods.

In the space of the Council of Europe, the teaching aids "Compass" and "Compasito" are widely used, which are based on the use of interactive teaching methods. The essence of these methods is that:

- a) they provide an opportunity to activate not only a person's thinking, but also his feelings and emotions;
- b) they contribute to an increase in the percentage of perception of educational material;
- c) they cover joint learning (learning through cooperation), when both trainers (leaders of the learning process) and students are active subjects of the learning process;
- d) they put up a trainer (leading the educational process) in the role of an experienced organizer of the educational process;
- e) they encourage the rooting of the principle of mutual assistance in the actions of all participants in the educational process (they exchange information among themselves and jointly solve problems).

To the above, we can add the following: in international educational and business practice, it is well known that a person is able to remember:

- a) 20% of what he read;
- b) 30% of what he heard;
- c) 40% of what he saw;
- d) 50% of what he said;
- e) 60% of what he did;
- f) 90% of what he heard, saw and did.

That is why the author of this manual adapted interactive teaching methods to the process of learning the Georgian language. Otherwise, it is practically impossible to maintain a group of students in the amount of 18 people during a long educational process. For various reasons, the study group may lose some students, but the group must remain at least 12 students: in this case, it is possible to form 6 groups of 2 people each. At the same time, each group of 2 students will perform the same amount of tasks that was intended for a group of 3 people.

Quite naturally and logically, the following questions may arise: why is this manual better than many other Georgian language textbooks intended for a English-speaking audience? How competent is the textbook, given that the author is a connoisseur of interactive teaching methods, but not a specialist in linguistics? The author of this manual could answer these fair questions as follows: the main, informative part of this manual is compiled using materials from four officially published sources. One self-instruction manual for Georgian language was published in imperial Russia, and the other during the short-term independence of Georgia after the collapse of Russia in 1918. Widely are used materials from the textbook of the Georgian language, which was published during Soviet Georgia (a detailed list of used literature can be found at the end of this manual). Taking into account the characteristics of the audience (it completely lacks any Georgian speech skills), the author compiled his manual based on two well-known ways to achieve the goal: “step by step from simple to complex” and “you drive quietly, you'll keep going”. The sequence of lessons is built in such a way that in most cases the next lesson follows logically from the previous lesson. The vast majority of lessons consists of explanatory, practical and presentation parts, which will serve the cause of maximum involvement in the educational process of all participants without exception. In other words, a combination of different means of perceiving information is proposed to achieve the highest possible rate of assimilation of educational materials. The author of this manual tries to briefly and clearly state the theoretical grammatical rules to the students so that they quickly move on to active practical activities (in the description of each lesson, the obligatory explanations of a lecture character for the presenters are highlighted with quotation marks).

And one more remark: the working language of the educational process is the English language. However, if all participants in the educational process who speak English prefer oral speech in their local mother tongue, then during the lessons it is possible to use this language sometimes for oral explanations.

Let's now move on to some practical issues:

The question may also arise: for whom is this manual intended? Before answering this question, one should remember the age spacing (periodization), approved in 1965 by the Academy of Pedagogical Sciences of the USSR. Approved spacing distinguishes the following age groups:

Age spaces (periodization)			
Nº	Name of the age period	The time span for men	The time span for women
1	Newborn age	From 1 to 10 days	From 1 to 10 days
2	Age of infant	From 10 days to 1 year	From 10 days to 1 year
3	Age of the early childhood	From 1 to 2 years	From 1 to 2 years
4	Age of the first period of childhood	From 3 to 7 years	From 3 to 7 years
5	Age of the second period of childhood	From 8 to 14 years	From 8 to 11 years
6	Adolescence	From 14 to 16 years	From 12 to 15 years
7	Youthful age	From 17 to 21 years	From 16 to 20 years
8	First average age	From 22 to 35 years	From 21 to 35 years
9	Second Average Age	From 36 to 60 years	From 36 to 55 years
10	Advanced age	From 61 to 75 years	From 56 to 75 years
11	Old age	From 76 to 90 years	From 76 to 90 years
12	Age of centenarians	Older than 90 years	Older than 90 yearsf

It is clear from the above table that the target age groups for the learning process can be people from adolescence to the elderly. The age period from 12 to 60 years can be divided into the following intervals:

1st age group: from 12 to 16 years;

2nd age group: 16 to 20 years;

3rd age group: from 20 to 24 years;

4th age group: from 24 to 28 years;

5th age group: from 28 to 32 years;

6th age group: from 32 to 36 years;

7th age group: from 36 to 40 years;

8th age group: from 40 to 44 years;

9th age group: from 44 to 48 years;

10th age group: from 48 to 52 years;

11th age group: from 52 to 56 years;

12th age group: from 56 to 60 years;

In the process of forming a group of students of the educational process, you can adhere to the following rule: first of all, you must try to assemble a group of people belonging to one of the 12 age groups. In extreme cases, the group of listeners can be replenished at the expense of persons belonging to adjacent age groups (for example, you can create a group of representatives of the 1st and 2nd age groups, from the 2nd, 3rd and 4th age groups and etc).

Where can the learning process take place? – The ideal situation is when the training sessions are held on the premises of educational institutions (for example, Georgian language groups could use the school infrastructure after the completion of the lessons as part of the compulsory curriculum). In addition, you can use other facilities (for example, village clubs in villages and similar buildings in cities, private apartments with spacious rooms).

When can training sessions take place? - It is clear that outside of Georgia, the study of the Georgian language can be purely voluntary. Classes can be held in free time from work or study. Basically, it's about the evening hours of the day. Training sessions should be held under the condition of the same activity of literally all participants in the learning process. Classes should not be tedious for students. On the other hand, haste in this matter will not bring benefits.

It would be ideal to observe the following rule: one day - one lesson. However, in practice, sometimes it will be necessary to allocate two or even three training days to master the educational material of the same lesson (in other words, the educational material of one lesson can be divided into two or three parts and separate training days can be devoted to these parts). In addition, taking into account the wishes of the listeners themselves, classes can be held three times a week (For example: Monday, Wednesday, Friday; Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday) or twice a week (For example: Monday and Thursday; Tuesday and Friday; Wednesday and Saturday).

In addition, the following rule should be followed: if one 90-minute lesson (say, on Monday) is enough to familiarize and assimilate half of the entire educational material of a lesson, then the next 90-minute lesson should be devoted to the other half of this educational material (for example, Wednesday or Thursday). However, if you can see that a little extra time (say, 20-30 minutes) is required to familiarize and assimilate all the educational material of a lesson, then it makes sense to extend the 90-minute lesson by another 20-30 minutes (but this should be done with subject to the consent of all participants in the educational process).

It should be noted that this training manual does not oblige listeners to perform any homework. There is no guarantee that all students will be able to cope with such tasks at the proper level. In this case, there may be a situation when part of the time of the next lesson will again have to be given to the material that has already been traversed. Therefore, instead of compulsory home lessons, the lessons of this training manual include mandatory control exercises that are performed during the lesson with the participation of all, without exception, listeners. Both the facilitators and each of the participants in the educational process should make sure that all students have correctly learned the educational material they have completed. We can say that the participants of the educational process must adhere to the well-known motto - "One for all, all for one." So, from one lesson to the next one, students will do their own business in accordance with the well-known motto: "Do business, walk boldly!" We repeat that this approach to the learning process makes it possible to make sure that every participant in the learning process has adequately learned the educational material that has been passed. This circumstance allows the leaders of the educational process, without losing time, to begin the next lesson with the explanation of the new teaching material.

What should be the material support of the learning process? - Printed versions of this training manual are needed only for those persons who will become the leaders of the educational process. This manual consists of two parts. The main part (Section I) contains a list of lessons, where a description of each educational lesson is given. The additional part

(Section II) provides a list of supplements to lessons that are subject to reproduction in the form of copies. These copies should be distributed to the trainees for practical exercises. Certainly space is required. An integral part of the manual is also a video film called “ქართული ანბანი” (“Georgian alphabet”). In the training room, where 20 people can freely accommodate, you will need:

1. 20 chairs for all participants in the learning process (18 students and 2 trainers);
2. 6 study tables for group work (meaning a study table, around which 3 people can work freely in a sitting position);
3. Computer equipment for showing a video film via the Internet or a CD (this equipment will be needed only during the first four lessons when a video film is to be shown);
4. Xerox for copying those pages of annexes to the lessons that are necessary for group practical work;
5. A projector to display on a large screen the various pages of Section I of the study guide when the facilitators need to provide clarifications on specific topics being discussed;
6. Educational board for writing with chalk or a special marker;
7. Flip sheets for writing with markers;
8. Large screen for displaying the video and various pages of Section I of the study guide using a projector;
9. Adhesive tape or buttons for hanging already used flip sheets on the walls of the room;
10. Scissors;
11. Black markers for listeners (18-20 pieces and 10 pieces in stock);
12. Chalk and/or special markers for the leaders of the educational process;
13. An object that looks like a microphone;
14. Certificates that can be awarded to those participants in the educational process who will be able to go through the entire educational cycle from beginning to end.

After the completion of the organizational and preparatory activities, the participants in the educational process can proceed directly to the training activities.

Lesson One

Introduction to the Georgian letters

The first lesson is opened by the facilitator, who says the following:

“The group is starting to learn Georgian language with the help of a manual authored by Archil Ordenidze, an expert of non-formal education.”

The first lesson is a kind of first meeting, and the first meeting is a moment of acquaintance. All participants of the educational process, that is, both presenters and 18 listeners, participate in the process of acquaintance. To introduce the members of the study group, you can use a method called "Microphone". The essence of this method is as follows: a group of 18 people sits in a circle (It is most convenient to sit in a semicircle with several rows). The leader of the educational process shows everyone a microphone from a tape recorder (or any object of a similar form) and explains:

“This “talking stick” that is passed around in a circle. Only the one who holds the "microphone" is allowed to speak, the rest should look at the speaker and listen to him. When one speaker has finished speaking, he should pass the "microphone" to the next speaker.

The leader of the educational process makes the presentation first, then, in turn, all 18 students introduce themselves, and at the end, the second leader of the educational group. So, what should the audience talk about? They should introduce themselves in English or in their native language and say a few words about themselves. For example:

"My name is James"

"My last name is Johnson"

“My place of residence is the city of Albany” or “My place of residence is the town of Aldora”

“My place of work is a factory (or something else)” or “My place of study is an institute (or something else)”

After completing the process of mutual acquaintance, the presenter makes a brief description of the Georgian language:

1. "The Georgian alphabet fully satisfies all the conditions that the alphabet must meet. It is the most perfect alphabet among all alphabets. Each sound is expressed by a separate sign, each symbol always denotes the same sound." *

2. "The Georgian alphabet fully demonstrates the abundance of sounds and the versatility of the Georgian language; each individual sound corresponds to a certain letter, each sound is pronounced accurately and clearly; from this point of view, no other can be compared with the Georgian alphabet." **

3. “The Georgian language is rich in words and grammatical forms. Together with the Mingrelian, Laz and Svanet languages, it constitutes the Kartvelian or Iberian family of languages, which has much in common with the Caucasian-Mountain languages. The Georgian language is one of the oldest cultural languages. Around the Nativity of Christ, it was already spoken by the entire population living in Georgia, in which the localities already had Georgian names, as can be seen from the geographical nomenclature preserved by Strabo, Pliny, Ptolemy and other Greco-Roman geographers. The

Georgian language early became the language of administration, church and writing not only among the peoples of the Kartvelian family, but also among the Abkhazians and Ossetians” ***

4. “The Georgian language is the successor of the Iberian language, which, in turn, is connected with the Sumerian language by its roots. The Georgian language developed and improved in the conditions of close coexistence with such ancient and cultural languages as Armenian, Ancient Greek, Old Persian, Byzantine-Greek, Middle Persian (Pahlavi), New Persian, Turkish, Russian” ****

5. “Georgia presents a living linguistic museum in the form of dialects and subdialects. The main dialects of the Georgian language are:

- Kartli (with Meskh and Javakh dialects)
- Kakheti (with a Kizik dialect) and very close to it Ingiloy (in Azerbaijan) and Fereydan (in Iran)
- Pshavi
- Khevsuri
- Tushi
- Mokhevi
- Mtiuli
- Imereti (with Lechkhum dialect)
- Rachi
- Gurian and very close to it Imerkhevi (in Turkey) and Adjarian" *****

* Author of the quote: Baron P.K. Uslar (1816-1875) - Russian linguist, Corresponding Member of the Russian Academy of Sciences.

** Author of the quote: William Edward David Allen - English Orientalist (1901-1973)

*** Source of information: Encyclopedic Dictionary of Brockhaus and Efron, volume IXA, 798th page (article "Georgia"). Published in St. Petersburg (year of publication - 1893).

**** Source of information: Great Soviet Encyclopedia, volume 19, pages 608-618 (article "Georgian language"). Published in Moscow (editorial work on the 19th volume was completed on November 1, 1930).

***** Source of information: Great Soviet Encyclopedia, volume 13, pages 101-107 (article "Georgian language"). Published in Moscow (13th volume was signed for publication on June 27, 1952).

After this short introductory speech, at the end of the first lesson, the whole group can watch a video about Georgian letters called “ქართული ანბანი” (“Georgian alphabet”), which is presented as a separate video file (this video

file is used during the first four lessons of the educational process). In addition, the same film can be found on the Internet at: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rfTOTcTqf2I> . To display this film, you will need the appropriate computer equipment (possibly with an Internet connection), as well as a projector to enlarge the video image on a large screen.

The video is 4 minutes and 23 seconds long. This film, relatively speaking, consists of 33 episodes according to the number of letters of the modern Georgian alphabet. In the first episode, you can see how someone's hand writes the first Georgian letter Ⴑ on a white sheet. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds this very letter Ⴑ, immediately pronounces the name of the first Georgian letter. The letter Ⴑ has its own name ႱႱ, which is pronounced like the English letter combination AN. Three words are mentioned using the first Georgian letter (Georgian words ႱႱႱ, ႱႱႱႱႱ, ႱႱႱႱႱ are specifically mentioned, the English synonyms of which are the words ANA, AFRICA, AMERICA). This ends the first episode about the first Georgian letter Ⴑ and begins the next, second episode about the second Georgian letter, and so on. The purpose of the first viewing of this film is only one: to accustom the visual and auditory organs of listeners to the 33 Georgian letters and their pronunciations. During the next three lessons, this film will be an integral part of the learning process.

Watching the video film completes the first lesson.

Sounds of the Georgian letters

Before the start of the second lesson, both leaders of the learning process get acquainted in advance with table No. 1, as well as with the video film “Georgian alphabet”. It contains a list of 33 letters of the Georgian alphabet of the modern type and their corresponding pronunciations using the letters of the English and, in some cases, other Western alphabets. Columns 3 and 4 use explanations from “Georgian-English Dictionary and Phrasebook” (authors: Nicholas Awde and Thea Khitarishvili; printed by Hippocrene books, New York; year of printing – 2006) as well as several electronic sources:

- 1) https://mylanguages.org/georgian_alphabet.php
- 2) <https://www.busuu.com/en/dutch/alphabet>
- 3) <https://www.frenchtoday.com/blog/french-pronunciation/french-alphabet-sounds/#:~:text=The%20Alphabet%20in%20French,-First%20I've&text=a%2C%20b%2C%20c%2C%20d,%2C%20x%2C%20y%2C%20z>
- 4) https://www.rapidtables.com/math/symbols/greek_alphabet.html and [Greek alphabet letters & symbols](#)
- 5) <https://www.spanishdict.com/guide/spanish-alphabet-pronunciation>

Table #1

The Georgian alphabet (33 letters)			
Sequence number of the letters of the Georgian alphabet	Georgian letters	The pronunciation of the Georgian letter corresponds to the English phonetic transcription:	In pronunciation, the Georgian letter corresponds to the letter of English or other Western alphabet:
1	2	3	4
1	ა	a (ʌ)	1 st English letter a (in word “apple”), as well as 1 st Spanish letter A (This letter sounds like the “ah” sound you use to express realization in English word: “Ah”).
2	ბ	b	2 nd English letter b (in word: “boy”)
3	გ	g	7 th English letter g (in word: “gold”)
4	დ	d	4 th English letter d (in word: “dry”)

5	ჲ	e	5 th English letter e (in word: “ e lectricity”), as well as 5 th Spanish letter E (This letter sounds like the “eh” sound you make when asking for clarification or agreement in English: “ E h?”).
6	ვ	v	22 nd English letter v (in word: “ v ast”)
7	ზ	z	26 th English letter z (in word: “ z oo”)
8	თ	th (combination of 20 th and 8 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter because the English letter “T” is intended to describe the sound of the 19 th Georgian letter ტ)	20 th English letter t (in word: “ t oll”)
9	ი	i	9 th English letter i (in word: I taly) as well as 9 th Spanish letter i (This letter sounds like English “ ee ” but shorter).
10	კ	k	The first sound when pronouncing the 10 th Greek letter k, 11 th Dutch letter k [in Dutch word: “ k aas” (“cheese”)], the first sound when pronouncing the 11 th Spanish letter k (“ k ah”).
11	ლ	l	12 th English letter l (in word: “ l amb”)
12	მ	m	13 th English letter m (in word: “ m an”)
13	ნ	n	14 th English letter n (in word: “ n ice”)

14	ო	o (o)	15 th English letter o (in word: “old”), 16 th Spanish letter o (This letter sounds close to the “o” in “so”, but shorter).
15	პ	π (This small 16 th Greek letter will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	16 th Greek letter π as well as 16 th French letter p (in French word: Paris), 17 th Spanish letter p (This letter sounds close to the English “p”, but with less breath).
16	ჭ	zh (combination of 26 th and 8 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	7 th French letter g (in French word: “general”) and 10 th French letter j (in French word: “journal”) as well as 19 th English letter s (in English word: “pleasure”).
17	რ	r	18 th English letter r (in word: “rabbit”).
18	ს	s	19 th English letter s (in word: “smart”)
19	ტ	t	19 th Greek letter t, 20 th Dutch letter t, 21 st Spanish letter t (To say “t” in Spanish, and in Georgian too, the tongue should touch the teeth and there should be no explosion of breath after moving the tongue away).
20	უ	u	22 nd Spanish letter u (This letter sounds close to the “oo” in English word “food”) as well as 21 st English letter u (in word: “Uzbek”)
21	ფ	p	The first sound when pronouncing the 23 rd Greek letter Ψ (ps) as well as 16 th English letter p (in word:

			“past”)
22	ჟ	q (17 th English letter will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	3 rd English letter c (in word: “ c alm”) as well as 17 th English letter q (in word: “ q ueue”)
23	რ	gr (Combination of 7 th and 18 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	16 th French letter r (in French word: “ R adis”). This sound is pronounced like a sort of growl in the back of your throat - like when you are gargling. The German or Parisian “r” is the easy European equivalent. The second sound when pronouncing the 18 th Spanish letter r (“ e rr”))
24	ყ	qk (Combination of 17 th and 11 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	This sound is pronounced like ჯ (k), but back in your mouth. Imagine you have a marble in the back of your throat and that you are bouncing it using only your glottis, and make a ჯ (k) sound at the same time
25	შ	sh (Combination of 19 th and 8 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	Like in English word: “ s hort”
26	ჩ	ch (Combination of 3 rd and 8 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	Like in English word: “ c harm”
27	ც	ts (Combination of 20 st and 19 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	Like in English word: “ h ats”
28	ძ	dz (Combination of 4 th and 26 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	Like in English word: “ G odzilla” and letter “z” in

		English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	English word: “sad zebra”.
29	ჭ	tz (Combination of 20 th and 26 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	
30	ჩ	tch (Combination of 20 th , 3 rd and 8 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	
31	ხ	kh (Combination of 11 th and 8 th English letters will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter)	10 th Spanish letter j (“jota”). This letter makes a harsh sound (almost like you are trying to spit something up). This sound is the rasping “CH” in Scottish “loch” and German “ach”.
32	ჯ	j	10 th English letter j (in word: “jam”)
33	ჰ	h	8 th English letter h (in word: “Hawaii”)
		<p>General rule: sounds connected with Georgian letters ჩ (tch), ჰ (k), ჰ (π), ტ (t) and ჯ (tz) are all glottalised versions of sounds connected with Georgian letters ჩ (ch), ჯ (q), გ (p), თ (th) and ც (ts) respectively. You may also hear them referred to as ejective consonants. These terms simply mean that each consonant’s basic sound is modified in a similar way to produce a less breathy, “harder” version. Example: begin making the sound ჯ (q) as you normally would, but momentarily stop the breath going into your mouth by closing the fleshy bits (your glottis) at the very back. Hold your tongue and lips in the position they should be in to pronounce the ჯ (q) and then suddenly pronounce it. Rather than let out a steam of breath with the sound there should be instead an “explosion” simultaneously accompanying the sound.</p>	

The second lesson will require special attention of the hearing organs of listeners, for it will be necessary to get acquainted with the sounds of Georgian letters. The subsequent course of the educational process depends on the ability of listeners to successfully pass this stage of the educational process.

The content of the second lesson is as follows:

1) A group of 18 listeners is seating so that everyone is looking at a large screen to show the video film "Georgian alphabet" using computer equipment and a projector (It is most convenient to sit in a semicircle with several rows). Next to the big screen is a board with chalk or a special marker. Both presenters stand in front of a group of listeners. One of the presenters says:

“In this lesson, we will get acquainted in detail with how Georgian letters are pronounced. Georgian and English have many common sounds. There are 5 vowels in Georgian, and all of them are in English: ა (a), ე (e), ი (i), ო (o), უ (u). However, Georgian has consonants that English does not, and vice versa. English transliteration (recording the words of a language in English letters) conveys them only approximately. The following feature of Georgian writing should be remembered - the number of sounds in Georgian speech is equal to the number of Georgian letters (in other words, the rule applies: one letter - one sound and vice versa). For comparison, in English, 44 sounds are transmitted by 26 letters. There is almost no discrepancy between the writing of Georgian letters and its oral reproduction (reading) - what is written is what is read”.

2) The video film “Georgian alphabet” starts to be shown. In the first episode of the film, you can see how to write the first Georgian letter ა on a white sheet. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds this very letter ა, immediately pronounces the name of the first Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ა. This ends the first episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for the first episode of the film and says: “The 1st Georgian letter is pronounced like the 1st English letter a (in word “apple”), as well as 1st Spanish letter a (This letter sounds like the “ah” sound you use to express realization in English word: “Ah”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: ა = a. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the Georgian letter ა (note: if the lesson is conducted in the native language of the listeners, it is appropriate to mention and write the corresponding letter of the native local language).

3) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the second episode of the film, you can see how to write the second Georgian letter ბ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ბ, immediately pronounces the name of the second Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ბ. This ends the second episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 2nd Georgian letter is pronounced like the 2nd English letter b (in word: “boy”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: ბ = b. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ბ.

4) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the third episode of the film, you can see how to write the third Georgian letter გ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter გ, immediately pronounces the name of the third Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter გ. This ends the third episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 3rd Georgian letter is pronounced like the 7th English letter g (in word: “gold”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: გ = g. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter გ.

5) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the fourth episode of the film, you can see how to write the fourth Georgian letter დ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter დ, immediately pronounces the name of the fourth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter დ. This ends the fourth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says:

“The 4th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 4th English letter d (in word: “dry”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: ღ = d. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ღ.

6) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the fifth episode of the film, you can see how to write the fifth Georgian letter Ⴇ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴇ, immediately pronounces the name of the fifth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴇ. This ends the fifth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 5th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 5th English letter e (in word: “electricity”), as well as 5th Spanish letter e (This letter sounds like the “eh” sound you make when asking for clarification or agreement in English: “Eh?”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: Ⴇ = e). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴇ.

7) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the sixth episode of the film, you can see how to write the sixth Georgian letter Ⴉ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴉ, immediately pronounces the name of the sixth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴉ. This ends the sixth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 6th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 22nd English letter v (in word: “vast”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: Ⴉ = v. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴉ.

8) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the seventh episode of the film, you can see how to write the seventh Georgian letter ზ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ზ, immediately pronounces the name of the seventh Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ზ. This ends the seventh episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 7th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 26th English letter z (in word: “zoo”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: ზ = z. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ზ.

9) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the eighth episode of the film, you can see how to write the eighth Georgian letter Ⴋ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴋ, immediately pronounces the name of the eighth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴋ. This ends the eighth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 8th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 20th English letter t (in word: “toll”). In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, combination of 20th and 8th English letters (th) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter because the English letter “t” is intended to describe the sound of the 19th Georgian letter ჳ)”. Immediately the leader writes on the board: Ⴋ = th. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴋ.

10) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the ninth episode of the film, you can see how to write the ninth Georgian letter Ⴍ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴍ, immediately pronounces the name of the ninth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴍ. This ends the ninth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 9th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 9th English letter i (in word: Italy) as well as 9th Spanish letter i (This letter sounds like English “ee” but shorter)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: Ⴍ = i. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴍ.

11) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the tenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the tenth Georgian letter Ⴏ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴏ, immediately pronounces the name of the tenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴏ. This ends the tenth episode

and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 10th Georgian letter is pronounced like the the first sound when pronouncing the 10th Greek letter k, like the 11th Dutch letter k [in Dutch word: “kaas” (“cheese”)], the first sound when pronouncing the 11th Spanish letter k (“kah”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: ჰ = k. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ჰ.

12) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the eleventh episode of the film, you can see how to write the eleventh Georgian letter ლ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ლ, immediately pronounces the name of the eleventh Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ლ. This ends the eleventh episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 11th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 12th English letter l (in word: “lamb”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: ლ = l. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ლ.

13) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twelfth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twelfth Georgian letter მ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter მ, immediately pronounces the name of the twelfth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter მ. This ends the twelfth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 12th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 13th English letter m (in word: “man”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: მ = m. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter მ.

14) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the thirteenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the thirteenth Georgian letter ნ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ნ, immediately pronounces the name of the thirteenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ნ. This ends the thirteenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 13th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 14th English letter n (in word: “nice”)”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: ნ = n. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ნ.

15) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the fourteenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the fourteenth Georgian letter ო. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ო, immediately pronounces the name of the fourteenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ო. This ends the fourteenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 14th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 15th English letter o (in word: “old”), 16th Spanish letter o (This letter sounds close to the “o” in “so”, but shorter)”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: ო = o. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ო.

16) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the fifteenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the fifteenth Georgian letter პ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter პ, immediately pronounces the name of the fifteenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter პ. This ends the fifteenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 15th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 16th Greek letter π as well as 16th French letter p (in French word: Paris), 17th Spanish letter p (This letter sounds close to the English “p”, but with less breath). In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, the small 16th Greek letter (π) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: პ = π. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter პ.

17) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the sixteenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the sixteenth Georgian letter ჟ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ჟ, immediately pronounces the name of the sixteenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ჟ. This ends the sixteenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 16th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 7th French letter g (in French word: "general") and 10th French letter j (in French word: "journal") as well as 19th English letter s (in English word: "pleasure"). In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, combination of 26th and 8th English letters (zh) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter". The presenter immediately writes on the board: ჟ = zh. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ჟ.

18) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the seventeenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the seventeenth Georgian letter რ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter რ, immediately pronounces the name of the seventeenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter რ. This ends the seventeenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 17th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 18th English letter r (in word: "rabbit)". The presenter immediately writes on the board: რ = r. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter რ.

19) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the eighteenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the eighteenth Georgian letter ლ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ლ, immediately pronounces the name of the eighteenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ლ. This ends the eighteenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 18th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 19th English letter s (in word: "smart)". The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: ლ = s. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ლ.

20) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the nineteenth episode of the film, you can see how to write the nineteenth Georgian letter ტ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ტ, immediately pronounces the name of the nineteenth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ტ. This ends the nineteenth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 19th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 19th Greek letter t, 20th Dutch letter t, 21st Spanish letter t (To say "t" in Spanish, and in Georgian too, the tongue should touch the teeth and there should be no explosion of breath after moving the tongue away)". The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: ტ = t. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ტ.

21) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twentieth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twentieth Georgian letter უ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter უ, immediately pronounces the name of the twentieth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter უ. This ends the twentieth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the facilitator gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 20th Georgian letter is pronounced like the 22nd Spanish letter u (This letter sounds close to the "oo" in English word "food") as well as 21st English letter u (in word: "Uzbek)". Immediately, the facilitator writes on the blackboard: უ = u. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter უ.

22) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-first episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-first Georgian letter ვ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ვ, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-first Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ვ. This ends the twenty-first episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 21st Georgian letter is pronounced like the the first sound when pronouncing the 23rd Greek letter

Ψ (ps) as well as 16th English letter p (in word: “past”). The presenter immediately writes on the board: Ⴃ = p. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴃ.

23) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-second episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-second Georgian letter Ⴄ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴄ, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-second Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴄ. This ends the twenty-second episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 22nd Georgian letter is pronounced like the 3rd English letter c (in word: “calm”) as well as 17th English letter q (in word: “queue”). In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, 17th English letter (q) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter”. Immediately the leader writes on the board: Ⴄ = q. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴄ.

24) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-third episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-third Georgian letter Ⴅ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴅ, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-third Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴅ. This ends the twenty-third episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 23rd Georgian letter is pronounced like the 16th French letter r (in French word: “Radis”). This sound is pronounced like a sort of growl in the back of your throat - like when you are gargling. The German or Parisian “r” is the easy European equivalent. This sound is also pronounced like the second sound when pronouncing the 18th Spanish letter r (“erre”). In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, combination of 7th and 18th English letters (gr) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter”. Immediately, the presenter writes on the blackboard: Ⴅ = gr. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴅ.

25) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-fourth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-fourth Georgian letter Ⴇ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴇ, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-fourth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴇ. This ends the twenty-fourth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 24th Georgian letter is pronounced like Ⴃ (k), but back in your mouth. Imagine you have a marble in the back of your throat and that you are bouncing it using only your glottis, and make a Ⴃ (k) sound at the same time. In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, combination of 17th and 11th English letters (qk) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter”. Immediately, the facilitator writes on the board: Ⴇ = qk). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴇ.

26) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-fifth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-fifth Georgian letter Ⴈ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴈ, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-fifth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴈ. This ends the twenty-fifth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 25th Georgian letter is pronounced like the combination of 19th and 8th English letters (sh) in English word: “short”. Presenter immediately writes on the board: Ⴈ = sh. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴈ.

27) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-sixth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-sixth Georgian letter Ⴉ. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter Ⴉ, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-sixth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter Ⴉ. This ends the twenty-sixth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 26th Georgian letter is pronounced like the combination of 3rd and 8th English letters (ch) in English word: “charm”. Presenter immediately writes on the board: Ⴉ = ch. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter Ⴉ.

28) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the twenty-seventh episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-seventh Georgian letter ζ . At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter ζ , immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-seventh Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter ζ . This ends the twenty-seventh episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 27th Georgian letter is pronounced like the combination of 20st and 19th English letters (ts) in English word: “hats”. The presenter immediately writes on the board: $\zeta = ts$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter ζ .

29) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-eighth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-eighth Georgian letter δ . At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter δ , immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-eighth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter δ . This ends the twenty-eighth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 28th Georgian letter is pronounced like the combination of 4th and 26th English letters (dz) in English word: “Godzilla” as well as single letter “Z” in English word: “sad zebra”. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard: $\delta = dz$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter δ .

30) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the twenty-ninth episode of the film, you can see how to write the twenty-ninth Georgian letter $\var�$. At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter $\var�$, immediately pronounces the name of the twenty-ninth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter $\var�$. This ends the twenty-ninth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 29th Georgian letter is pronounced something like the combination of 20th and 26th English letters (tz)”. Immediately, the presenter writes on the board: $\var� = tz$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter $\var�$.

31) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the thirtieth episode of the film, you can see how to write the thirtieth Georgian letter \jmath . At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter \jmath , immediately pronounces the name of the thirtieth Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter \jmath . This ends the thirtieth episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 30th Georgian letter is pronounced something like the combination of 20th , 3rd and 8th English letters (tch)”. Immediately, the presenter writes on the board: $\jmath = tch$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter \jmath .

32) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is resumed. In the thirty-first episode of the film, you can see how to write the thirty-first Georgian letter b . At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter b , immediately pronounces the name of the thirty-first Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter b . This ends the thirty-first episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 31st Georgian letter is pronounced like the 10th Spanish letter j (“jota”). This letter makes a harsh sound (almost like you are trying to spit something up). This sound is the rasping “ch” in Scottish “loch” and German “ach”. In the English transliteration of this Georgian letter, combination of 11th and 8th English letters (kh) will be used to describe the sound of this Georgian letter”. The presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: $\text{b} = kh$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter b .

33) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the thirty-second episode of the film, you can see how to write the thirty-second Georgian letter x . At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter x , immediately pronounces the name of the thirty-second Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter x . This ends the thirty-second episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: “The 32nd Georgian letter is pronounced like the 10th English letter j (in word: “jam”)”. The

presenter immediately writes on the blackboard: $\chi = j$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter χ .

34) The screening of the video film "Georgian alphabet" is resumed. In the thirty-third episode of the film, you can see how to write the thirty-third Georgian letter \eth . At the same time, a voice is heard that sounds the letter \eth , immediately pronounces the name of the thirty-third Georgian letter and mentions three words using the letter \eth . This ends the thirty-third episode and the presenter pauses the video. Then the presenter gives an explanation for this episode of the film and says: "The 33rd Georgian letter is pronounced like the 8th English letter h (in word: "Hawaii")". Immediately, the presenter writes on the board: $\eth = h$. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, voices the Georgian letter \eth .

35) At the end, the facilitator makes a generalized remark: "sounds connected with Georgian letters \eth (tch), κ (k), π (π), τ (t) and τz (tz) are all glottalised versions of sounds connected with Georgian letters β (ch), γ (q), ρ (p), θ (th) and ς (ts) respectively. You may also hear them referred to as ejective consonants. These terms simply mean that each consonant's basic sound is modified in a similar way to produce a less breathy, "harder" version. Example: begin making the sound γ (q) as you normally would, but momentarily stop the breath going into your mouth by closing the fleshy bits (your glottis) at the very back. Hold your tongue and lips in the position they should be in to pronounce the γ (q) and then suddenly pronounce it. Rather than let out a steam of breath with the sound there should be instead an "explosion" simultaneously accompanying the sound".

36) After completing the process of voicing all 33 Georgian letters, the presenter once again addresses the listeners with the following words:

Memorize the Georgian grammar rule:

"Regardless of locations in words, each of the 33 letters stands for only one sound (one phoneme) and each sound (each phoneme) is designated by one letter. Of the 33 phonemes of the Georgian language, there are 5 vowels [α (a), ϵ (e), ι (i), \omicron (o), υ (u)] and 28 consonants".

This concludes the second lesson.

Lesson three

Names of the Georgian letters

Before the start of the third lesson, both leaders of the learning process get acquainted in advance with table No. 2, as well as with the video film “Georgian alphabet”. The table lists 33 letters of the modern Georgian alphabet and their corresponding names using the letters of the English and, in some cases, other western alphabets. Columns 3 and 4 use explanations from “Georgian-English Dictionary and Phrasebook” (authors: Nicholas Awde and Thea Khitarishvili; printed by Hippocrene books, New York; year of printing – 2006) as well as several electronic sources:

1) https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Georgian_scripts

2) [https://www.georgian-](https://www.georgian-alphabet.com/en/alphabet.php#:~:text=To%20be%20precise%2C%20there%20are,many%20Georgians%20cannot%20read%20them)

[alphabet.com/en/alphabet.php#:~:text=To%20be%20precise%2C%20there%20are,many%20Georgians%20cannot%20read%20them](https://www.georgian-alphabet.com/en/alphabet.php#:~:text=To%20be%20precise%2C%20there%20are,many%20Georgians%20cannot%20read%20them)

Table #2

The Georgian alphabet (33 letters)				
Ordinal number of Georgian letters	Georgian letter	Name of the Georgian letter in Georgian	Name of the Georgian letter in English	The names of the Georgian letters in English are pronounced as:
1	2	3	4	5
1	ა	ანო	ani	Combination of the 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
2	ბ	ბანო	bani	Combination of the 2 nd , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
3	გ	განო	gani	Combination of the 7 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
4	დ	დონო	doni	Combination of the 4 th , 15 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
5	ე	ენო	eni	Combination of the 5 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
6	ვ	ვინო	vini	Combination of the 22 nd , 9 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
7	ზ	ზენო	zeni	Combination of the 26 th , 5 th , 14 th and 9 th

				English letters
8	თ	თანო	thani	Combination of the 20 th , 8 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
9	ო	ონო	ini	Combination of the 9 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
10	კ	კანო	kani	Combination of the 11 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
11	ლ	ლასო	lasi	Combination of the 12 th , 1 st , 19 th and 9 th English letters
12	მ	მანო	mani	Combination of the 13 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
13	ნ	ნარო	nari	Combination of the 14 th , 1 st , 18 th and 9 th English letters
14	ო	ონო	oni	Combination of the 15 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
15	პ	პარო	πari	Combination of the 16 th Greek letter with the 1 st , 18 th and 9 th English letters
16	ჟ	ჟანო	zhani	Combination of the 26 th , 8 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
17	რ	რაე	rae	Combination of the 18 th , 1 st and 5 th English letters
18	ს	სანო	sani	Combination of the 19 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
19	ტ	ტარო	tari	Combination of the 20 th , 1 st , 18 th and 9 th English letters
20	უ	უნო	uni	Combination of the 21 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
21	ფ	ფარო	pari	Combination of the 16 th , 1 st , 18 th and 9 th English letters
22	ქ	ქანო	qani	Combination of the 17 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters

23	ღ	ღანი	grani	Combination of the 7 th , 18 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
24	ყ	ყარი	qkari	Combination of the 17 th , 11 th , 1 st , 18 th and 9 th English letters
25	შ	შინი	shini	Combination of the 19 th , 8 th , 9 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
26	ჩ	ჩინი	chini	Combination of the 3 rd , 8 th , 9 th , 14 th and 9 th English letters
27	ც	ცანი	tsani	Combination of the 20 th , 19 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
28	ძ	ძილი	dzili	Combination of the 4 th , 26 th , 9 th , 12 th and 9 th English letters
29	წ	წილი	tzili	Combination of the 20 th , 26 th , 9 th , 12 th and 9 th English letters
30	ჭ	ჭარი	tchari	Combination of the 20 th , 3 rd , 8 th , 1 st , 18 th and 9 th English letters
31	ხ	ხანი	khani	Combination of the 11 th , 8 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
32	ჯ	ჯანი	jani	Combination of the 10 th , 1 st , 14 th and 9 th English letters
33	ჰ	ჰაე	hae	Combination of the 8 th , 1 st and 5 th English letters

The third lesson, like the second one, will also require special attention of the hearing organs of the listeners, because it will be necessary to familiarize themselves with the names of the Georgian letters. Therefore, this lesson resembles the content of the second one.

The content of the third lesson is as follows:

1) A group of 18 listeners is seating so that everyone is looking at a large screen to show the video film "Georgian alphabet" using computer equipment and a projector (It is most convenient to sit in a semicircle with several rows). Next to the big screen is a board with chalk or a special marker. Both presenters stand in front of a group of listeners. One of the presenters says:

“In this lesson, the students will get acquainted with the names of Georgian letters in detail.”

2) The video film “Georgian alphabet” starts to be shown. Listeners watch the first episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: "The first

Georgian letter has a name (ანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 1st, 14th and 9th English letters – ani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ან = ani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 1st Georgian letter (ანი). If the lesson is conducted in the native language of the listeners, it is appropriate to mention and write the corresponding letters of the native local language.

3) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the second episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 2nd Georgian letter has a name (ბანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 2nd, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - bani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ბან = bani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 2nd Georgian letter (ბანი).

4) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the third episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 3rd Georgian letter has a name (განი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 7th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - gani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: გან = gani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 3rd Georgian letter (განი).

5) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the fourth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 4th Georgian letter has a name (დანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 4th, 15th, 14th and 9th English letters - doni» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: დან = doni). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 4th Georgian letter (დანი).

6) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the fifth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 5th Georgian letter has a name (ენი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 5th, 14th and 9th English letters – eni» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ენ = eni). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 5th Georgian letter (ენი).

7) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the sixth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 6th Georgian letter has a name (ვანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 22nd, 9th, 14th and 9th English letters – vini» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ვან = vini). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 6th Georgian letter (ვანი).

8) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the seventh episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 7th Georgian letter has a name (ზენი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 26th, 5th, 14th and 9th English letters – zeni» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ზენ = zeni). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 7th Georgian letter (ზენი).

9) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the eighth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 8th Georgian letter has a name (თანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 20th, 8th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters – thani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: თანი = thani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 8th Georgian letter (თანი).

10) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the ninth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 9th Georgian letter has a name (ინი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 9th, 14th and 9th English letters – ini» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ინი = ini). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 9th Georgian letter (ინი).

11) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the tenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 10th Georgian letter has a name (კანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 11th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters – kani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: კანი = kani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 10th Georgian letter (კანი).

12) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the eleventh episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 11th Georgian letter has a name (ლასი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 12th, 1st, 19th and 9th English letters - lasi» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ლასი = lasi). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 11th Georgian letter (ლასი).

13) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twelfth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 12th Georgian letter has a name (მანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 13th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - mani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: მანი = mani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 12th Georgian letter (მანი).

14) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the thirteenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 13th Georgian letter has a name (ნარი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 14th, 1st, 18th and 9th English letters - nari» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ნარი = nari). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 13th Georgian letter (ნარი).

15) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the fourteenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 14th Georgian letter has a name (ონი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 15th, 14th and 9th English letters - oni» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ონი = oni).

Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 14th Georgian letter (ობო).

16) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the fifteenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 15th Georgian letter has a name (პარო), which is pronounced as the combination of the 16th Greek letter with the 1st, 18th and 9th English letters - pari» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: პარო = pari). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 15th Georgian letter (პარო).

17) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the sixteenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 16th Georgian letter has a name (ჯანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 26th, 8th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - zhani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ჯანი = zhani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 16th Georgian letter (ჯანი).

18) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the seventeenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 17th Georgian letter has a name (რაე), which is pronounced as the combination of the 18th, 1st and 5th English letters - rae» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: რაე = rae). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 17th Georgian letter (რაე).

19) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the eighteenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 18th Georgian letter has a name (სანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 19th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - sani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: სანი = sani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 18th Georgian letter (სანი).

20) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the nineteenth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 19th Georgian letter has a name (ტარი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 20th, 1st, 18th and 9th English letters - tari» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ტარი = tari). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 19th Georgian letter (ტარი).

21) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twentieth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 20th Georgian letter has a name (უნი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 21st, 14th and 9th English letters - uni» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: უნი = uni). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 20th Georgian letter (უნი).

22) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-first episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and

speaks: «The 21st Georgian letter has a name (ფარი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 16th, 1st, 18th and 9th English letters – pari» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ფარი = pari). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 21st Georgian letter (ფარი).

23) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-second episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 22nd Georgian letter has a name (ქანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 17th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters – qani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ქანი = qani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 22nd Georgian letter (ქანი).

24) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-third episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 23rd Georgian letter has a name (ღანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 7th, 18th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - grani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ღანი = grani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 23rd Georgian letter (ღანი).

25) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-fourth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 24th Georgian letter has a name (ყარი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 17th, 11th, 1st, 18th and 9th English letters - qkari» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ყარი = qkari). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 24th Georgian letter (ყარი).

26) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-fifth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 25th Georgian letter has a name (შინი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 19th, 8th, 9th, 14th and 9th English letters - shini» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: შინი = shini). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 25th Georgian letter (შინი).

27) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-sixth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 26th Georgian letter has a name (ჩინი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 3rd, 8th, 9th, 14th and 9th English letters - chini» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ჩინი = chini). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 26th Georgian letter (ჩინი).

28) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-seventh episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 27th Georgian letter has a name (ცანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 20th, 19th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - tsani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ცანი = tsani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 27th Georgian letter (ცანი).

29) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-eighth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 28th Georgian letter has a name (ძლი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 4th, 26th, 9th, 12th and 9th English letters – dzili» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ძლი = dzili). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 28th Georgian letter (ძლი).

30) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the twenty-ninth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 29th Georgian letter has a name (წლი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 20th, 26th, 9th, 12th and 9th English letters - tzili» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: წლი = tzili). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 29th Georgian letter (წლი).

31) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the thirtieth episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 30th Georgian letter has a name (ჭარი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 20th, 3rd, 8th, 1st, 18th and 9th English letters - tchari» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ჭარი = tchari). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 30th Georgian letter (ჭარი).

32) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the thirty-first episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 31st Georgian letter has a name (ხანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 11th, 8th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - khani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ხანი = khani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 31st Georgian letter (ხანი).

33) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the thirty-second episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «The 32nd Georgian letter has a name (ჯანი), which is pronounced as the combination of the 10th, 1st, 14th and 9th English letters - jani» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ჯანი = jani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 32nd Georgian letter (ჯანი).

34) The showing of video "Georgian alphabet" is being resumed. Listeners watch the thirty-third episode of the film (a description of this episode is given in the previous lesson). After the show of this episode, the facilitator gives an explanation and speaks: «33rd Georgian letter has a name (ჰე), which is pronounced as the combination of the 8th, 1st and 5th English letters - hae» (Immediately the trainer writes the following relevant Georgian and English letters on the board: ჰე = hae). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, from their place voices the name of the 33rd Georgian letter (ჰე).

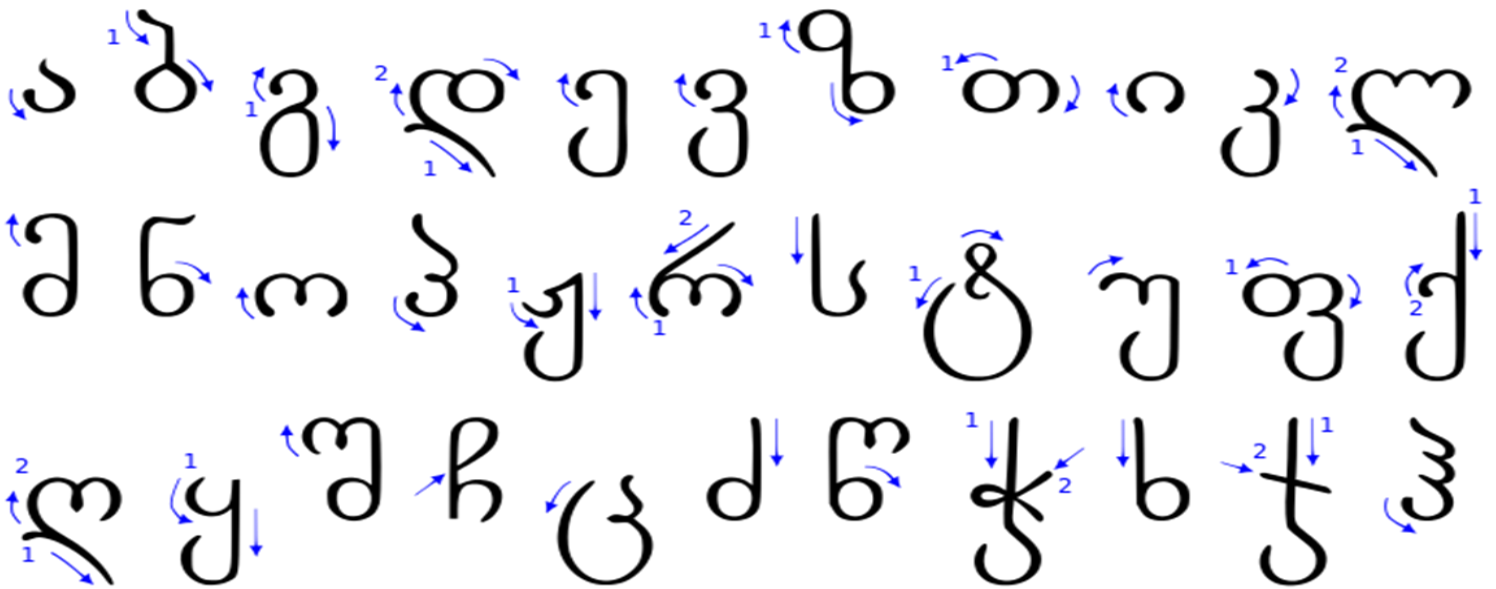
This concludes lesson three.

Lesson Four

How to write the Georgian letters

Before the start of the fourth lesson, both leaders of the learning process get acquainted in advance with tables No. 3 and 4 as well as with the video film “Georgian alphabet”. The tables No. 3 and 4 provide a list of 33 letters of the modern Georgian alphabet and their corresponding ways of writing.


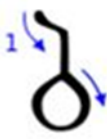







Table №3 ¹

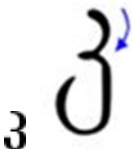









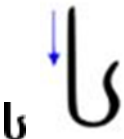





¹ Note to table №3: Table of handwriting of the Georgian letters is taken from the site: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Georgian_scripts


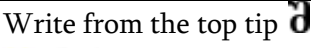
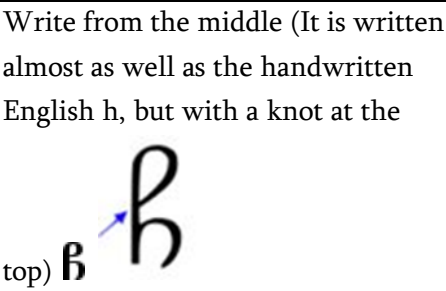
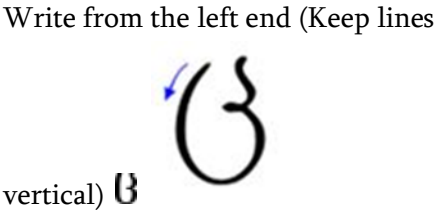

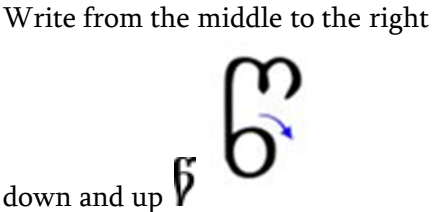
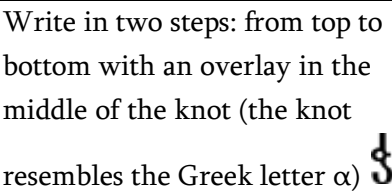
Table №4 ²


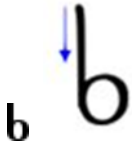




The Georgian alphabet (33 letters)			
Sequence number of the Georgian letter	Georgian printed letter	How to write the Georgian handwritten letter:	The position of the letter in the line:
1	2	3	4

1	ɔ	Write from left to top 	This letter does not come out of the line
2	ɔ̂	Write from the top left tip 	This letter comes up from the line
3	ɔ̃	Write from above 	This letter comes down from the line
4	ɔ̄	Write from the tip in the left side down and up 	This letter comes down from the line
5	ɔ̅	Write from the top left end 	This letter comes down from the line
6	ɔ̆	Write from above 	This letter comes down from the line
7	ɔ̇	Write from the top left end 	This letter comes up from the line
8	ɔ̈	Write from the saddle to the left down and further 	This letter does not come out of the line
9	ɔ̉	Write from the left end 	This letter does not come out of the line

10	ᳵ	Write from above ᳵ 	This letter comes down from the line
11	ᳶ	Write from the tip in the left side down and up ᳶ 	This letter comes down from the line
12	᳷	Write from the upper end ᳷ 	This letter comes up from the line
13	᳸	Write from the middle to the right down and up ᳸ 	This letter comes up from the line
14	᳹	Write from the left ᳹ 	This letter does not come out of the line
15	ᳺ	Write underneath like two s on top of each other ᳺ 	This letter comes up from the line
16	᳻	Write from the upper left end of the outline ᳻ 	This letter comes down from the line
17	᳼	Write from above or in two steps: first we write the letter ᳹, and then an oblique line above ᳹. ᳼ 	This letter comes up from the line

18	ᄎ	<p>Write from above ᄎ</p> 	This letter comes up from the line
19	ᄏ	<p>Write from the left end of the outline (Keep lines vertical) ᄏ</p> 	This letter comes down from the line
20	ᄑ	<p>Write from top left end ᄑ</p> 	This letter comes down from the line
21	ᄒ	<p>Write from the upper saddle or in two strokes: write the letter ᄏ and continue down. ᄒ</p> 	This letter comes down from the line
22	ᄓ	<p>Write in two strokes: from top to bottom and from left to right with a bend ᄓ</p> 	This letter comes up and down from the line
23	ᄔ	<p>Write from the tip on the left side down and up (Spelled like the letter ᄑ but without the third hook) ᄔ</p> 	This letter comes down from the line

24	Ʒ	Write from top left end 	This letter comes down from the line
25	Ɔ	Write from the top tip 	This letter comes up from the line
26	Ƨ	Write from the middle (It is written almost as well as the handwritten English h, but with a knot at the top) 	This letter comes up from the line
27	Ƨ	Write from the left end (Keep lines vertical) 	This letter comes down from the line
28	Ƨ	Write from above 	This letter comes up from the line
29	Ƨ	Write from the middle to the right down and up 	This letter comes up from the line
30	Ƨ	Write in two steps: from top to bottom with an overlay in the middle of the knot (the knot resembles the Greek letter α) 	This letter comes up and down from the line

			
31	ბ	Write from above 	This letter comes up from the line
32	ჯ	Write in two steps: write the letter  and impose the cross-piece 	This letter comes down from the line
33	ჰ	Write from the bottom like three  on each other 	This letter comes up from the line

² Note to table №4: the samples of the Georgian handwritten letters are taken from the site:

<https://ru.wikipedia.org/wiki/%D0%93%D1%80%D1%83%D0%B7%D0%B8%D0%BD%D1%81%D0%BA%D0%BE%D0%B5%D0%BF%D0%B8%D1%81%D1%8C%D0%BC%D0%BE> (The article "The Georgian letter")

Before the beginning of this lesson, the leaders of the educational process write all 33 Georgian letters side by side on the flip sheet in order to once again show the students the position of the letters relative to the line (if necessary, two or even three sheets can be connected with adhesive tape). Such a long sheet must be constantly hung on the wall with adhesive tape or a button so that during subsequent lessons, students can remember the location of the Georgian letters in the line. This row of Georgian letters on the sheet should look something like this:

აბგდევზთიკლმნოპჟრსტუფქღყშჩცძწჭხჰჳ

The fourth lesson, this time, will require special attention of the visual organs of the listeners, because they will have to learn the rules for spelling Georgian letters.

Note 1 to the fourth lesson: in case of wishes of the students, in order to prevent their overwork, it is possible to divide this lesson into three equal parts so that each part is given a separate day of study. Each part will allow listeners to get acquainted with the spelling rules of eleven Georgian letters.

Note 2 to the fourth lesson: the video film “Georgian alphabet” is not planned to be shown further, unless the participants in the learning process themselves wish to hear the sounds of Georgian letters again and see the spelling rules of Georgian letters.

The content of the fourth lesson is as follows:

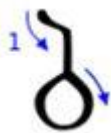
1) A group of 18 listeners are seated so that everyone is looking at a large screen to show the video film "Georgian alphabet" using computer equipment and a projector (It is most convenient to sit in a semicircle with several rows). Next to the large screen is a board with chalk or with a special marker. Both trainers are standing before a group of listeners. One of the presenters says: “In this lesson, after we got acquainted with the sounds and proper names of Georgian letters, we will already get acquainted in detail with the spelling rules of those 33 letters that are used in the modern Georgian language. Each Georgian letter is written separately and corresponds to one specific sound. Writing and reading do not diverge. There are no additional signs. The Georgian alphabet does not have capital (large, lowercase) letters. A handwritten Georgian letter is simpler than a printed one, and a cursive one is even simpler. The outlines of printed letters are always the same, but in the manuscript they may be slightly modified. Sometimes in a manuscript, one letter may have variants».

2) The video film “Georgian alphabet” starts to be shown. The listeners watch the 1st episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table No. 3 regarding the



1st letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The first Georgian letter \mathfrak{s} should be written from left to top. At the same time, the outline of the letter does not come out of the line” and immediately writes this letter in the middle of the upper part of the board exactly as it was shown in the first episode of the film. In this case, all listeners should see the movement of the leader's hand. After that, the presenter voices the letter he wrote (\mathfrak{s} = a), and then announces the name of this letter ($\mathfrak{s}\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{o}$ = ani). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, and at the end the second leader, in turn and separately, comes to the blackboard and writes the letter exactly as the first leader did, then sounds the written letter (\mathfrak{s} = a) and says its name ($\mathfrak{s}\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{o}$ = ani). After that, everything written on the board is erased. Exactly the same procedure should be followed by presenters and listeners while getting acquainted with the spelling rules of other Georgian letters. This, at first glance, long and individual procedure is important for all other participants in the educational process to make sure that each student adequately perceived what he or she had seen. This will increase the likelihood that in subsequent lessons, during practical and group exercises, students will spend less time writing words and sentences in Georgian.

3) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 2nd episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table No.



3 regarding the 2nd letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The second Georgian letter \mathfrak{b} must be written from the top left tip. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the second episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (\mathfrak{b} = b) and pronounces its name ($\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{s}\mathfrak{b}\mathfrak{o}$ = bani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and

individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ბ = b) and pronounces its name (ბაბო = bani).

4) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 3rd episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table No.



3 regarding the 3rd letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The third Georgian letter ზ must be written from above. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the third episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ზ = g) and pronounces its name (გაბო = gani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ზ = g) and pronounces its name (გაბო = gani).

5) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 4th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 4th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The fourth Georgian letter დ must be written from the tip on the left side down and up. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the fourth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (დ = d) and pronounces its name (დაბო = doni). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (დ = d) and pronounces its name (დაბო = doni).

6) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 5th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 5th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The fifth Georgian letter ე must be written from the top left end. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the fifth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ე = e) and pronounces its name (ეაბო = eni). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ე = e) and pronounces its name (ეაბო = eni).

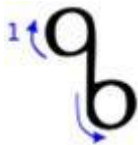
7) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 6th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 6th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The sixth Georgian letter ვ

must be written from above. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the sixth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ვ = v) and pronounces its name (ვობო = vini). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ვ = v) and pronounces its name (ვობო = vini).

8) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 7th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 7th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The seventh Georgian letter ვ must be written from the top left end. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the seventh episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ვ = z) and pronounces its name (ვებო = zeni). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ვ = z) and pronounces its name (ვებო = zeni).

9) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 8th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 8th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The eighth Georgian letter თ must be written from the saddle to the left down and further. In this case, the outline of the letter does not exit the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the eighth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (თ = th) and pronounces its name (თებო = thani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (თ = th) and pronounces its name (თებო = thani).

10) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 9th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 9th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The ninth Georgian letter ი should be written from the left end. In this case, the outline of the letter does not exit the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the ninth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ი = i) and pronounces its name (იბო = ini). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ი = i) and pronounces its name (იბო = ini).

11) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 10th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 10th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The tenth Georgian letter ჯ should be written from above. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the tenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the

letter he wrote (კ = k) and pronounces its name (კანო = kani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (კ = k) and pronounces its name (კანო = kani).

12) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 11th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 11th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The eleventh Georgian letter ლ must be written from the tip to the left side down and up. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the eleventh episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ლ = L) and pronounces its name (ლასო = lasi). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (კ = k) and pronounces its name (ლასო = lasi).

13) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 12th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 12th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twelfth Georgian letter მ must be written from the upper end. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twelfth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (მ = m) and pronounces its name (მანო = mani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (მ = m) and pronounces its name (მანო = mani).

14) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 13th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 13th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The thirteenth Georgian letter ნ must be written from the middle to the right down and up. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the thirteenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ნ = n) and pronounces its name (ნარო = nari). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ნ = n) and pronounces its name (ნარო = nari).

15) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 14th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 14th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The fourteenth Georgian letter ო must be written from the left. In this case, the outline of the letter does not exit the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the fourteenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ო = o) and pronounces its name (ონო = oni). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners,

in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ო = o) and pronounces its name (ონო = oni).

16) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 15th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 15th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The fifteenth Georgian letter პ must be written from below like two ს on each other. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line», and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the fifteenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (პ = π) and pronounces its name (პარი = pari). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (პ = π) and pronounces its name (პარი = pari).

17) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 16th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 16th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The sixteenth Georgian letter ჯ must be written from the left upper end of the outline. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the sixteenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ჯ = zh) and pronounces its name (ჯანი = zhani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ჯ = zh) and pronounces its name (ჯანი = zhani).

18) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 17th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 17th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The seventeenth Georgian letter რ must be written from the top (Or in two ways: first we write the letter ო, and then the oblique line over ო). In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the seventeenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (რ = r) and pronounces its name (რაე = rae). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (რ = r) and pronounces its name (რაე = rae).

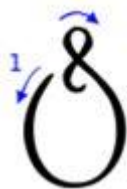
19) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 18th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 18th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The eighteenth Georgian letter ბ must be written from above. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the eighteenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the

letter he wrote (ს = s) and pronounces its name (სანი = sani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ს = s) and pronounces its name (სანი = sani).

20) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 19th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 19th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The nineteenth Georgian letter თ must be written from the left end of the outline (Thus it is necessary to keep vertical lines). In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the nineteenth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (თ = t) and pronounces its name (თარი = tari). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (თ = t) and pronounces its name (თარი = tari).

21) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 20th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 20th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twentieth Georgian letter უ must be written from the top left end. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twentieth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (უ = u) and pronounces its name (უნი = uni). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (უ = u) and pronounces its name (უნი = uni).

22) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 21st episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 21st letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-first Georgian letter პ must be written from the top saddle (Or in two steps: write the letter ო and continue down). In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-first episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (პ = p) and pronounces its name (პარი = pari). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (პ = p) and pronounces its name (პარი = pari).

23) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 22nd episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 22nd letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-second Georgian letter ქ must be written in two steps (From top to bottom and from left to right with a bent). In this case, the outline of the letter comes up and down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-second episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ქ = q) and pronounces its name (ქანო = qani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ქ = q) and pronounces its name (ქანო = qani).

24) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 23rd episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 23rd letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-third Georgian letter ღ must be written from the tip on the left side down and up (It is written as a letter ლ, but without the third hook). In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-third episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ღ = gr) and pronounces its name (ღანი = grani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ღ = gr) and pronounces its name (ღანი = grani).

25) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 24th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 24th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-fourth Georgian letter ყ must be written from the top left end. In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-fourth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ყ = qk) and pronounces its name (ყარი = qkari). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ყ = qk) and pronounces its name (ყარი = qkari).

26) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 25th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 25th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-fifth Georgian letter შ must be written from the top tip. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-fifth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (შ = sh) and pronounces its name (შინი = shini). Following the trainer, each of the 18

listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (შ = sh) and pronounces its name (შინი = shini).

27) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 26th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 26th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-sixth Georgian letter ბ must be written from the middle (It is written almost as well as the handwritten English h, but with a knot at the top). In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-sixth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ბ = ch) and pronounces its name (ბობო = chini). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ბ = ch) and pronounces its name (ბობო = chini).

28) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 27th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 27th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-seventh Georgian letter ც must be written from the left end (Thus it is necessary to keep vertical lines). In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-seventh episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ც = ts) and pronounces its name (ცანო = tsani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ც = ts) and pronounces its name (ცანო = tsani).

29) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 28th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 28th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The 28th Georgian letter ძ must be written from above. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-eighth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ძ = dz) and pronounces its name (ძილი = dzili). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ძ = dz) and pronounces its name (ძილი = dzili).

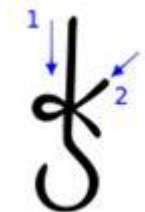
30) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 29th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 29th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The twenty-ninth Georgian letter ე must be written from the middle to the right down and up. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the twenty-ninth episode of

the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (წ = tz) and pronounces its name (წილი = tzili). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (წ = tz) and pronounces its name (წილი = tzili).

31) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 30th episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



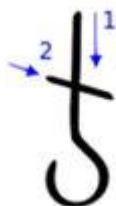
No. 3 regarding the 30th letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The thirtieth Georgian letter ჭ must be written in two steps (from top to bottom with the imposition of the node in the middle: node resembles the Greek letter α). In this case, the outline of the letter comes up and down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the thirtieth episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ჭ = tch) and pronounces its name (ჭარი = tchari). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ჭ = tch) and pronounces its name (ჭარი = tchari).

32) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 31st episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 31st letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «Thirty-first Georgian letter ბ must be written from above. In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the thirty-first episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ბ = kh) and pronounces its name (ბანი = khani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ბ = kh) and pronounces its name (ბანი = khani).

33) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 32nd episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 32nd letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «The thirty-second Georgian letter ჯ must be written in two steps (Write the letter ჯ and impose the cross-piece). In this case, the outline of the letter comes down from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the thirty-second episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ჯ = j) and pronounces its name (ჯანი = jani). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ჯ = j) and pronounces its name (ჯანი = jani).

34) The screening of the video film “Georgian alphabet” is being resumed. The listeners watch the 33rd episode of the film (the description of this episode is given in the second lesson). After showing this episode, the presenter shows a fragment of table



No. 3 regarding the 33rd letter of the Georgian alphabet, and then gives an explanation and says: «Thirty-third Georgian letter ჰ must be written from the bottom (Like three ს on each other). In this case, the outline of the letter comes up from the line» and, immediately, he writes this letter on the board exactly as it was shown in the thirty-third episode of the film. After that, the facilitator voices the letter he wrote (ჰ = h) and pronounces its name (ჰე = he). Following the trainer, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and individually, comes to the board and writes the letter exactly as the facilitator did it, then voices the written letter (ჰ = h) and pronounces its name (ჰე = he).

35) After completing the process of learning the spelling rules of 33 Georgian letters, the presenter addresses the audience with the following words:

Memorize the grammar rule:

The Georgian alphabet does not have capital (large, lowercase) letters.

This concludes the fourth lesson.

Lesson Five

Difficult-to-pronounce the Georgian letters

Before the start of the fifth lesson, both facilitators of the learning process are familiarized in advance with table No. 5, which contains a list of the simplest Georgian letter combinations, which include relatively difficult-to-pronounce letters. Some of these Georgian letter combinations, by themselves, have their own semantic meanings. However, for this lesson it does not matter, since we need these letter combinations only in order to consolidate the knowledge and skills gained in the previous three lessons (voicing Georgian letters, pronunciation of Georgian letter combinations and writing letters of the modern Georgian alphabet).

Note: This lesson uses materials from the pages 6-7 of "The Self-Teacher of Russian and Georgian Languages" (Compiled and published by S. Mdivanov in Tiflis; The fifth edition is printed in the printing house of A. Kutateladze; Year of publication - 1903)

The content of the fifth lesson is as follows:

1) The facilitators of the learning process on the big screen with the help of a projector show the students table No. 5 and explain to them how to pronounce all 36 combinations of Georgian letters (the facilitators voice these combinations of Georgian letters in columns 2 and 3 of table No. 5 so that the listeners can clearly hear the sounds).

Table #5

№	The combinations of the Georgian letters	English transliterations of the combinations of the Georgian letters
1	კალა	kala
2	ქალა	qala
3	კალო	kalo
4	ქალო	qalo
5	კარი	kari
6	ქარი	qari
7	კაკანი	kakani
8	ქაქანი	qaqani
9	კარს	kars
10	ქარს	qars

11	ქროლა	qrola
12	კევა	kepa
13	ცა	tsa
14	წა	tza
15	ჭა	tcha
16	ცალი	tsali
17	ძალი	dzali
18	ჭალი	tchali
19	ცანი	tsani
20	ჭანი	tchani
21	წადი	tzadi
22	ცელი	tseli
23	ძელი	dzeli
24	წელი	tzeli
25	ცილი	tsili
26	ძილი	dzili
27	ძირი	dziri
28	წილი	tzili
29	ჭილი	tchili
30	ჭალა	tchala
31	ძალა	dzala
32	წალა	tzala
33	ცერა	tsera
34	ძერა	dzera
35	წერა	tzera
36	ჭერა	tchera

2) After that, the facilitator addresses the audience with the following words: “In this lesson, for the first time, we must use such a teaching method as group work. Let's make the recounting of listeners from the first to the sixth in order to:

- listeners under number 1 became members of group No. 1;
- listeners under number 2 became members of group No. 2;
- listeners under number 3 became members of group No. 3;
- listeners under number 4 became members of group No. 4;
- listeners under number 5 became members of group No. 5;
- listeners under number 6 became members of group No. 6.

Note No. 1: the leaders of the educational process may, at their discretion, use other methods known to them for forming groups of students;

Note #2: The interactive learning methodology recommends constantly changing the composition of the groups during the practical sessions. This can be achieved by rotating students from one group to another (for example, during the next lesson, one student from group No. 1 goes to group No. 2, from group No. 2 one goes to group No. 3, and so on).

3) After the recount is completed, the facilitator explains: “3 listeners under #1 form group #1, 3 listeners under #2 form group #2, 3 listeners under #3 form group #3, 3 listeners under #4 form group #4, 3 students under #5 form a group #5, 3 listeners under #6 form a group #6. So we get 6 groups of 3 people.”

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables (the chairs are distributed among the six tables). The members of group #1 gather around one table, the members of group #2 around another table, and so on. All groups receive one flip sheet (flipchart paper) and one marker of black color. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 different combinations of Georgian letters are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian letter combinations using a combination of the corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 8-10, "Supplement to Lesson No. 5" on three pages, 2 tables on one page. There are given all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups. Make copies of these three pages and, with the help of scissors, prepare separate tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “All groups work simultaneously, but separately and independently. During group work, no contact or prompting is allowed between members of different groups. However, within each group, an exchange of opinions between 3 listeners is allowed, provided that there is no excessive noise. Each group receives its own list of 6 combinations of Georgian letters. These Georgian letters must be written on a flip sheet with a marker. We draw your attention to the following circumstance: at the beginning of group work, each group must indicate the lesson number (for example, Lesson No. 5) and the group number (for example, Group No. 1) at the top of the flip sheet. The listeners of each group use a marker to write only Georgian letters on the flip sheet; English letters are given

only to make it easier for listeners to learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian letter combinations. Pay attention to the following circumstance: it is unacceptable that within any group some students perform tasks, while other members of the same group remain passive observers during team work. All participants in group work should receive an equal workload. To do this, each member of the group writes an equal number of Georgian letter combinations (For example, in group No. 1, one of the 3 members writes combinations of Georgian letters that have serial numbers 1 and 2 in table No. 1; another member of the same group writes combinations of Georgian letters, which have serial numbers 3 and 4; the last, third, member of this group writes combinations of Georgian letters, which have serial numbers 5 and 6). But each member of group No. 1 must learn the pronunciation of all six letter combinations written on the sheet. The work in other groups proceeds similarly. All groups are given the same amount of time to complete the tasks. During the group part of the lesson, the facilitators of the learning process can give the necessary comments and / or explanations (Georgian letters must be written clearly so that other participants can read them).”

A sample of written Georgian words on a flip sheet (using the example of a task for group No. 1):

Group №1	Lesson №5
	1. კალა
	2. ქალა
	3. კალო
	4. ქალო
	5. კარი
	6. ქარი

6) After the simultaneous completion of their work by all groups, the presentation (presentation) of the work performed begins. The presentation boils down to the following: each group sticks their flip sheet on the board or on the wall. A flip sheet of group No. 1 is attached to the left end of the board, a flip sheet of group No. 2 is attached to the right of this sheet, and so on. Thus, all listeners see on the board all six flip sheets with 36 Georgian letter combinations. After that, the performance of the members of all groups begins. For example, the presentation is started by one of the members of group #1. He or she comes to the blackboard while the other 17 listeners sit in their places around their tables. The first speaker should sequentially read aloud all 36 combinations of Georgian letters written on 6 loose-leaf sheets (First, he or she reads the words on the sheet of group No. 1, then the words on the sheet of group No. 2, and so on). With this, the first speaker ends his speech and returns to his seat. Then the next member of group #1 speaks and does the same thing that the previous listener did. Then the last, third, member of group No. 1 performs. It's time for all 3 members of group #2 to perform. They exactly repeat what the members of group #1 did. Then, sequentially, all members of the remaining four groups speak. During the presentation part of the lesson, the leaders of the learning process make the necessary comments and / or explanations.

This concludes the fifth lesson.

Note to the fifth lesson: the flip sheets attached to the board must be saved. If all lessons are held in one room, then such sheets can be attached to the wall. When there are no free places on the wall, then you will have to remove from the wall those sheets that were attached earlier than others.

Lesson Six

Difficult-to-pronounce the Georgian letters

This lesson is a continuation of the previous, the fifth, lesson.

Before the start of the sixth lesson, both facilitators of the learning process are familiarized in advance with table No. 6, which lists the new simplest Georgian letter combinations, which include relatively difficult to pronounce Georgian letters.

Note: This lesson uses materials from the pages 6-7 of "The Self-Teacher of Russian and Georgian Languages" (Compiled and published by S. Mdivanov in Tiflis; The fifth edition is printed in the printing house of A. Kutateladze; Year of publication - 1903)

The content of the sixth lesson is as follows:

1) The facilitators of the learning process on a large screen with the help of a projector show the students table No. 6 and explain to them how to pronounce all 36 combinations of Georgian letters (the facilitators alternately voice these combinations of Georgian letters in columns 2 and 3 of table No. 6 so that the listeners can clearly listen sounds).

Table #6

№	Combinations of Georgian letters	English transliteration of the combinations of Georgian letters
1	ყყანბი	qkaqkani
2	ყარს	qkars
3	ყროლა	qkrola
4	ყევა	qkepa
5	ღორი	grori
6	გორი	gori
7	ღერი	greri
8	გერი	geri
9	ღონიერი	gronieri
10	გონიერი	gonieri

11	პური	πuri
12	ფური	puri
13	პაპა	παπα
14	ფაფა	papa
15	ტბა	tba
16	თბა	thba
17	ტეტრი	tetri
18	თეთრი	thethri
19	ტიტი	titi
20	თითი	thithi
21	ჯანი	jani
22	ჯერა	jera
23	ჭაღარა	tchagrara
24	ძაძა	dzadza
25	წაწა	tzatza
26	ჭაჭა	tchatcha
27	ჯაჯა	jaja
28	ცერი	tseri
29	ჭერი	tcheri
30	ჯერი	jeri
31	ჩეჟა	cheqa
32	ჭეჟა	tcheqa
33	ჭირი	tchiri
34	ცდა	tsda
35	ჭდა	tchda
36	ჯდა	jda

2) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

3) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 different combinations of Georgian letters are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian letter combinations using a combination of the corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 11-13, "Supplement to Lesson No. 6" on three pages, 2 tables on one page. There are given all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups. Make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate tables for each group.

4) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: the work of the students in groups is carried out in the exactly same way as during the fifth lesson.

An example of drawing up a flip sheet No. 1 by group No. 1:

Group №1	Lesson №6
	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. ყაყანი2. ყარს3. ყროლა4. ყეფა5. ღორი6. გორი

5) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out in the exactly same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixth lesson.

Lesson Seven

The Georgian names of countries and regions

Starting from this lesson, the students will begin the gradual assimilation of Georgian words for various purposes. In the course of getting to know the Georgian vocabulary and mastering the skills of Georgian speech, you will have to get acquainted with the basic grammatical rules of Georgian spelling.

The content of the seventh lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience:

1. "We are starting to get acquainted with the world of the grammatical rules of the Georgian language. The grammatical structure is one of the main foundations of any language. The inflection (the word change) is richly represented in the Georgian language by declension of names or conjugation of verbs.

2. "In the Georgian language, without taking into account the form of address (vocative case), there are 6 main cases:

- Nominative or subjective
- Ergative or narrative (this case is common to both the Ibero-Caucasian languages and the Basque language in Spain)
- Dative
- Directional
- Genitive
- Creative or instrumental» ¹

¹ Source of information: article "Georgian language" in the XIII volume of the second edition of the "Great Soviet Encyclopedia" (pages 101-107).

3. "There are two numbers in the Georgian language: the singular and the plural"

4. "A noun in the nominative case of the singular number is called the initial form of the Georgian word"

5. "In the initial form, Georgian nouns end in a vowel sound. Of the final vowels, *o* (i) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (a), *ე* (e), *ო* (o), *უ* (u) - are included in the basis of the corresponding words.

6. "We are starting to get acquainted with different ways of forming Georgian words. In the Georgian language, prefixes and suffixes are of great importance. In particular, the Georgian names of many countries are pronounced with the suffix -*ეთ* (-eth), which is added to the stems of words expressing the origin of a particular group of people or things. It

should, however, be taken into account that the Georgian names of a certain number of countries or regions do not fall under this general rule.”

7. "Today we will study the Georgian names of 36 countries or regions that are pronounced with the suffix -ეთ (-eth)".

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 7 on a large screen. The facilitator says, “Let's get acquainted with the names of 36 countries or regions. It is natural that these word-names are given in the initial form, i.e. in the nominative case of the singular. The dash is only used to separate the word stem (root word), the suffix -ეთ (-eth) and the nominative ending ი (i) from each other. The facilitators voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly (the Georgian root word is voiced first, after the Georgian name of the country or region).

Table №7

№	The Georgian root words	The names of countries or regions
1	2	3
1	*კახ-	*კახ-ეთ-ი
	** kakh-	** kakh-eth-i
		*** Kakheti (note: a region of Georgia)
2	*იმერ-	*იმერ-ეთ-ი
	** imer-	** imer-eth-i
		*** Imereti (note: region of Georgia)
3	*აფხაზ-	*აფხაზ-ეთ-ი
	** apkhaz-	** apkhaz-eth-i
		*** Abkhazia (note: region of Georgia)
4	*ბალყარ-	*ბალყარ-ეთ-ი
	** balqkar-	** balqkar-eth-i
		*** Balkaria (Note: a region of Russia)
5	*ინგუშ-	*ინგუშ-ეთ-ი
	** ingush-	** ingush-eth-i
		*** Ingushetia (note: a region of Russia)
6	*ჩეჩნ-	*ჩეჩნ-ეთ-ი
	** chechn-	** chechn-eth-i
		*** Chechnya (note: a region of Russia)
7	*ოს-	*ოს-ეთ-ი
	** os-	** os-eth-i
		*** Ossetia (note: regional parts in Russia and Georgia)
8	*თურქ-	*თურქ-ეთ-ი
	** thurq-	** thurq-eth-i
		*** Turkey
9	*რუს-	*რუს-ეთ-ი
	** rus-	** rus-eth-i
		*** Russia
10	*სომხ-	*სომხ-ეთ-ი
	** somkh-	** somkh-eth-i
		*** Armenia

11	*სპარს-	*სპარს-ეთ-ი
	** spars-	** spars-eth-i
		*** Persia
12	*არაბ-	*არაბ-ეთ-ი
	** arab-	** arab-eth-i
		*** Arabia
13	*ჩინ-	*ჩინ-ეთ-ი
	** chin-	** chin-eth-i
		*** China
14	*ინდო-	*ინდო-ეთ-ი
	** indo-	** indo-eth-i
		*** India
15	*თათრ-	*თათრ-ეთ-ი
	** thathr-	** thathr-eth-i
		*** Tatarstan (note: a region of Russia)
16	*მონგოლ-	*მონგოლ-ეთ-ი
	** mongol-	** mongol-eth-i
		*** Mongolia
17	*მოლდავ-	*მოლდავ-ეთ-ი
	** moldav-	** moldav-eth-i
		*** Moldova
18	*ბულგარ-	*ბულგარ-ეთ-ი
	** bulgar-	** bulgar-eth-i
		*** Bulgaria
19	*სერბ-	*სერბ-ეთ-ი
	** serb-	** serb-eth-i
		*** Serbia
20	*უნგრ-	*უნგრ-ეთ-ი
	** ungr-	** ungr-eth-i
		*** Hungary
21	*სლოვაკ-	*სლოვაკ-ეთ-ი
	** slovak-	** slovak-eth-i
		*** Slovakia (note: Slovak Republic)
22	*ჩეხ-	*ჩეხ-ეთ-ი
	** chekh-	** chekh-eth-i
		*** Czech Republic
23	*ფინ-	*ფინ-ეთ-ი
	** pin-	** pin-eth-i
		*** Finland
24	*ბრიტან-	*ბრიტან-ეთ-ი
	** britan-	** britan-eth-i
		*** Britain
25	*ესპან-	*ესპან-ეთ-ი
	** espan-	** espan-eth-i
		*** Spain
26	*რუმინ-	*რუმინ-ეთ-ი
	** rumin-	** rumin-eth-i

		*** Romania
27	*პოლონ-	*პოლონ-ეთ-ი
	** polon-	** polon-eth-i
		*** Poland
28	*ესტონ-	*ესტონ-ეთ-ი
	** eston-	** eston-eth-i
		*** Estonia
29	*შვედ-	*შვედ-ეთ-ი
	** shved-	** shved-eth-i
		*** Sweden
30	*ყაზახ-	*ყაზახ-ეთ-ი
	** qkazakh-	** qkazakh-eth-i
		*** Kazakhstan (note: a country of Central Asia)
31	*უზბეკ-	*უზბეკ-ეთ-ი
	** uzbek-	** uzbek-eth-i
		*** Uzbekistan (note: a country of Central Asia)
32	*ყირგიზ-	*ყირგიზ-ეთ-ი
	** qkirgiz-	** qkirgiz-eth-i
		*** Kyrgyzstan (note: a country of Central Asia)
33	*ტაჯიკ-	*ტაჯიკ-ეთ-ი
	** tajik-	** tajik-eth-i
		*** Tajikistan (note: a country of Central Asia)
34	*თურქმენ-	*თურქმენ-ეთ-ი
	** thurqmen-	** thurqmen-eth-i
		*** Turkmenistan (note: a country of Central Asia)
35	*ბაშკირ-	*ბაშკირ-ეთ-ი
	** bashkir-	** bashkir-eth-i
		*** Bashkortostan (note: a region of Russia)
36	*ჩერქეზ-	*ჩერქეზ-ეთ-ი
	** chergez-	** chergez-eth-i
		*** Circassia (note: a region of Russia)
	* Phrases and words in the Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words	

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian names of countries or regions are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 14-19, the "Supplement to Lesson No. 7" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “the work of students in groups is carried out in exactly the same way as during the fifth lesson.”

An example of the compilation of a flip sheet by group No. 1:

Lesson No. 7	Group No. 1
	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. კახეთი2. იმერეთი3. აფხაზეთი4. ბაღყარეთი5. ინგუშეთი6. ჩეჩნეთი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly the same as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the seventh lesson.

Lesson eight

The Georgian words about origin

The content of the eighth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience:

1. “This lesson is a kind of continuation of the previous one, as we continue to get acquainted with different ways of forming Georgian words. We, for example, learned how to pronounce Russia in Georgian. It's time to learn how to pronounce an adjective in Georgian, denoting that something belongs to Russia. When talking about animals or inanimate objects, then one of the two suffixes should be used. The suffix - ურ (-ur) is written together with the root of the word, if this stem (root word) does not contain the Georgian letter რ. If the stem of the word contains the Georgian letter რ, then the suffix -ულ (-ul) should be used. Generally, adjectives are like nouns in that they can take the same endings. They always come before the noun.”

Note: this lesson was compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 60-61)

2. "Today we will learn 36 Georgian adjectives using the same word stems we have already used in the previous lesson."

2) Next, with the help of a projector, students watch table No. 8 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with Georgian adjectives that denote the origin of certain animals or inanimate objects. The dash is only used to separate the word stem (root word), the suffixes -ურ (-ur) or -ულ (-ul) and the nominative ending ი (i) from each other. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can clearly hear the sounds (first the Georgian word-root is voiced, then the Georgian adjective).

Table №8

№	The Georgian root words	The Georgian adjectives
1	2	3
1	*კახ-	*კახ-ურ-ი
	** kakh-	** kakh-ur-i
		*** Kakhetian
2	*იმერ-	*იმერ-ულ-ი
	** imer-	** imer-ul-i
		*** Imeretian
3	*აფხაზ-	*აფხაზ-ურ-ი
	** apkhaz-	** apkhaz-ur-i
		*** Abkhazian
4	*ბალყარ-	*ბალყარ-ულ-ი
	** balqkar-	** balqkar-ul-i
		*** Balkarian
	*ინგუშ-	*ინგუშ-ურ-ი

5	** ingush-	** ingush-ur-i
		*** Ingushian
6	*ჩეჩნ-	*ჩეჩნ-ურ-ი
	** chechn-	** chechn-ur-i
		*** Chechen
7	*ოს-	*ოს-ურ-ი
	** os-	** os-ur-i
		*** Ossetian
8	*თურქ-	*თურქ-ულ-ი
	** thurq-	** thurq-ul-i
		*** Turkish
9	*რუს-	*რუს-ულ-ი
	** rus-	** rus-ul-i
		*** Russian
10	*სომხ-	*სომხ-ურ-ი
	** somkh-	** somkh-ur-i
		*** Armenian
11	*სპარს-	*სპარს-ულ-ი
	** spars-	** spars-ul-i
		*** Persian
12	*არაბ-	*არაბ-ულ-ი
	** arab-	** arab-ul-i
		*** Arabian
13	*ჩინ-	*ჩინ-ურ-ი
	** chin-	** chin-ur-i
		*** Chinese
14	*ინდ-	*ინდ-ურ-ი
	** ind-	** ind-ur-i
		*** Indian
15	*თათრ-	*თათრ-ულ-ი
	** thathr-	** thathr-ul-i
		*** Tatarian
16	*მონგოლ-	*მონგოლ-ურ-ი
	** mongol-	** mongol-ur-i
		*** Mongolian
17	*მოლდავ-	*მოლდავ-ურ-ი
	** moldav-	** moldav-ur-i
		*** Moldavian
18	*ბულგარ-	*ბულგარ-ულ-ი
	** bulgar-	** bulgar-ul-i
		*** Bulgarian
19	*სერბ-	*სერბ-ულ-ი
	** serb-	** serb-ul-i

		*** Serbian
20	*უნგრ-	*უნგრ-ულ-ი
	** ungr-	** ungr-ul-i
		*** Hungarian
21	*სლოვაკ-	*სლოვაკ-ურ-ი
	** slovak-	** slovak-ur-i
		*** Slovak
22	*ჩეხ-	*ჩეხ-ურ-ი
	** chekh-	** chekh-ur-i
		*** Czech
23	*ფინ-	*ფინ-ურ-ი
	** pin-	** pin-ur-i
		*** Finnish
24	*ბრიტან-	*ბრიტან-ულ-ი
	** britan-	** britan-ul-i
		*** British
25	*ესპან-	*ესპან-ურ-ი
	** espan-	** espan-ur-i
		*** Spanish
26	*რუმინ-	*რუმინ-ულ-ი
	** rumin-	** rumin-ul-i
		*** Romanian
27	*პოლონ-	*პოლონ-ურ-ი
	** polon-	** polon-ur-i
		*** Polish
28	*ესტონ-	*ესტონ-ურ-ი
	** eston-	** eston-ur-i
		*** Estonian
29	*შვედ-	*შვედ-ურ-ი
	** shved-	** shved-ur-i
		*** Swedish
30	*ყაზახ-	*ყაზახ-ურ-ი
	** qkazakh-	** qkazakh-ur-i
		*** Kazakhstani
31	*უზბეკ-	*უზბეკ-ურ-ი
	** uzbek-	** uzbek-ur-i
		*** Uzbek
32	*ყირგიზ-	*ყირგიზ-ულ-ი
	** qkirgiz-	** qkirgiz-ul-i
		*** Kyrgyzstani
33	*ტაჯიკ-	*ტაჯიკ-ურ-ი
	** tajik-	** tajik-ur-i
		*** Tajik

34	*თურქმენ-	*თურქმენ-ულ-ი
	** thurqmen-	** thurqmen-ul-i
		*** Turkmenian
35	*ბაშკირ-	*ბაშკირ-ულ-ი
	** bashkir-	** bashkir-ul-i
		*** Bashkirian
36	*ჩერქეზ-	*ჩერქეზ-ულ-ი
	** cherqez-	** cherqez-ul-i
		*** Circassian
	* Phrases and words in Georgian	
	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words	
	*** English synonyms for Georgian phrases and words	

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian adjectives are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of corresponding English letters and synonyms of these Georgian words in English. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 20-25, the "Supplement to Lesson No. 8" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "the work of students in groups is carried out in exactly the same way as during the fifth lesson."

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #8	Group #1
	1. კახური 2. იმერული 3. აფხაზური 4. ბაღყარული 5. ინგუშური 6. ჩეჩნური

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the eighth lesson.

Lesson nine

The Georgian words about origin

The content of the ninth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience:

1. “This lesson is a continuation of the previous one. We learned how to pronounce adjectives in Georgian, denoting the belonging of animals and inanimate objects to a place. This time we have to learn adjectives denoting a person's belonging to any country and any region. In relation to a person, to indicate his origin, the suffix -ელ (-el) should be used, which must be written together with the stem (root) of the word. It should be remembered that these Georgian adjectives are used for males and females without any changes.”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 60-61).

2. “Today we will learn 36 Georgian adjectives denoting places where a person can come from. We will use both a part of the word stems already used, and a number of new words denoting geographical concepts.

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 9 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with the Georgian adjectives that denote places where people can come from. The dash is used only to separate the stem of the word (root word), the suffix -ელ (-el) and the nominative ending ი (i) from each other”. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly (first the Georgian word-root is voiced, then the Georgian adjective).

Table №9

№	The Georgian root words	The Georgian adjectives
1	2	3
1	*კახ-	*კახ-ელ-ი
	** kakh-	** kakh-el-i
		*** The Kakhetian
2	*იმერ-	*იმერ-ელ-ი
	** imer-	** imer-el-i
		*** The Imeretian
3	*ამერიკ-	*ამერიკ-ელ-ი
	** amerik-	** amerik-el-i
		*** The American
4	*ბალყარ-	*ბალყარ-ელ-ი
	** balqkar-	** balqkar-el-i
		*** The Balkarian
5	*აფრიკ-	*აფრიკ-ელ-ი
	** aprik-	** aprik-el-i
		*** The African
	*აზი-	*აზი-ელ-ი

6	** azi-	** azi-el-i
		*** The Asian
7	*ავსტრი-	*ავსტრი-ელ-ი
	** avstri-	** avstri-el-i
		*** The Austrian
8	*გერმან-	*გერმან-ელ-ი
	** german-	** german-el-i
		*** The German
9	*არგენტინ-	*არგენტინ-ელ-ი
	** argentin-	** argentin-el-i
		*** The Argentinian
10	*ბრაზილი-	*ბრაზილი-ელ-ი
	** brazili-	** brazili-el-i
		*** The Brazilian
11	*სპარს-	*სპარს-ელ-ი
	** spars-	** spars-el-i
		*** The Persian
12	*ეგვიპტ-	*ეგვიპტ-ელ-ი
	** egvipt-	** egvipt-el-i
		*** The Egyptian
13	*ჩინ-	*ჩინ-ელ-ი
	** chin-	** chin-el-i
		*** The Chinese
14	*ინდო-	*ინდო-ელ-ი
	** indo-	** indo-el-i
		*** The Indian
15	*ეთიოპ-	*ეთიოპ-ელ-ი
	** ethioπ-	** ethioπ-el-i
		*** The Ethiopian
16	*იაპონ-	*იაპონ-ელ-ი
	** iapon-	** iapon-el-i
		*** The Japanese
17	*მოლდავ-	*მოლდავ-ელ-ი
	** moldav-	** moldav-el-i
		*** The Moldavian
18	*ბულგარ-	*ბულგარ-ელ-ი
	** bulgar-	** bulgar-el-i
		*** The Bulgarian
19	*იტალი-	*იტალი-ელ-ი
	** itali-	** itali-el-i
		*** The Italian
20	*უნგრ-	*უნგრ-ელ-ი
	** ungr-	** ungr-el-i
		*** The Hungarian
21	*კავკასი-	*კავკასი-ელ-ი
	** kavkasi-	** kavkasi-el-i
		*** The Caucasian

22	*ებრა-	*ებრა-ელ-ი
	** ebra-	** ebra-el-i
		*** The Jewish
23	*ფინ-	*ფინ-ელ-ი
	** pin-	** pin-el-i
		*** The Finlander
24	*ბრიტან-	*ბრიტან-ელ-ი
	** britan-	** britan-el-i
		*** The Briton
25	*ესპან-	*ესპან-ელ-ი
	** espan-	** espan-el-i
		*** The Spaniard
26	*რუმინ-	*რუმინ-ელ-ი
	** rumin-	** rumin-el-i
		*** The Romanian
27	*პოლონ-	*პოლონ-ელ-ი
	** polon-	** polon-el-i
		*** The Pole
28	*ესტონ-	*ესტონ-ელ-ი
	** eston-	** eston-el-i
		*** The Estonian
29	*პორტუგალი-	*პორტუგალი-ელ-ი
	** portugali-	** portugali-el-i
		*** The Portuguese
30	*უკრაინ-	*უკრაინ-ელ-ი
	** ukrain-	** ukrain-el-i
		*** The Ukrainian
31	*მოსკოვ-	*მოსკოვ-ელ-ი
	** moskov-	** moskov-el-i
		*** The Muscovite
32	*ქართვე-	*ქართვე-ელ-ი
	** qarthv-	** qarthv-el-i
		*** The Georgian
33	*პარიზ-	*პარიზ-ელ-ი
	** pariz-	** pariz-el-i
		*** The Parisian
34	*ჰოლანდი-	*ჰოლანდი-ელ-ი
	** holand-i-	** holand-i-el-i
		*** The Dutch
35	*ბელგი-	*ბელგი-ელ-ი
	** belgi-	** belgi-el-i
		*** The Belgian
36	*ლატვი-	*ლატვი-ელ-ი
	** latvi-	** latvi-el-i
		*** The Latvian
	* Phrases and words in the Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words	

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian adjectives are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 26-31, "Supplement to Lesson No. 9" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "the work of students in groups is carried out in exactly the same way as during the fifth lesson."

An example of drawing up a flip sheet No. 1 by group No. 1:

Lesson #9	Group #1
<p style="text-align: center;">1. კახელი 2. იმერელი 3. ამერიკელი 4. ბალყარელი 5. აფრიკელი 6. აზიელი</p>	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the ninth lesson.

Lesson ten

The Georgian relative adjectives

Content of the tenth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “During this lesson, we will get acquainted with those Georgian relative adjectives, which are based on nouns, but with the addition of the prefix *სა-* (sa-) and the suffix *-ო* (-o). The prefix *სა-* (sa-) and the suffix *-ო* (-o) are written together with the nouns. Today we are going to learn 36 Georgian relative adjectives.”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 61-62)

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 9 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with Georgian relative adjectives. The dash is only used to separate the prefix *სა-* (sa-), the word stem (root word), and the suffix *-ო* (-o) from each other. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in this table so that the listeners can clearly hear the sounds (first the Georgian noun is voiced in the 2nd column, after the Georgian relative adjective in the 3rd column).

Table №10

№	The Georgian nouns	The Georgian relative adjectives
1	2	3
1	*ბავშვი-ო	*სა-ბავშვი-ო
	** bavshv-i	** sa-bavshv-o ¹
	*** Child	*** Childish (Children's)
2	*ბაზარი-ო	*სა-ბაზარი-ო
	** bazar-i	** sa-bazr-o ^{1,4}
	*** Market	*** Market-oriented
3	*ბანაკი-ო	*სა-ბანაკი-ო
	** banak-i	** sa-banak-o ¹
	*** Camp	*** Camp (lifestyle ⁶)
4	*ბარგი-ო	*სა-ბარგი-ო
	** barg-i	** sa-barg-o ¹
	*** Cargo	*** Cargo (vehicle ⁶)
5	*ბინა	*სა-ბინა-ო
	** bina	** sa-bina-o
	*** Apartment (House)	*** Housing (space ⁶)
6	*გმირი-ო	*სა-გმირი-ო
	** gmir-i	** sa-gmir-o ¹
	*** Hero	*** Heroic
7	*ექიმი-ო	*სა-ექიმი-ო
	** eqim-i	** sa-eqim-o ¹
	*** Doctor (Medic)	*** Medical
	*ვაჭარი-ო	*სა-ვაჭარი-ო

8	** vatchar-i	** sa-vatchr-o ^{1,4}
	*** Merchant (Trader)	*** Mercantile (Trading)
9	*მგზავრ-ი	*სა-მგზავრ-ო
	** mgzavr-i	** sa-mgzavr-o ¹
10	*** Passenger	*** Passenger's
	*თემ-ი	*სა-თემ-ო
	** them-i	** sa-them-o ¹
11	*** Community	*** Communal
	*მეცნიერ-ი	*სა-მეცნიერ-ო
	** metsnier-i	** sa-metsnier-o ¹
12	*** Scientist	*** Scientific
	*მკურნალ-ი	*სა-მკურნალ-ო
	** mkurnal-i	** sa-mkurnal-o ¹
13	*** Healer (Physician)	*** Healing (Curative)
	*ზღვა	*სა-ზღვა-ო
	** zgrva	** sa-zgrva-o
14	*** Sea	*** Marine
	*მდინარ-ე	*სა-მდინარ-ო
	** mdinar-e	** sa-mdinar-o ²
15	*** River	*** Riverine
	*ხმელეთ-ი	*სა-ხმელეთ-ო
	** khmeleth-i	** sa-khmeleth-o ¹
16	*** Land	*** Overland
	*ჰაერ-ი	*სა-ჰაერ-ო
	** haer-i	** sa-haer-o ¹
17	*** Air	*** Aerial
	*ტყე	*სა-ტყე-ო
	** tqke	** sa-tqke-o
18	*** Forest	*** Woodsy
	*მხარე	*სა-მხარე-ო
	** mkhare	** sa-mkhare-o
19	*** Region	*** Regional
	*ეკლესი-ა	*სა-ეკლესი-ო
	** eklesi-a	** sa-eklesi-o ³
20	*** Church	*** Churchly (Ecclesiastical)
	*მამულ-ი	*სა-მამულ-ო
	** mamul-i	** sa-mamul-o ¹
21	*** Fatherland (Homeland)	*** Nationalistic (Native)
	*სოფელ-ი	*სა-სოფელ-ო
	** sopel-i	** sa-sopl-o ^{1,5}
22	*** Village	*** Rural
	*ოჯახ-ი	*სა-ოჯახ-ო
	** ojakh-i	** sa-ojakh-o ¹
23	*** Family	*** Homely
	*ქალაქ-ი	*სა-ქალაქ-ო
	** qalaq-i	** sa-qalaq-o ¹
	*** City	*** Urban

24	*ხალხ-ი	*სა-ხალხ-ო
	** khalkh-i	** sa-khalkh-o ¹
	*** People (Nation)	*** Folk or People's (National)
25	*ზამთარ-ი	*სა-ზამთარ-ო
	** zamthar-i	** sa-zamthr-o ^{1,4}
	*** Winter	*** Wintry, or Wintery (time ⁶)
26	*კავშირ-ი	*სა-კავშირ-ო
	** kavshir-i	** sa-kavshir-o ¹
	*** Union (Alliance)	*** Allied (flag ⁶)
27	*გაზაფხულ-ი	*სა-გაზაფხულ-ო
	** gazapkhul-i	** sa-gazapkhul-o ¹
	*** Spring	*** Spring (weather ⁶)
28	*შემოდგომ-ა	*სა-შემოდგომ-ო
	** shemodgom-a	** sa-shemodgom-o ³
	*** Autumn	*** Autumnal (season ⁶)
29	*ზაფხულ-ი	*სა-ზაფხულ-ო
	** zapkhul-i	** sa-zapkhul-o ¹
	*** Summer	*** Summery, or Summerly (camp ⁶)
30	*ეჭვ-ი	*სა-ეჭვ-ო
	** etchv-i	** sa-etchv-o ¹
	*** Doubt	*** Doubtful
31	*ზავ-ი	*სა-ზავ-ო
	** zav-i	** sa-zav-o ¹
	*** Peace (Truce)	*** Peaceful (Trucial)
32	*მაგალით-ი	*სა-მაგალით-ო
	** megalith-i	** sa-megalith-o ¹
	*** Example	*** Exemplary
33	*სურსათ-ი	*სა-სურსათ-ო
	** sursath-i	** sa-sursath-o ¹
	*** Food	*** Grocery (store)
34	*პასუხ-ი	*სა-პასუხ-ო
	** pasukh-i	** sa-pasukh-o ¹
	*** Answer (Response)	*** Reciprocal (Responding)
35	*მთავრობ-ა	*სა-მთავრობ-ო
	** mthavrob-a	** sa-mthavrob-o ³
	*** Government	*** Governmental
36	*ქორწილ-ი	*სა-ქორწილ-ო
	** qortzil-i	** sa-qortzil-o ¹
	*** Wedding (Marriage)	*** Wedding, or Bridal (feast ⁶)
	* Phrases and words in the Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words	

¹ Ending vowel o (i) is omitted

² Ending vowel y (e) is omitted

³ Ending vowel s (a) is omitted

⁴ The vowel letter s (a) in the root-word is omitted

⁵ The vowel letter y (e) in the root-word is omitted

⁶This noun is used for better understand the essence of the relative adjective.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 nouns and 6 corresponding relative adjectives), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 32-37, "Supplement to Lesson No. 10" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each member of the group writes an equal number of Georgian words (For example, in group No. 1, one of the 3 members writes those pairs of Georgian nouns and the corresponding relative adjectives that have ordinal numbers 1 and 2 in table No. 1; another member of the same group writes pairs of Georgian words that have serial numbers 3 and 4; the last, third, member of this group writes pairs of Georgian words that have serial numbers 5 and 6). Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 10	Group No. 10
	1. ბავშვი - საბავშვო
	2. ბაზარი - საბაზრო
	3. ბანაკი - საბანაკო
	4. ბარგი - საბარგო
	5. ბინა - საბინაო
	6. გმირი - საგმირო

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the tenth lesson.

Lesson eleven

The Georgian words about places of activity or location of a person

The content of the eleventh lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “In the previous lesson, we learned how nouns are converted into relative adjectives using the prefix *სა-* and the suffix *-ი*. In this lesson, we will use the same prefix *სა-* and the same suffix *-ი* to form other nouns with the help of some nouns, which denote places of activity or places of residence of a person. The prefix *სა-* and the suffix *-ი* are written together with nouns. Today we will study 36 new cases of transformation of nouns.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 61-62).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 10 on the big screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with 36 Georgian nouns that designate places of activity or places of residence of a person. The dash is only used to separate the prefix *სა-* (*sa-*), the word stem (root word) and the suffix *-ი* (*-o*) from each other. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly (first, the Georgian word is voiced in the 2nd column, then the Georgian word in the 3rd column).

Table №11

№	The Georgian nouns	The Georgian nouns that denote places of activity or places of residence of a person
1	2	3
1	*აგენტ-ი	*სა-აგენტ-ო
	** agent-i	** sa-agent-o ¹
	*** Agent	*** Agency
2	*ავადმყოფ-ი	*სა-ავადმყოფ-ო
	** avadmqkop-i	** sa-avadmqkop-o ¹
	*** Patient	*** Hospital
3	*ელჩ-ი	*სა-ელჩ-ო
	** elch-i	** sa-elch-o ¹
	*** Ambassador	*** Embassy
4	*კონსულ-ი	*სა-კონსულ-ო
	** konsul-i	** sa-konsul-o ¹
	*** Consul	*** Consulate
5	*მმართველ-ი	*სა-მმართველ-ო
	** mmarthvel-i	** sa-mmarthvel-o ¹
	*** Manager	*** Management (Administration)
6	*მდივან-ი	*სა-მდივნ-ო
	** mdivan-i	** sa-mdivn-o ^{1,4}
	*** Secretary	*** Secretariat
7	*მეფ-ე	*სა-მეფ-ო
	** mep-e	** sa-mep-o ²

	*** King	*** Kingdom
8	*მინისტრ-ი	*სა-მინისტრ-ო
	** ministr-i	** sa-ministr-o ¹
	*** Minister	*** Ministry
9	*მუშა	*სა-მუშა-ო
	** musha	** sa-musha-o
	*** Worker	*** Work
10	*მფლობელ-ი	*სა-მფლობელ-ო
	** mpobel-i	** sa-mpobel-o ¹
	*** Possessor	*** Possession
11	*მშობელ-ი	*სა-მშობლ-ო
	** mshobel-i	** sa-mshobl-o ^{1,5}
	*** Parent	*** Motherland
12	*ნაპირ-ი	*სა-ნაპირ-ო
	** napir-i	** sa-napir-o ¹
	*** Shore	*** Coast (Seafront)
13	*პარიკმახერ-ი	*სა-პარიკმახერ-ო
	** parikmakher-i	** sa-parikmakher-o ¹
	*** Hairdresser	*** Barbershop
14	*სადილ-ი	*სა-სადილ-ო
	** sadil-i	** sa-sadil-o ¹
	*** Lunch	*** Canteen
15	*სამართალ-ი	*სა-სამართლ-ო
	** samarthal-i	** sa-samarthl-o ^{1,4}
	*** Law	*** Trial (Law court)
16	*სტუმარ-ი	*სა-სტუმრ-ო
	** stumar-i	** sa-stumr-o ^{1,4}
	*** Guest	*** Hotel
17	*ქართველ-ი	*სა-ქართველ-ო
	** qarthvel-i	** sa-qarthvel-o ¹
	*** Georgian	*** Georgia
18	*მეგრელ-ი	*სა-მეგრელ-ო
	** megrel-i	** sa-megrel-o ¹
	*** Mingrelian (Inhabitant in the western part of Georgia)	*** Mingrelia (Region in the western part of Georgia)
19	*ღამ-ე	* სა-ღამ-ო
	** gram-e	** sa-gram-o ²
	*** Night	*** Soiree (Evening)
20	*ხელმწიფ-ე	*სა-ხელმწიფ-ო
	** khelmtzip-e	** sa-khelmtzip-o ²
	*** Sovereign	*** State
21	*ხელოსან-ი	*სა-ხელოსნ-ო
	** khelosan-i	** sa-khelosn-o ^{1,4}
	*** Artisan	*** Workroom
22	*მასწავლებელ-ი	*სა-მასწავლებლ-ო
	** mastzavlebl-i	** sa-mastzavlebl-o ^{1,5}
	*** Teacher	*** Teacher's room

23	*მზარეულ-ი	*სა-მზარეულ-ო
	** mzareul-i	** sa-mzareul-o ¹
	*** Cook	*** Kitchen
24	*მთავარ-ი	*სა-მთავრ-ო
	** mthavar-i	** sa-mthavr-o ^{1,4}
	*** Prince	*** Principality
25	*გრაფ-ი	*სა-გრაფ-ო
	** grap-i	** sa-grap-o ¹
	*** Earl	*** Earldom
26	*დისპეტჩერ-ი	*სა-დისპეტჩერ-ო
	** dispatcher-i	** sa-dispatcher-o ¹
	*** Dispatcher	*** Dispatching room
27	*პატიმარ-ი	*სა-პატიმრ-ო
	** patimar-i	** sa-patimr-o ^{1,4}
	*** Prisoner	*** Prison
28	*მკითხველ-ი	*სა-მკითხველ-ო
	** mkithkhvel-i	** sa-mkithkhvel-o ¹
	*** Reader	*** Reading room
29	*ხან-ი	*სა-ხან-ო
	** khan-i	** sa-khan-o ¹
	*** Khan	*** Khanate
30	*ხალიფ-ა	*სა-ხალიფ-ო
	** khalith-a	** sa-khalith-o ³
	*** Caliph	*** Caliphate
31	*სულთან-ი	*სა-სულთნ-ო
	** sulthan-i	** sa-sulthn-o ^{1,4}
	*** Sultan	*** Sultanate
32	*ხაბაზ-ი	*სა-ხაბაზ-ო
	** khabaz-i	** sa-khabaz-o ¹
	*** Baker	*** Bakery
33	*ჰერცოგ-ი	*სა-ჰერცოგ-ო
	** hertsog-i	** sa-hertsog-o ¹
	*** Duke	*** Dukedom
34	*ბაჟ-ი	*სა-ბაჟ-ო
	** bzh-i	** sa-bzh-o ¹
	*** Duty	*** Custom house
35	*ამირ-ა	*სა-ამირ-ო
	** amir-a	** sa-amir-o ³
	*** Emir	*** Emirate
36	*საფლავ-ი	*სა-საფლა-ო
	** saplav-i	** sa-sapla-o ^{1,6}
	*** Grave (Tomb)	*** Cemetery
	* Phrases and words in the Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words	

¹ Ending vowel o (i) is omitted

² Ending vowel ე (e) is omitted

³ Ending vowel Ⴛ (a) is omitted

⁴ The vowel letter Ⴛ (a) in the root-word is omitted

⁵ The vowel letter Ⴛ (e) in the root-word is omitted

⁶ The consonant letter Ⴛ (v) in the root-word is omitted

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. Each group will receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 nouns each and 6 corresponding nouns with a suffix and a prefix), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 38-43, "Supplement to Lesson No. 11" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each member of the group writes an equal number of Georgian words as in the previous lesson. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #11	Group #1
1. აგენტო - სააგენტო	
2. ავადმყოფი - საავადმყოფო	
3. ელჩი - საელჩო	
4. კონსული - საკონსული	
5. მმართველი - სამმართველო	
6. მდივანი - სამდივნო	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the eleventh lesson.

Lesson twelve

The Georgian words about human professions

Content of the twelfth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “This lesson will be a kind of continuation of the previous one because we will get acquainted with new ways of transforming nouns. In particular, today we will get acquainted with the prefix მე- (me-) and the suffix -ე (-e), with the help of which some nouns are transformed into such nouns that denote a person's profession. The prefix მე- and the suffix -ე are written together with nouns. Remember that these nouns are used for males and females without change. Today we will study 36 cases of transformation of nouns.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the “Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language” (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 61-62).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 11 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with 36 Georgian nouns that denote a person's professions. The dash is used only to separate the prefix მე- (me-), the stem of the word (root word) and the suffix -ე (-e) from each other. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №12

№	The Georgian nouns	Georgian nouns that designate a person's professions
1	2	3
1	* ბაღ-ი	* მე-ბაღ-ე
	** bagr-i	** me-bagr-e ¹
	*** Garden	*** Gardener
2	*ბოსტან-ი	*მე-ბოსტან-ე
	** bostan-i	** me-bostn-e ^{1,4}
	*** Vegetable garden	*** Vegetable gardener
3	*ვენახ-ი	*მე-ვენახ-ე
	** venakh-i	** me-venakh-e ¹
	*** Vineyard	*** Vine-grower
4	*მინდორ-ი	*მე-მინდორ-ე
	** mindor-i	** me-mindvr-e ^{1,5}
	*** Field	*** Field-grower
5	*ცხოველ-ი	*მე-ცხოველ-ე
	** tskhoveli-i	** me-tskhoveli-e ¹
	*** Animal	*** Stock-breeder
6	*მცენარ-ე	*მე-მცენარ-ე
	** mtsenar-e	** me-mtsenar-e
	*** Plant	*** Plant breeder
7	*თევზ-ი	*მე-თევზ-ე
	** thevz-i	** me-thevz-e ¹

	*** Fish	*** Fishman
8	*ირემ-ი	*მე-ირემ-ე
	** irem-i	** me-irem-e ¹
	*** Deer	*** Reindeer herder
9	*საქონელ-ი	*მე-საქონელ-ე
	** saqonel-i	** me-saqonl-e ^{1,6}
	*** Cattle (Livestock)	*** Cattle-breeder
10	*ფრინველ-ი	*მე-ფრინველ-ე
	** prinvel-i	** me-prinvel-e ¹
	*** Bird	*** Poultry breeder
11	*ღორ-ი	*მე-ღორ-ე
	** gror-i	** me-gror-e ¹
	*** Pig	*** Pig breeder
12	*ცხენ-ი	*მე-ცხენ-ე
	** tskhen-i	** me-tskhen-e ¹
	*** Horse	*** Horse breeder
13	*მანქან-ა	*მე-მანქან-ე
	** manqan-a	** me-manqan-e ²
	*** Car	*** Driver
14	*ხანძარ-ი	*მე-ხანძრ-ე
	** khandzar-i	** me-khandzr-e ^{1,4}
	*** Fire	*** Fire fighter
15	*წისკვილ-ი	*მე-წისკვილ-ე
	** tzisqvil-i	** me-tzisqvil-e ¹
	*** Mill	*** Miller
16	*ავეჯ-ი	*მე-ავეჯ-ე
	** avej-i	** me-avej-e ¹
	*** Furniture	*** Furniture maker
17	*გვირაბ-ი	*მე-გვირაბ-ე
	** gvirab-i	** me-gvirab-e ¹
	*** Tunnel	*** Tunneler
18	*დესანტ-ი	*მე-დესანტ-ე
	** desant-i	** me-desant-e ¹
	*** Descent	*** Paratrooper
19	*ხილ-ი	*მე-ხილ-ე
	** khil-i	** me-khil-e ¹
	*** Fruit	*** Fruit grower
20	*ფურ-ი	*მე-ფურ-ე
	** pur-i	** me-pur-e ¹
	*** Cow	*** Cow breeder
21	*გუთან-ი	*მე-გუთნ-ე
	** guthan-i	** me-guthn-e ^{1,4}
	*** Plow	*** Plougher
22	*თამბაქო	*მე-თამბაქო-ე
	** thambaqo	** me-thambaqo-e
	*** Tobacco	*** Tobacco grower
	*მტრედ-ი	*მე-მტრედ-ე

23	** mtred-i	** me-mtred-e ¹
	*** Pigeon	*** Pigeon breeder
24	*ნაგავ-ი	*მე-ნაგვ-ე
	** nagav-i	** me-nagy-e ^{1,4}
25	*** Garbage	*** Garbage man
	*ფოლად-ი	*მე-ფოლად-ე
	** polad-i	** me-polad-e ¹
26	*** Steel	*** Steel-maker
	*ქათამ-ი	*მე-ქათმ-ე
	** qatham-i	** me-qathm-e ^{1,4}
27	*** Hen	*** Hen breeder
	*იარაღ-ი	*მე-იარაღ-ე
	** iaragr-i	** me-iaragr-e ¹
28	*** Weapon (Gun)	*** Armourer (Gunsmith)
	*ისარ-ი	*მე-ისრ-ე
	** isar-i	** me-isr-e ^{1,4}
29	*** Arrow	*** Arrow-shooter
	*ლექს-ი	*მე-ლექს-ე
	** leqs-i	** me-leqs-e ¹
30	*** Verse (Poem)	*** Verse-maker (Poet)
	*პურ-ი	*მე-პურ-ე
	** pur-i	** me-pur-e ¹
31	*** Bread	*** Breadmaker
	*საზღვარ-ი	*მე-საზღვრ-ე
	** sazgrvar-i	** me-sazgrvr-e ^{1,4}
32	*** Border	*** Border guard
	*საფლავ-ი	*მე-საფლავ-ე
	** saplav-i	** me-saplav-e ¹
33	*** Grave	*** Gravedigger
	*ქრთამ-ი	*მე-ქრთამ-ე
	** qrtham-i	** me-qrtham-e ¹
34	*** Bribe	*** Bribe-taker (Briber)
	*ღვინ-ი	*მე-ღვინ-ე
	** grvin-i	** me-grvin-e ³
35	*** Wine	*** Winemaker
	*ყვავილ-ი	*მე-ყვავილ-ე
	** qkvavil-i	** me-qkvavil-e ¹
36	*** Flower	*** Flower grower
	*ცხვარ-ი	*მე-ცხვარ-ე
	** tskhvar-i	** me-tskhvar-e ¹
	*** Sheep	*** Sheep breeder
* Phrases and words in the Georgian language		
** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words		
*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words		

¹ Ending vowel o (i) is omitted

² Ending vowel j (e) is omitted

³ Ending vowel s (a) is omitted

- ⁴ The vowel letter ა (a) in the root-word is omitted
- ⁵ The vowel letter ო (o) is replaced by the consonant letter ვ (v)
- ⁶ The vowel letter ე (e) in the root-word is omitted

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 nouns each and 6 corresponding nouns each, which denote the profession of a person), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 44-49, "Supplement to lesson No. 12" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each member of the group writes an equal number of Georgian words as in the previous lesson (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)”.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 12	Group No. 1
<p style="text-align: center;"> 1. ბალი - მებაღე 2. ბოსტანი - მებოსტნე 3. ვენახი - მევენახე 4. მინდორი - მემინდვრე 5. ცხოველი - მეცხოველე 6. მცენარე - მემცენარე </p>	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twelfth lesson.

Lesson thirteen

The Georgian adverbs of mode of action

The content of the thirteenth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “Today we will have to get acquainted with those Georgian adverbs of mode of action, which are mostly formed by adding the suffix -ად (-ad) to adjectives. The suffix -ად is written together with adjectives. Today we will study 36 cases of the formation of Georgian adverbs of mode of action.”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 61-62).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 13 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with the 36 Georgian adverbs of the mode of action that characterize the predicate. The dash is only used to separate the word stem (root word) and the suffix -ად (-ad) from each other. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №13

№	The Georgian adjectives (In parentheses English nouns are presented only for a clearer representation of the semantic purpose of adjectives)	The Georgian adverbs of the mode of action
1	2	3
1	*ცუდ-ი	*ცუდ-ად
	** tsud-i	** tsud-ad ¹
	*** Bad (person)	*** Badly
2	*კარგ-ი	*კარგ-ად
	** karg-i	** karg-ad ¹
	*** Good (worker)	*** Well
3	*მძიმე	*მძიმე-დ
	** mdzime	** mdzime-d ²
	*** Heavy (cargo)	*** Heavily
4	*მსუბუქ-ი	*მსუბუქ-ად
	** msubuq-i	** msubuq-ad ¹
	*** Light (suitcase)	*** Lightly
5	*სწრაფ-ი	*სწრაფ-ად
	** stzrap-i	** stzrap-ad ¹
	*** Fast (Pace)	*** Quickly
6	*ზანტ-ი	*ზანტ-ად
	** zant-i	** zant-ad ¹
	*** Lazy (pupil)	*** Lazily
7	*ჯიუტ-ი	*ჯიუტ-ად
	** jiut-i	** jiut-ad ¹

	*** Stubborn, or Persistent (man)	*** Stubbornly (Persistently)
8	*ფროხილ-ი	*ფროხილ-ად
	** prthkhl-i	** prthkhl-ad ¹
	*** Careful (man)	*** Carefully
9	*კოხტა	*კოხტა-დ
	** kokhta	** kokhta-d ²
	*** Grace (figure)	*** Gracefully
10	*უხვი-ი	*უხვი-ად
	** ukhv-i	** ukhv-ad ¹
	*** Generous (gift)	*** Generously
11	*ლამაზ-ი	*ლამაზ-ად
	** lamaz-i	** lamaz-ad ¹
	*** Beautiful (face)	*** Beautifully
12	*ჩუმ-ი	*ჩუმ-ად
	** chum-i	** chum-ad ¹
	*** Quiet (voice)	*** Quietly
13	*მხიარულ-ი	*მხიარულ-ად
	** mkhiarul-i	** mkhiarul-ad ²
	*** Fun (mood)	*** Gaily (Merrily)
14	*მტკიცე	*მტკიცე-დ
	** mtkitse	** mtkitse-d ²
	*** Solid (decision)	*** Solidly
15	*ადვილ-ი	*ადვილ-ად
	** advil-i	** advil-ad ¹
	*** Easy (work)	*** Easily
16	*რთულ-ი	*რთულ-ად
	** rthul-i	** rthul-ad ¹
	*** Complicated (question)	*** Complicatedly
17	*იაფ-ი	*იაფ-ად
	** iap-i	** iap-ad ¹
	*** Cheap (goods)	*** Cheaply
18	*ძვირ-ი	*ძვირ-ად
	** dzvir-i	** dzvir-ad ¹
	*** Expensive (goods)	*** Expensively
19	*თავისუფალ-ი	*თავისუფლ-ად
	** thavisupal-i	** thavisupl-ad ^{1,3}
	*** Free (people)	*** Freely
20	*ცივ-ი	*ცივ-ად
	** tsiv-i	** tsiv-ad ¹
	*** Cold (wind)	*** Coldly
21	*თხელ-ი	*თხლ-ად
	** thkhl-i	** thkhl-ad ^{1,4}
	*** Thin (layer)	*** Thinly
22	*ზეპირ-ი	*ზეპირ-ად
	** zepir-i	** zepir-ad ¹
	*** Oral (report)	*** Orally
	*იშვიათ-ი	*იშვიათ-ად

23	** ishviath-i	** ishviath-ad ¹
	*** Rare (guest)	*** Rarely
24	*მოკლე	*მოკლე-დ
	** mokle	** mokle-d ²
	*** Short (term)	*** Shortly
25	*მაგარ-ი	*მაგარ-ად
	** magar-i	** magr-ad ^{1,3}
	*** Sturdy (walnut)	*** Sturdily
26	*რბილ-ი	*რბილ-ად
	** rbil-i	** rbil-ad ¹
	*** Soft (leather)	*** Softly
27	*ტკბილ-ი	*ტკბილ-ად
	** tkbil-i	** tkbil-ad ¹
	*** Sweet (grapes)	*** Sweetly
28	*მწარე	*მწარე-დ
	** mtzare	** mtzare-d ²
	*** Bitter (taste)	*** Bitterly
29	*ფარულ-ი	*ფარულ-ად
	** parul-i	** parul-ad ¹
	*** Secret (voting)	*** Secretly
30	*ვიწრო	*ვიწრო-დ
	** vitzro	** vitzro-d ²
	*** Narrow (street)	*** Narrowly
31	*ნაყოფიერ-ი	*ნაყოფიერ-ად
	** naqkoper-i	** naqkoper-ad ¹
	*** Productive (labor)	*** Productively
32	*ხარბ-ი	*ხარბ-ად
	** kharb-i	** kharb-ad ¹
	*** Greedy (man)	*** Greedily
33	*საშინელ-ი	*საშინელ-ად
	** sashinel-i	** sashinl-ad ^{1,4}
	*** Terrible (weather)	*** Terribly
34	*ამაყ-ი	*ამაყ-ად
	** amaqk-i	** amaqk-ad ¹
	*** Proud (girl)	*** Proudly
35	*მარდ-ი	*მარდ-ად
	** mard-i	** mard-ad ¹
	*** Nimble (guy)	*** Nimbly
36	*მორცხვ-ი	*მორცხვ-ად
	** mortskhv-i	** mortskhv-ad ¹
	*** Shy, or Bashful (person)	*** Shyly (Bashfully)
	* Phrases and words in the Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words	

¹ Ending vowel o (i) is omitted

² The first letter of the suffix ა (a) is omitted

³ The vowel letter ა (a) in the root-word is omitted

⁴ The vowel letter Ⴃ (e) in the root-word is omitted

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 adjectives and 6 adverbs of mode of action), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 50-55, "Supplement to Lesson No. 13" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 13 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each member of the group writes an equal number of Georgian words as in the previous lesson (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 13	Group No. 1
1. ცუდი - ცუდად	
2. კარგი - კარგად	
3. მძიმე - მძიმედ	
4. მსუბუქი - მსუბუქად	
5. სწრაფი - სწრაფად	
6. ზანტი - ზანტად	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirteenth lesson.

Lesson fourteen

The Georgian verbal action names

The content of the fourteenth lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “Today we should complete a series of lessons that are devoted to the ways of forming some Georgian words based on other words using prefixes and suffixes. We should familiarize ourselves with 36 Georgian words, which are referred to as verbal names of action. The fact is that there is no infinitive (an indefinite form of the verb) in the Georgian language, and the mentioned Georgian verbal names of the action act as the Georgian infinitive. Some Georgian verbal action names can be formed by adding different prefixes to other action verb names, which could be conditionally called basic verb names. We will get acquainted with the prefixes used today in more detail later, when we come to grips with the study of Georgian verbs. Right now we just have to learn the pronunciation of these prefixes.”

Note: This lesson is based on materials from the article "Georgian language" (104th page of the 13th volume of the second edition of the Great Soviet Encyclopedia) and a large Georgian-English internet-dictionary, or “დიდი ქართულ-ინგლისური ლექსიკონი” (this internet-dictionary is available on the website: <http://www.nplg.gov.ge/gwdict/index.php?a=list&d=46&t=dict&w1=%E1%83%90&w2>).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 14 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with the 36 Georgian verbal names of the action. The dash is only used to separate base verbs and prefixes from each other”. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №14

№	Georgian basic verbal action names	Georgian derivative verbal action name (prefix + basic verbal action name)
1	2	3
1	* წერა	* ჩა-წერა
	** tzera	** cha-tzera
	*** To write	*** To write down
2	* კითხვა	* წა-კითხვა
	** kithkhva	** tza-kithkhva
	*** To read	*** To read out
3	* ქრა	* და-ქრა
	** tchra	** da-tchra
	*** To cut	*** To cut out
4	* თხრა	* გა-თხრა
	** thkhra	** ga-thkhra
	*** To dig	*** To dig up
5	* სვლა	* წა-სვლა
	** svla	** tza-svla
	*** To go	*** To go away
	* ჯდობა	* და-ჯდობა

6	** jdoma	** da-jdoma
	*** To sit	*** To sit down
7	*ხარშვა	*მო-ხარშვა
	** kharshva	** mo-kharshva
	*** To boil	*** To brew
8	*კეთება	*შე-კეთება
	** ketheba	** she-ketheba
	*** To do	*** To repair
9	*აღება	*წა-ღება
	** 'agreba	** tza- ¹ greba
	*** To take	*** To take away
10	*თქმა	*გამო-თქმა
	** thqma	** gamo-thqma
	*** To say	*** To pronounce
11	*თესვა	*და-თესვა
	** thesva	** da-thesva
	*** To sow	*** To seed
12	*კვება	*გამო-კვება
	** kveba	** gamo-kveba
	*** To nourish	*** To feed
13	*ხატვა	* ჩა-ხატვა
	** khatva	** cha-khatva
	*** To paint	*** To paint in
14	*თრევა	*წა-თრევა
	** threva	** tza-threva
	*** To drag	*** To drag away
15	*ძებნა	*მო-ძებნა
	** dzebna	** mo-dzebna
	*** To seek	*** To seek out
16	*ცურვა	*გა-ცურვა
	** tsurva	** ga-tsurva
	*** To swim	*** To swim across
17	*წვალება	*გა-წვალება
	** tzvaleba	** ga-tzvaleba
	*** To torment	*** To exhaust
18	*ფრენა	*ა-ფრენა
	** prena	** a-prena
	*** To fly	*** To fly off
19	* მართვა	* გა-მართვა
	** marthva	** ga-marthva
	*** To govern	*** To put in order
20	*ყრა	*და-ყრა
	** qkra	** da-qkra
	*** To throw	*** To throw down
21	*ღვრა	*და-ღვრა
	** grvra	** da-grvra
	*** To pour	*** To pour out

22	*დგომა	*ა-დგომა
	** dgoma	** a-dgoma
	*** To stand	*** To stand up
23	*წოლა	*და-წოლა
	** tzola	** da-tzola
	*** To lie	*** To lie down
24	*ვარდნა	* ჩა-ვარდნა
	** vardna	** cha-vardna
	*** To fall	*** To fall into
25	*რეცხვა	*გა-რეცხვა
	** retskhva	** ga-retskhva
	*** To wash	*** To wash out
26	* ჩეხვა	* ა-ჩეხვა
	** chekhva	** a-chekhva
	*** To chop	*** To carve out
27	*ქება	*შე-ქება
	** qeba	** she-qeba
	*** To praise	*** To compliment
28	*წვა	*და-წვა
	** tzva	** da-tzva
	*** To burn	*** To burn up
29	*სმენა	*მო-სმენა
	** smena	** mo-smena
	*** To hear	** To listen
30	*სწავლა	*შე-სწავლა
	** stzavla	** she-stzavla
	*** To study	*** To learn
31	*მზადება	*მო-მზადება
	** mzadeba	** mo-mzadeba
	*** To get ready	*** To prepare
32	*კერვა	*გა-კერვა
	** kerva	** ga-kerva
	*** To sew	*** To sew up
33	*ლანძღვა	*გა-ლანძღვა
	** landzgrva	** ga-landzgrva
	*** To scold	*** To slang
34	*ხსენება	*გა-ხსენება
	** khseneba	** ga-khseneba
	*** To mention	*** To remember
35	*ნაყვა	*და-ნაყვა
	** naqva	** da-naqva
	*** To pound	*** To crush up
36	*ყვინთვა	*ჩა-ყვინთვა
	** qkvinthva	** cha-qkvinthva
	*** To dive	*** To submerge
* Phrases and words in the Georgian language		
** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words		

¹The first vowel letter (s) of the base word is deleted

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 basic verbal names of the action and 6 derivative verbal names of the action), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 56-61, "Supplement to Lesson No. 14" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each member of the group writes an equal number of Georgian words as in the previous lesson (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 14	Group No. 1
1. წერა - ჩაწერა 2. კითხვა - წაკითხვა 3. ჭრა - დაჭრა 4. თხრა - გათხრა 5. სვლა - წასვლა 6. ჯდომა - დაჯდომა	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fourteenth lesson.

Lesson fifteen

The Georgian names of relatives and acquaintances

Starting from this lesson, the students will begin the gradual assimilation of Georgian words for various purposes. In the course of getting acquainted with the Georgian vocabulary and mastering the skills of Georgian speech, you will have to get acquainted with the basic grammatical rules of Georgian spelling.

The content of the fifteenth lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "In Georgian, grammatical genders are not distinguished. The grammatical categories of a person (personality) and a thing are distinguished. To the question "who?" only the name of the person answers (father, mother, brother, sister, comrade, friend, teacher, warrior, worker, student, and so on). To the question "what?" answers everything else that falls into the category of things (horse, cow, bull, tree, stone, earth, water, air, being, mind, feeling, and so on)".

2. "A noun in the nominative case of the singular is called the initial form of the word."

3. "In their initial form, Georgian nouns end in vowels. Of the final vowels, the letter *o* (i) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (a), *ე* (e), *ო* (o), *უ* (u) - are included in the basis of the corresponding words.

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 15 on the big screen. The facilitator says: "Pay attention to how the initial forms of the words denoting a person are written in Georgian. The vowel endings of the nominative case are highlighted with a dash. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 162-163) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 21-22).

Table №15

Words denoting a person (personality)			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	მამა	mama	Father
2	დედა	deda	Mother
3	ძმა	dzma	Brother
4	და	da	Sister
5	ამხანაგ-ი	amkhanag-i	Comrade

6	მეგობარ-ი	megobar-i	Friend
7	მასწავლებელ-ი	mastzavlebel-i	Teacher
8	მეომარ-ი	meomar-i	Warrior
9	მუშა	musha	Worker
10	სტუდენტ-ი	student-i	Student
11	კაცი	kats-i	Man
12	მოლარე	molare	Cashier
13	ბიჭ-ი	bitch-i	Boy
14	გოგო	gogo	Girl
15	ქმარ-ი	qmar-i	Husband
16	ცოლ-ი	tsol-i	Wife
17	საქმრო	samqro	Fiance (Bridegroom)
18	საცოლო	satsolo	Fiancee (Bride)
19	რძალ-ი	rdzal-i	Daughter-in-law
20	სიძე	sidze	Son-in-law
21	სიმამრ-ი	simamr-i	Father-in-law (Father of the wife)
22	სიდედრ-ი	sidedr-i	Mother-in-law (Mother of the wife)
23	მამამთილ-ი	mamamthil-i	Father-in-law (Father of the husband)
24	დედამთილ-ი	dedamthil-i	Mother-in-law (Mother of the husband)
25	პაპა	παπα	Grandfather
26	ბებია	bebia	Grandmother
27	ნაცნობ-ი	natsnob-i	Familiar
28	ნათესავ-ი	nathesav-i	Relative

29	ძიძა	dzidza	Nurse
30	მსახურ-ი	msakhur-i	Servant
31	მოახლე	moakhle	Maid
32	მხატვარ-ი	mkhatvar-i	Painter
33	ვაჭარ-ი	vatchar-i	Merchant
34	მჭედელ-ი	mtchedel-i	Blacksmith
35	დურგალ-ი	durgal-i	Carpenter
36	მწყემს-ი	mtzqkems-i	Shepherd

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 62-64, "Supplement to Lesson No. 15" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The moderators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only the words in Georgian on the flip sheet: the work of the listeners in groups is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson. Each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words)."

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 15	Group No. 1
	1. ძამა
	2. დედა
	3. ძმა
	4. და
	5. ამხანაგი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifteenth lesson.

Lesson sixteen

Names and surnames of the Georgian poets and writers

The content of the sixteenth lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains the following to the audience:

1. “In the previous lesson, we got acquainted with the words that belong to the Georgian grammatical categories of a person (personality). These words answer the question “who?”. It is well known that people communicate with each other by mentioning the name and surname. That is why today our lesson is dedicated to Georgian names and surnames.”

2. “Like any Georgian noun, Georgian names and Georgian surnames end in a vowel. As we already know, of the final vowels, the letter *ო* (i) is the ending of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (a), *ე* (e), *ო* (o), *უ* (u) – belong to the basis of the corresponding words. It should also be remembered that the noun in the nominative case of the singular is called the initial form of the Georgian word”.

3. “Georgian surnames have their own distinctive endings, with the help of which they differ from surnames of non-Georgian origin. The most common endings of Georgian surnames themselves are - შვილი (- shvili) and - ძე (- dze), as well as - ა (- a) for surnames of Mingrelian origin [It should be noted that English synonyms for Georgian words შვილი (shvili) and ძე (dze) are respectively "Child" and "son"]. In addition, there are such Georgian surnames that at the end of the word have suffixes already familiar to us: - ელ (- el), - ულ (-ul) and - ურ (-ur). It should be remembered that Georgian surnames do not distinguish the sexual commitment of the bearers of the surname.

4. “When we pronounce the name and surname together in Georgian, one should pay attention to the following feature: if the name ends in a vowel *ო* (i), then this letter is omitted (However, there are some exceptions to this rule).”

5. “And one more circumstance: today we will get acquainted not just with Georgian surnames, but with the surnames of those 36 Georgians, who in modern Georgia are called the classics of Georgian literature (poetry and / or prose). We will get acquainted with the variety of famous Georgian surnames. One and the same surname is not repeated twice”.¹

¹ The names and surnames of the figures of Georgian poetry and prose are taken from electronic information, the addresses of which are:

1. <https://ka.wikipedia.org/wiki/%E1%83%A5%E1%83%90%E1%83%A0%E1%83%97%E1%83%A3%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98%E1%83%A2%E1%83%94%E1%83%A0%E1%83%90%E1%83%A2%E1%83%A3%E1%83%A0%E1%83%90>
2. <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jCs9OD-yHrU>
3. <http://genia.ge/?p=13089>

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 16 on a large screen. The moderator says: “Let's get acquainted with the names and surnames of Georgian poets and writers.” The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №16

№	Georgian names	Georgian surnames
1	2	3
1	* შოთა	* რუსთაველი
	** shotha	** rustaveli
	*** Shota	*** Rustaveli
2	* იაკობ ¹	* ცურტაველი
	** iakob	** tsurtaveli
	*** Jacob	*** Tsurtaveli
3	* კონსტანტინე	* გამსახურდია
	** konstantine	** gamsakhurdia
	*** Konstantin	*** Gamsakhurdia
4	* ლუკა	* რაზიკაშვილი ²
	** luka	** razikashvili
	*** Luka	*** Razikashvili
5	* იოანე	* შავთელი
	** ioane	** shavtheli
	*** Ioane (John)	*** Shavteli
6	* ლეო	* ქიაჩელი
	** leo	** qiacheli
	*** Leo	*** Kiacheli
7	* ილია	* ჭავჭავაძე
	** ilia	** tchavtchavadze
	*** Ilya	*** Chavchavadze
8	* სულხან ¹	* ორბელიანი
	** sulkhan	** orbeliani
	*** Sulkhan	*** Orbeliani
9	* გრიგოლ ¹	* რობაქიძე
	** grigol	** robaqidze
	*** Grigol (Gregory)	*** Robakidze
10	* ნიკოლოზ ¹	* ბარათაშვილი
	** nikoloz	** barathashvili
	*** Nikoloz (Nicholas)	*** Baratashvili
11	* ვახუშტი ³	* ბატონიშვილი
	** vakhushti	** batonishvili
	*** Vakhushti	*** Batonishvili
12	* ნიკო	* ლორთქიფანიძე
	** niko	** lorthqipanidze
	*** Niko	*** Lortkipanidze

13	* გალაქტიონ ¹	* ტაზიძე
	** galaqtion	** tabidze
	*** Galaktion	*** Tabidze
14	* ბესარიონ ¹	* გაბაშვილი
	** besarion	** gabashvili
	*** Besarion (Vissarion)	*** Gabashvili
15	* ალექსანდრე	* ჩიჩუა ⁴
	** aleqsandre	** chichua
	*** Alexander	*** Chichua
16	* ტერენტი ³	* კვირკველია ⁵
	** terenti	** kvirkvelia
	*** Terenty (Terence)	*** Kvirvelia
17	* დავით ¹	* კლდიაშვილი
	** davith	** kldiashvili
	*** David	*** Kldiashvili
18	* გიორგი ³	* ლეონიძე
	** giorgi	** leonidze
	*** George	*** Leonidze
19	* აკაკი ³	* წერეთელი
	** akaki	** tzeretheli
	*** Akaki	*** Tsereteli
20	* ალექსანდრე	* ყაზბეგი
	** aleqsandre	** qkazbegi
	*** Alexander	*** Kazbegi
21	* კოლაუ	* ნადირაძე
	** kolau	** nadiradze
	*** Kolau	*** Nadiradze
22	* დავით ¹	* გურამიშვილი
	** davith	** guramishvili
	*** David	*** Guramishvili
23	* ეგნატე	* ინგოროყვა ⁶
	** egnate	** ingoroqva
	*** Egnate (Ignatius)	*** Ingorokva
24	* ირაკლი ³	* აბაშიძე
	** irakli	** abashidze
	*** Irakli (Heraclius)	*** Abashidze
25	* პაოლო	* იაშვილი
	** paolo	** iashvili
	*** Paolo	*** Iashvili
26	* ანტონ ¹	* ფურცელაძე
	** anton	** purtseladze
	*** Anton (Anthony)	*** Purtseladze
27	* ლევან ¹	* გოთუა
	** levan	** gothua
	*** Levan	*** Gotua
28	* დიმიტრი ³	* ხოშტარია ⁷
	** dimitri	** khoshtaria

	*** Dimitri	*** Khoshtaria
29	* გიორგი ³	* ერისთავი
	** giorgi	** eristhavi
	*** George	*** Eristavi
30	* ნოდარ ¹	* დუმბაძე
	** nodar	** dumbadze
	*** Nodar	*** Dumbadze
31	* იოანე	* საბანისძე
	** ioane	** sabanisdze
	*** Ioane (John)	*** Sabanisdze
32	* იაკობ ¹	* გოგებაშვილი
	** iakob	** gogebashvili
	*** Jacob	*** Gogebashvili
33	* იოსებ ¹	* მამულაშვილი ⁸
	** ioseb	** mamulashvili
	*** Joseph	*** Mamulashvili
34	* გიორგი ³	* მერჩულე
	** giorgi	** merchule
	*** George	*** Merchule
35	* მიხეილ ¹	* ჯავახიშვილი
	** mikheil	** javakhishvili
	*** Michael	*** Javakhishvili
36	* ჭაბუა	* ამირეჯიბი
	** tchabua	** amirejibi
	*** Chabua	*** Amirejibi
	* Words in Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words	

¹ The vowel case ending of the name - ი (i) - is omitted

² Luka Razikashvili is known in Georgia and beyond its borders under the pseudonym Vazha Pshavela

³ The vowel case ending of the name - ი (i) - is not omitted

⁴ Alexander Chichua is known in Georgia and beyond its borders under the surname pseudonym Abasheli

⁵ Terenty (Terence) Kvirvelia is known in Georgia and beyond its borders under the surname pseudonym Graneli

⁶ Egnate (Ignatius) Ingorokva is known in Georgia and beyond its borders under the surname pseudonym Ninoshvili

⁷ Dimitri Khoshtaria is known in Georgia and beyond its borders under the pseudonym Dutu Megreli

⁸ Joseph Mamulashvili is known in Georgia and beyond its borders under the surname pseudonym Joseph Grishashvili

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 names and 6 surnames), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction textbook contains, on pages 65-70, "Application to Lesson No. 16" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group writes two surnames and the corresponding previous names (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 16	Group No. 1
1.	შოთა რუსთაველი
2.	იაკობ ცურტაველი
3.	კონსტანტინე გამსახურდია
4.	ლუკა რაზიკაშვილი
5.	იოანე შავთელი
6.	ლეო ქიაჩელი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixteenth lesson.

Lesson seventeen

Names and surnames of the English-speaking poets and writers

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “In the previous lesson, we got acquainted with 36 famous Georgian surnames. This time we must remember the famous names of those 36 people who are rightly considered the classics of English-speaking literature (poetry and/or prose), and write these names in Georgian. Of course, many can challenge the following list of English-speaking masters of the artistic word. However, as the saying goes, “Tastes differ”. Almost all English-speaking writers-winners of the Nobel Prize in Literature are mentioned in the table”.

2. “Let's remember once again that in the English language, unlike the Georgian language, the number of letters does not always exactly match the pronounced English sounds. This difference between languages creates a certain difficulty in pronunciation and writing of English names and surnames in Georgian. There is one more feature: the names and surnames of English-speaking writers entered the Georgian speech bypassing the Russian language. Therefore, one should not be surprised that the Georgian pronunciations of English-speaking names and surnames will not coincide with English ones».

2) Next, with the help of a projector, students watch table No. 17 on a large screen. The moderator says: “Let's get acquainted with 36 names and surnames of English-speaking poets and prose writers. This list includes representatives of England and the English-speaking world. One and the same surname is not repeated twice».¹

¹ The names and surnames of the figures of English-speaking poetry and prose are taken from electronic information, the Internet addresses of which are:

1. https://ka.wikipedia.org/wiki/%E1%83%99%E1%83%90%E1%83%A2%E1%83%94%E1%83%92%E1%83%9D%E1%83%A0%E1%83%98%E1%83%90:%E1%83%98%E1%83%9C%E1%83%92%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98%E1%83%A1%E1%83%94%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98_%E1%83%9B%E1%83%AC%E1%83%94%E1%83%A0%E1%83%9A%E1%83%94%E1%83%91%E1%83%98 (The list of English writers in Georgian)

2. https://ka.wikipedia.org/wiki/%E1%83%99%E1%83%90%E1%83%A2%E1%83%94%E1%83%92%E1%83%9D%E1%83%A0%E1%83%98%E1%83%90:%E1%83%90%E1%83%9B%E1%83%94%E1%83%A0%E1%83%98%E1%83%99%E1%83%94%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98_%E1%83%9B%E1%83%AC%E1%83%94%E1%83%A0%E1%83%9A%E1%83%94%E1%83%91%E1%83%98 (The list of American writers in Georgian)

3. https://ka.wikipedia.org/wiki/%E1%83%9C%E1%83%9D%E1%83%91%E1%83%94%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98%E1%83%A1_%E1%83%9E%E1%83%A0%E1%83%94%E1%83%9B%E1%83%98%E1%83%98%E1%83%A1_%E1%83%9A%E1%83%90%E1%83%A3%E1%83%A0%E1%83%94%E1%83%90%E1%83%A2%E1%83%94%E1%83%91%E1%83%98_%E1%83%9A%E1%83%98%E1%83%A2%E1%83%94%E1%83%A0%E1%83%90%E1%83%A2%E1%83%A3%E1%83%A0%E1%83%90%E1%83%A8%E1%83%98 (The list of Nobel Prize laureates in literature in Georgian)

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №17

№	Names of English-speaking poets and prose writers in Georgian	Surnames of English-speaking poets and prose writers in Georgian
1	2	3
1	* უილიამ	* შექსპირ-ი ¹
	** uiliam	** sheqsπir-i
	*** William	*** Shakespeare
2	* ჩარლზ	* დიკენს-ი ¹
	** charlz	** dikens-i
	*** Charles	*** Dickens
3	* ჯონ	* ტოლკინ-ი ¹
	** jon	** tolkin-i
	*** John	*** Tolkien
4	* ედგარ	* პო
	** edgar	** po
	*** Edgar	*** Poe
5	* მარკ	* ტვენ-ი ¹
	** mark	** tven-i
	*** Mark	*** Twain
6	* ჯორჯ	* ორუელ-ი ¹
	** jorj	** oruel-i
	*** George	*** Orwell
7	* ართურ	* კონან დოილ-ი ¹
	** Arthur	** konan doil-i
	*** Arthur	*** Conan Doyle
8	* უილიამ	* ფოლკნერ-ი ^{1,2}
	** uiliam	** polkner-i
	*** William	*** Faulkner
9	* აგათა	* კრისტი
	** agatha	** kristi
	*** Agatha	*** Christie
10	* ბობ	* დილან-ი ^{1,2}
	** bob	** dilan-i
	*** Bob	*** Dylan
11	* რალფ	* ელისონ-ი ¹
	** ralp	** elison-i
	*** Ralph	*** Ellison
12	* ჯოზეფ	* კიპლინგ-ი ^{1,2}
	** jozep	** kipling-i
	*** Joseph	*** Kipling
	* ჯოან	* როულინგ-ი ¹

13	** joan	** rouling-i
	*** Joanne	*** Rowling
14	* ჯერომ	* სელინჯერ-ი ¹
	** jerom	** selinjer-i
	*** Jerome	*** Salinger
15	* ოსკარ	* უაილდ-ი ¹
	** oskar	** uaild-i
	*** Oscar	*** Wilde
16	* ჯორჯ	* ბაირონ-ი ¹
	** jorj	** bairon-i
	*** George	*** Byron
17	* დანიელ	* დეფო
	** daniel	** depo
	*** Daniel	*** Defoe
18	* ბეატრის	* პოტერ-ი ¹
	** beatris	** poter-i
	*** Beatrix	*** Potter
19	* ჯორჯ	* ბერნარდ შოუ ²
	** jorj	** bernard shou
	*** George	*** Bernard Shaw
20	* უილიამ	* პორტერ-ი ¹
	** uiliam	** porter-i
	*** William	*** Porter
21	* ერნესტ	* ჰემინგუეი ²
	** ernest	** heminguei
	*** Ernest	*** Hemingway
22	* დორის	* ლესინგ-ი ^{1,2}
	** doris	** lesing-i
	*** Doris	*** Lessing
23	* ტონი	* მორისონ-ი ^{1,2}
	** toni	** morison-i
	*** Toni	*** Morrison
24	* რეი	* ბრედბერი
	** rei	** bredberi
	*** Ray	*** Bradbury
25	* უილიამ	* გოლდინგ-ი ^{1,2}
	** uiliam	** golding-i
	*** William	*** Golding
26	* ჰარი	* სინკლერ ლუის-ი ^{1,2}
	** hari	** sinkler luis-i
	*** Harry	*** Sinclair Lewis
27	* ჯონ	* გოლზუორთი ²
	** jon	** golzuorthi
	*** John	*** Galsworthy
28	* თეოდორ	* დრაიზერ-ი ¹
	** theodor	** draizer-i
	*** Theodore	*** Dreiser

29	* სოლ	* ბელოუ ²
	** sol	** belou
	*** Saul	*** Bellow
30	* პატრიკ	* უაიტ-ი ^{1,2}
	** patrik	** uait-i
	*** Patrick	*** White
31	* ჯონ	* სტეინბეკ-ი ^{1,2}
	** jon	** steinbek-i
	*** John	*** Steinbeck
32	* იუჯინ	* ო'ნილ-ი ^{1,2}
	** iujin	** o'nil-i
	*** Eugene	*** O'Neill
33	* უინსტონ	* ჩერჩილ-ი ^{1,2}
	** uinston	** cherchil-i
	*** Winston	*** Churchill
34	* პერლ	* ბაკ-ი ^{1,2}
	** perl	** bak-i
	*** Pearl	*** Buck
35	* ტომას	* ელიოტ-ი ^{1,2}
	** tomas	** eliot-i
	*** Thomas	*** Eliot
36	* ბერტრან	* რასელ-ი ^{1,2}
	** bertran	** rasel-i
	*** Bertrand	*** Russell
	* Words in Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words	

¹ The ending letter ო (i) of the Georgian nominative case is highlighted with a dash, since the surname in English ends with a consonant sound

² Winner of the Nobel Prize in Literature

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 names and 6 surnames), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 71-76, "Supplement to lesson No. 17" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group writes two surnames and the corresponding previous names (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)”.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 17	Group No. 1
1. უილიამ შექსპირი	
2. ჩარლზ დიკენსი	
3. ჯონ ტოლკინი	
4. ედგარ პო	
5. მარკ ტვენი	
6. ჯორჯ ორუელი	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the seventeenth lesson.

Lesson eighteen

Names and surnames of the participants of the educational process in Georgian

Before the start of this lesson, both leaders of the learning process get acquainted in advance with table No. 18. It contains a list of 26 letters of the English alphabet and sounds pronounced by them in different situations. When compiling table No. 18 the Soviet edition of the English textbook (author: G. A. Makarova; year of publication - 1991; place of publication - Moscow) was used.

The content of the eighteenth lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “In the previous lesson, we got acquainted with the names and surnames of 36 representatives of English literature. This time we have to write and learn the names and surnames of 36 participants and listeners of our educational process. This means that we all have to write our first and last names by replacing English letters with Georgian letters. We will have to remember what we have learned during the first six lessons, and also use the knowledge gained in the previous two lessons.”

2. “It should be remembered that in the Georgian language, unlike the English language, the number of letters always exactly matches the number of pronounced Georgian sounds. Therefore, when writing our names of non-Georgian pronunciation, in order to avoid unnecessary complications, the following rule should be observed: if our name of non-Georgian pronunciation is on the list of those English-language names that we dealt with in the previous two lessons, then we use the corresponding Georgian counterparts; if our name is not on this list, then we write as many Georgian letters as we pronounce sounds (I repeat, sounds!) in English.”

3. “The same applies to our surnames, but with only one amendment: if our surname in English ends with vowel sound, then we write as many Georgian letters as we pronounce sounds in English. For example, the known surname "Poe" consists of 3 English letters, which pronounce 2 sounds. In this case, this surname in Georgian will consist of two Georgian letters according to the number of sounds - «პო». But if our surname ends with a consonant sound, then we write one more Georgian letter compared to the number of sounds pronounced in English word, and this additional letter should be ი (i), ending letter of the Georgian nominative case: for example, the surname "Dickens" consists of 7 English letters, which pronounce 6 sounds. Therefore, this surname in Georgian will consist of 6 Georgian letters according to the number of sounds, plus an additional letter at the end of the word - “დიკენს+ი” (For comparison: the surname “Wilde” consists of 5 English letters and ends with a vowel letter, which doesn’t pronounce a vowel sound. Therefore, in this surname in Georgian will consist of 5 Georgian letters according to the number of sounds, plus an additional letter at the end of the word - “უილდ+ი”)

2) The facilitators alternately voice the letters and sounds shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly (If necessary, they provide additional explanations for the columns 3 and 4).

Table #18

26 letters of the English alphabet and sounds pronounced by them

Sequence number of the letters of the English alphabet	English letter	English letter used in English words	Notes, clarifications or explanations to column 3	The sound or sounds pronounced by the English letter or letters	Georgian letter or letters that match English sounds in column 5, according to the principle «one sound, one letter»
1	2	3	4	5	6
1	A, a	fast, last, ask, bath		ɑ:	ა
		made, same, mail, say, stay, game, gay, tale,		eɪ	ეო
		ban, sad, map, tap, sack, back, man		æ	ა
2	B, b	ban, bail, lab		b	ბ
3	C, c	cent, cite, face	Letter “c” before letters “e”, “i”, “y”	s	ს
		cap, can, came		k	კ
4	D, d	dad, date, bad		d	დ
5	E, e	be, he, Pete, meet, meat, team, seem, beet, beat		i:	ი
		bed, pet, let, desk, best, met, set, bet		e	ე
6	F, f	fail, fan		f	ფ
		Philip	Combination of letters “ph”	f	ფ
7	G, g	gem, gin, gym, page	Letter “g” before letters “e”, “i”, “y”	dʒ	ჯ
		big, dig, game		g	ბ

8	H, h	he, hat, hate	Letter “h” before any vowel	h	ɜ
		she, shame, ship	Combination of letters “sh”	ʃ	ʊ
		chap, teach, catch, fetch	Combinations of letters “ch” and “tch”	tʃ	β
		blacksmith, smith, goldsmith	Combination of letters “th”	θ or ð	ʊ
9	I, i	mile, Mike, bite, high, light, flight, mild, child, mind, kind, find, might		aɪ	ɔ
		big, lit, sit, hit, pit, tip, lip, him, dig		ɪ	o
10	J, j	Jane, Jim, jam		dʒ	ʒ
11	K, k	Kate, kind, cake		k	ɜ
		kick, back, Dick	Combination of letters “ck” after vowel	k	ɜ
12	L, l	lake, mail, lick, like, bill, bell, hill, ill		l	ɚ
13	M, m	meet, meat, man, main, Mike		m	ð
14	N, n	nice, Nell, thin		n	ɓ
		knee, knit, knife	Combination of letters “kn”	n	ɓ
		king, bang, thing, hang	Combination of letters “ng”	ŋg	ɓɔ
		ink, bank, think, link	Combination of letters “nk”	ŋk	ɓɜ

15	O, o	go, home, cold, hold, coat, boat, bone		ou	ᠮᠤ
		dog, fog, not, hot, on, off, soft		ᠣ	ᠮ
		moon, noon, doom, spoon, soon, too, tooth	Combination of letters “oo”	u:	ᠮᠤ
		book, look, hook, shook	Combination of letters “oo” before letter “k”	u	ᠮᠤ
		boy, toy, boil, toil	Combinations of letters “oi” and “oy”	ᠣᠢ	ᠮᠤ
16	P, p	pen, pale, pail, pay, lip		p	ᠮ
17	Q, q	quick, queen, quite	Combination of letters “qu”	qw	ᠮᠤ
18	R, r	red, rain, right	Letter “r” before vowel	r	ᠮ
		write, wrote	Combination of letters “wr”: letter “w” before the letter “r” is not readable	r	ᠮ
		car, bar, far, hard, card	Combination of letters “ar”	ɑ:	ᠮ
		for, sport, short, form, storm	Combination of letters “or”	ᠣ:	ᠮ
		tore	Combination of letters “ore”	ᠣ:	ᠮ
		fir, bird, firm, stir, shirt, first	Combination of letters “ir”	ᠪ:	ᠮ

		fur	Combination of letters “ur”	ə:	ᠶ
		fern	Combination of letters “er”	ə:	ᠶ
19	S, s	seen, sane, sell		s	ᠪ
		reads, sees, plays, rains	Letter “s” after letters with voiced sounds	z	ᠼ
20	T, t	take, tale, tail, hit, Pete		t	ᠳ
21	U, u	tube, tune, dew, due		iu:	ᠶᠢ
		rule, blue	Letter “u” after letters “r” and “l”	u:	ᠶ
		but, hut, dull, nut, bust		ʌ	ᠰ
		bound, found, cloud	Combination of letters “ou”	au	ᠶᠤ
22	V, v	veal, leave, vain		v	ᠰ
23	W, w	well, wit		w	ᠰ
		when, while	Combination of letters “wh”	w	ᠰ
		saw, lawn	Combination of letters “aw”	ɔ:	ᠳ
		few, new	Combination of letters “ew”	iu:	ᠶᠢ
		snow, slow, show	Combination of letters “ow”	ou	ᠶᠤ
		town, down	Combination of letters “ow” before	au	ᠶᠤ

			consonants		
24	X, x	fox, box, fix		qs	ჟბ
25	Y, y	yet, yoke, yes, York	Letter “j” before vowel	i	ო
		my, shy, type, style		aɪ	სო
		myth, easy, Kitty		i	ო
26	Z, z	zeal, zone, zoo		z	ზ

3) Before the start of the group, practical, part of the lesson, both leaders of the educational process write their names and surnames on the board, both in English and in Georgian to compare English letters with Georgian ones, and pronounce them aloud in Georgian.

4) Further, with the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as it was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “In the framework of group work, each participant in the educational process writes his name and surname on the flip sheet only in Georgian. The flip sheet of each group will look the same as the sheets of the previous two lessons. Don't forget to include the lesson number and the group number (for example, "Lesson #18" and "Group #1")”.

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the eighteenth lesson.

Lesson nineteen

The Georgian words about parts of the human body

The content of the nineteenth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "The fifteenth lesson was devoted to words about a person (personality). We will devote the current lesson to the study of words about parts of the human body. These words belong to the category of things since the question "what?" applies to them.

2. "Words denoting parts of the human body are given in the initial form, that is, in the Georgian nominative case of the singular"

3. "I remind you that in the initial form, Georgian nouns end in a vowel. Of the final vowels, the letter *ო* (i) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (a), *ე* (e), *ო* (o), *უ* (u) - enter the basis of the corresponding words.

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 19 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Pay attention to how the initial forms of words denoting parts of the human body are written in Georgian. Case endings are marked with dashes. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №19

Words denoting parts of the human body			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	ადამიან-ო ¹	adamian-i	Human (Person)
2	სულ-ო	sul-i	Soul
3	სხეულ-ო	skheul-i	Body
4	თავ-ო	thav-i	Head
5	თმა	thma	Hair
6	შუბლ-ო	shubl-i	Forehead
7	ყურ-ო	qkur-i	Ear

8	თვალ-ი	thval-i	Eye
9	წარბ-ი	tzarb-i	Eyebrow
10	წამწამ-ი	tzamtzam-i	Eyelash
11	ლოყა	loqka	Cheek
12	ნიკაპ-ი	nikap-i	Chin
13	ტუჩ-ი	tuch-i	Lip
14	ბაგე	bage	Lip
15	კბილ-ი	kbil-i	Tooth
16	სახე	sakhe	Face
17	პირ-ი	pir-i	Mouth
18	ცხვირ-ი	tskhvir-i	Nose
19	გულ-ი	gul-i	Heart
20	ნესტო	nesto	Nostril
21	ყელ-ი	qkel-i	Throat
22	კისერ-ი	kiser-i	Neck
23	მკერდ-ი	mkerd-i	Chest (Breast)
24	მუცელ-ი	mutsel-i	Belly
25	ხელ-ი	khel-i	Arm (Hand)
26	ფეხ-ი	pekh-i	Leg
27	თით-ი	thith-i	Finger
28	ფრჩხილ-ი	prchkhil-i	Fingernail
29	ხელისგულ-ი	khelisgul-i	Handbreadth
30	მხარ-ი	mkhar-i	Shoulder
31	იღლია	igrlia	Armpit (Oxter)
32	გვერდ-ი	gverd-i	Side (Hip)
33	ზურგ-ი	zurg-i	Back

34	წელი-ი	tzel-i	Waist
35	მუხლი-ი	mukhl-i	Knee
36	იდაყვი-ი	idaqkv-i	Elbow

¹ The question "what?" does not apply to this word. because it denotes a person (personality). In the fifteenth lesson, we learned the Georgian word კაცი (katsi), which is also used to refer to a person.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 77-79, "Supplement to Lesson No. 19" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words).

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 19	Group No. 1
	ადამიანი
	სული
	სხეული
	თავი
	თმა
	მუბლი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the nineteenth lesson.

Lesson Twenty

The Georgian words about nature and wildlife

The content of the twentieth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “The previous lesson was devoted to words about the parts of the human body. These words belong to the category of things, and the question "what?" applies to them. We will also devote this lesson to the study of words that belong to the category of things. These words are given in the initial form, that is, in the Georgian singular nominative case.

2. “I remind you that in the initial form, Georgian nouns end in a vowel. Of the final vowels, the letter *ო* (i) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (a), *ე* (e), *ო* (o), *უ* (u) - enter the basis of the relevant words”.

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 20 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Pay attention to how the initial forms of words denoting things are written in Georgian. The vowel endings of the nominative case are marked with dashes. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №20

Words denoting things			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	2	3	4
1	ცხენ-ო	tskhen-i	Horse
2	ძროხა	dzrokha	Cow
3	ხარ-ო	khar-i	Bull
4	ხე	khe	Tree
5	ქვა	qva	Stone
6	მიწა	mitza	Soil
7	წყალ-ო	tzqkal-i	Water
8	ჰაერ-ო	haer-i	Air

9	ყოფა	qkopa	Being
10	გონება	goneba	Mind
11	სახელი-ი	sakhel-i	Name
12	საკითხ-ი	sakithkh-i	Question
13	კბილ-ი	kbil-i	Tooth
14	ფულ-ი	pul-i	Money
15	სოფელ-ი	sopel-i	Village
16	ტანსაცმელ-ი	tansatsmel-i	Clothes
17	მაგიდა	magida	Table
18	დანა	dana	Knife
19	ჩანგალ-ი	changal-i	Fork
20	ტყე	tqke	Forest
21	მზე	mze	Sun
22	თვე	thve	Month
23	რძე	rdze	Milk
24	დღე	dgre	Day
25	წელ-ი	tsel-i	Year
26	დრო	dro	Time
27	სალამო	sagramo	Evening
28	სალარო	salaro	Cashbox
29	ოქრო	oqro	Gold
30	გვარ-ი	gvar-i	Surname
31	კუ	ku	Tortoise
32	ბუ	bu	Owl
33	ნიანგ-ი	niang-i	Crocodile (Alligator)
34	ხვლიკ-ი	khvlik-i	Lizard

35	გველი-ი	gvel-i	Serpent (Snake)
36	მატი-ი	matl-i	Worm

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 80-82, "Supplement to Lesson No. 20" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words)."

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 20	Group No. 1
	ცხენი
	ძროხა
	ხარი
	ხე
	ქვა
	მიწა

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twentieth lesson.

Lesson twenty one

The Georgian words about fruits and vegetables

Content of the twenty-first lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "The previous lesson was devoted to words about things. These words apply the question "what?". We will also devote this lesson to the study of words that belong to the category of things. In particular, we will get acquainted with Georgian words about food. These words are given in the initial form, that is, in the Georgian nominative case of the singular".

2. "I remind you that in the initial form, Georgian nouns end in a vowel. Of the final vowels, the letter *ო* (i) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (a), *ე* (e), *ო* (o), *უ* (u) - enter the basis of the corresponding words.

2) Next, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 21 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Pay attention to how the initial forms of words denoting things are written in Georgian. The vowel endings of the Georgian nominative case are highlighted with a dash. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 132-135) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 26-28).

Table №21

Words denoting things			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	პურ-ო	pur-i	Bread
2	წყალ-ო	tzqal-i	Water
3	ყველ-ო	qkvel-i	Cheese
4	ძეხვ-ო	dzekhv-i	Sausage
5	ხორც-ო	khorts-i	Meat
6	ზეთ-ო	zeth-i	Oil (vegetable)
7	კარაქ-ო	karaq-i	Butter (cream)

8	თევზ-ი	thevz-i	Fish
9	რძე	rdze	Milk
10	შაქარ-ი	shaqar-i	Sugar
11	ხილ-ი	khil-i	Fruit
12	ვაშლ-ი	vashl-i	Apple
13	მსხალ-ი	mskhal-i	Pear
14	ყურძენ-ი	qkurdzen-i	Grape
15	მანდარინ-ი	mandarin-i	Mandarine
16	ფორთოხალ-ი	porthokhal-i	Orange
17	საზამთრო	sazamthro	Watermelon
18	ლეღვ-ი	legrv-i	Fig
19	კომშ-ი	komsh-i	Quince
20	ატამ-ი	atam-i	Peach
21	კაკალ-ი	kakal-i	Walnut (Greek)
22	თხილ-ი	thkhil-i	Walnut (small)
23	ბალ-ი	bal-i	Cherry
24	ალუბალ-ი	alubal-i	Cherry (red)
25	ქლიავ-ი	qliav-i	Plum
26	ნესვ-ი	nesv-i	Melon
27	ბროწეულ-ი	brotzeul-i	Garnet
28	ბოსტნეულ-ი	bostneul-i	Vegetables
29	კარტოფილ-ი	kartopil-i	Potatoes
30	კომბოსტო	kombosto	Cabbage
31	ხახვ-ი	khakhv-i	Onion
32	მწვანილ-ი	mtzvanil-i	Greenery
33	სტაფილო	stapilo	Carrot

34	პამიდორ-ი	πamidor-i	Tomatoes
35	ბადრიჯან-ი	badrijan-i	Eggplant
36	კიტრ-ი	kitr-i	Cucumber

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are divided into 6 groups in the same way as it was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 83-85, "Supplement to Lesson No. 21" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only in order to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words).

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #21	Group #1
	პური
	წყალი
	ყველი
	ძეხვი
	ხორცი
	ზეთი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-first lesson.

Lesson twenty two

The Georgian words for time

The content of the twenty-second lesson:

1) First, the presenter explains to the audience the following: “Today we will learn those 36 Georgian words that express different periods of time of one or another duration. Case endings of words are highlighted with a dash“.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 140-144) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 44-45).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 22 on a large screen. The facilitator alternately voices the Georgian words shown in column 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №22

Georgian words denoting time intervals			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	2	3	4
1	წამ-ი	tzam-i	Second
2	წუთ-ი	tzuth-i	Minute
3	საათ-ი	saath-i	Hour
4	დილა	dila	Morning
5	შუადღე	shuadgre	Noon
6	დღე	dgre	Day
7	საღამო	sagramo	Evening
8	შუაღამე	shuagrame	Midnight
9	ღამე	grame	Night
10	დღე-ღამე	dgre-grame	Day & Night (twenty-four hours)

11	გუშინ	gushin	Yesterday
12	დღეს	dgres	Today
13	ხვალ	khval	Tomorrow
14	კვირა	kvira	Sunday
15	ორშაბათ-ი	orshabath-i	Monday
16	სამშაბათ-ი	samshabath-i	Tuesday
17	ოთხშაბათ-ი	othkhshabath-i	Wednesday
18	ხუთშაბათ-ი	khuthshabath-i	Thursday
19	პარასკევ-ი	paraskev-i	Friday
20	შაბათ-ი	shabath-i	Saturday
21	კვირა	kvira	Week
22	თვე	thve	Month
23	იანვარ-ი	ianvar-i	January
24	თებერვალ-ი	theberval-i	February
25	მარტ-ი	mart-i	March
26	აპრილ-ი	april-i	April
27	მაის-ი	mais-i	May
28	ივნის-ი	ivnis-i	June
29	ივლის-ი	ivlis-i	July
30	აგვისტო	agvisto	August
31	სექტემბერ-ი	seqtember-i	September
32	ოქტომბერ-ი	oqtomber-i	October
33	ნოემბერ-ი	noember-i	November
34	დეკემბერ-ი	dekember-i	December
35	წელიწად-ი	tzelitzad-i	Year
36	საუკუნე	saukune	Century

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 86-88, "Supplement to Lesson No. 22" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only in order to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 22	Group No. 1
	წამი
	წუთი
	საათი
	დილა
	შუადღე
	ღღე

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-second lesson.

Lesson twenty three

The Georgian pronouns

The content of the twenty-third lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "The next logical step in learning the Georgian language will be to get acquainted with those simple and short words that are constantly used to pronounce affirmative, interrogative and negative sentences."

2. "These words include pronouns. From the point of view of purpose in a sentence, pronouns are divided into 9 groups - personal, demonstrative, possessive, interrogative, interrogative-possessive, directional, negative, indefinite and definite. Today we will look at 36 pronouns, and in the next lesson - 36 more pronouns".

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the internet site "Great Georgian-English Dictionary" („დიდი ქართულ-ინგლისური ლექსიკონი“) at the address: <http://www.nplg.gov.ge/gwdict/index.php?a=list&d=46&t=dict&w1=%E1%83%90>

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 23 on a large screen. The facilitator alternately voices the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №23

Georgian pronouns			
№	Pronouns in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian pronouns	English synonyms of Georgian pronouns
1	2	3	4
Personal pronouns			
1	მე	me	I, me
2	ჩვენ	chven	we, us
3	შენ	shen	you (in the phrase: "Michael, you are wrong")
4	თქვენ	thqven	you (in the phrase: " Michael and Anna, you are wrong")

5	ის	is	he, she, it
6	იგი	igi	he, she, it
7	ისინი	isini	they
8	ისენი	iseni	they
9	თავი	thavi	myself, yourself, himself (in the phrase: "He glorified himself")
	Possessive pronouns		
10	ჩემი	chemi	my, mine
11	ჩვენი	chveni	our, ours
12	შენი	sheni	your, yours (in the phrase: "Michael, your report is good")
13	თქვენი	thqveni	your, yours (in the phrase: "Michael and Anna, your reports are good")
14	მისი	misi	his, her, its
15	იმისი	imisi	his, her, its
16	მათი	mathi	their, theirs
17	იმათი	imathi	their, their's
18	თავისი	thavisi	his, hers, its
	Indicative (Demonstrative) pronouns		
19	ეს	es	this
20	ეგ	eg	this, that
21	ასეთი	asethi	this kind of, like this
22	ეგეთი	egethi	of this kind, such a
23	ამგვარი	amgvavi	this kind of, such a
24	ამისთანა	amisthana	such a, this sort of

25	ამდენი	amdeni	so many, so much
26	ისინი	isini	those
27	ის	is	that
28	მაგვარი	maggvari	like that, similar to that
29	იმგვარი	imgvari	that kind, that type
30	იმისთანა	imisthana	His/her/its kind
31	იმდენი	imdeni	so many, so much
	Definite pronouns		
32	თვით	thvith	oneself, myself, yourself (in the phrase: "I myself was present")
33	თვითონ	thvithon	itself, oneself, myself, yourself (in the phrase: "I myself did the work")
34	თითოეული	thithoeuli	each, every
35	ყოველი	qkoveli	everything
36	ყველა	qkvela	all, every, everything, everyone, everybody

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian pronouns are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms for these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 89-91, "Supplement to Lesson No. 23" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian pronouns. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are

given only in order to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #23	Group #1
	მე
	ჩვენ
	შენ
	თქვენ
	ის
	ისი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-third lesson.

Lesson twenty four

The Georgian pronouns

The content of the twenty-fourth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “Today we have to complete the study of Georgian pronouns. We already know that in terms of purpose in a sentence, pronouns are divided into 9 groups - personal, demonstrative, possessive, interrogative, interrogative-possessive, directional, negative, indefinite and definite. In the previous lesson, we studied pronouns related to 4 groups. It remains to familiarize yourself with 36 pronouns from the remaining 5 groups.”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the internet site "Great Georgian-English Dictionary" („დიდი ქართულ-ინგლისური ლექსიკონი“) at the address: <http://www.nplg.gov.ge/gwdict/index.php?a=list&d=46&t=dict&w1=%E1%83%90>

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 24 on a large screen. The facilitator alternately voices the Georgian words shown in column 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №24

Georgian pronouns			
№	Pronouns in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian pronouns	English synonyms of Georgian pronouns
1	2	3	4
Interrogative pronouns			
1	ვინ?	vin?	who?
2	რა?	ra?	what?
3	როგორი?	rogori?	what (sort/type/kind of)?
4	რომელი?	romeli?	which, who, what (of)?
5	რანაირი?	ranairi?	what kind of?
6	რამდენი?	ramdeni?	how much/many? so much/many?
7	სადაური?	sadauri?	from where? (in the phrase: „Where is this knife from?“)

8	როდინდელი?	rodindeli?	at/of/from what time?
Interrogative-possessive pronoun			
9	ვისი?	visi?	whose?
Relative pronouns			
10	ვინც	vints	whoever (in the phrase: "Whoever comes")
11	რაც	rats	what, that which (in the phrase: " Give me what you have")
12	რომელიც	romelits	whichever (in the phrase: " Whichever you want")
13	როგორიც	rogorits	Whatever (in the phrase: "whatever you want")
14	რამდენიც	ramdenits	as much as, as many as (in the phrase: "as much as you want")
15	რანაირიც	ranairits	whatever
16	ვისიც	visits	whose (in the phrase: "Whose would not be")
Indefinite pronouns			
17	ვიღაც	vigrats	someone, somebody
18	რაღაც	ragrats	something (in the phrase: "something happened")
19	რომელიღაც	romeligrats	which, who, what (of)
20	რამდენიმე	ramdenime	few, several
21	ვინმე	vinme	somebody, someone, anybody, anyone
22	რამე	rame	something (in the phrase: "Give us something to eat")
23	რომელიმე	romelime	Someone (in the phrase: Let

			someone go...)
24	ზოგი	zogi	one, some (of)
25	ზოგიერთი	zogierthi	one, several (of)
26	ერთი	erthi	One (in the phrase: "one can say that ...")
Negative pronouns			
27	არავინ	aravin	nobody
28	ვერავინ	veravin	nobody, no one
29	ნურავინ	nuravin	no one, nobody
30	არაფერი	araperi	nothing
31	ვერაფერი	veraperi	nothing
32	ნურაფერი	nuraperi	nothing (in the phrase: "Hide nothing from him!")
33	არავითარი	aravithari	none, no kind of
34	ვერავითარი	veravithari	no kind of
35	ალარავინ	agraravin	nobody else
36	ალარაფერი	agraraperi	nothing any more

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian pronouns are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms for these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 92-94, "Supplement to Lesson No. 24" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian pronouns. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian (combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only in order to make it easier for the listeners to understand, learn and memorize the pronunciation of Georgian words)".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #24	Group #1
<p>ვინ?</p> <p>რა?</p> <p>როგორი?</p> <p>რომელი?</p> <p>რანაირი?</p> <p>რამდენი?</p>	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-fourth lesson.

Lesson twenty five

The Georgian words in the plural

The content of the twenty-fifth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Let's remember once again that there are two numbers in the Georgian language: singular and plural."

2. "Recall also that the noun in the nominative case of the singular is called the initial form of the word."

3. "In the nominative case, the plural of Georgian nouns is formed with the help of the suffix -ებ- (-eb-) as follows:

a) If nouns have ending vowels -ო (-i), -ა (-a), then these vowels are dropped, and the suffix -ებ- (-eb-) is added to the rest of the word, and then a vowel ending [-ი (-i)] is added to this suffix.

b) If nouns have end vowels -ე (-e), -ო (-o), -უ (-u), then the suffix -ებ- (-eb-) is simply added to these vowels, and then vowel ending -ი (-i)".

4. "Remember: in the nominative case, all Georgian nouns in the plural have a vowel ending -ი (-i)".

5. "You should also pay attention to the following: in some Georgian nouns, when forming the plural, the stem of the word is contracted, which is expressed in the loss of the last vowel from the stem."

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 25 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Pay attention to how Georgian nouns are written in the nominative case in the plural. For clarity, the suffix -ებ- (-eb-) and the vowel ending of the nominative case -ი (-i) are highlighted with a dash". The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 29-30).

Table №25

The plural number of Georgian nouns in the nominative						
№	Georgian nouns in the singular			Georgian nouns in the plural		
	The Georgian word	English transliteration of the Georgian word	English synonym of the Georgian word	The Georgian word	English transliteration of the Georgian word	English synonym of the Georgian word

1	გაზეთ-ი	gazeth-i	Newspaper	გაზეთ ¹ -ები	gazeth-eb-i	Newspapers
2	წიგნ-ი	tzign-i	Book	წიგნ ¹ -ები	tzign-eb-i	Books
3	კბილ-ი	kbil-i	Tooth	კბილ ¹ -ები	kbil-eb-i	Teeth
4	თვალ-ი	thval-i	Eye	თვალ ¹ -ები	thval-eb-i	Eyes
5	თით-ი	thith-i	Finger	თით ¹ -ები	thith-eb-i	Fingers
6	ადამიან-ი	adamian-i	Man	ადამიან ¹ -ები	adamian-eb-i	Men
7	სკამ-ი	skam-i	Chair	სკამ ¹ -ები	skam-eb-i	Chairs
8	ადგილ-ი	adgil-i	Place	ადგილ ¹ -ები	adgil-eb-i	Places
9	წარბ-ი	tzarb-i	Eyebrow	წარბ ¹ -ები	tzarb-eb-i	Eyebrows
10	და	da	Sister	და ² -ები	d-eb-i	Sisters
11	ძმა	dzma	Brother	ძმა ² -ები	dzm-eb-i	Brothers
12	დანა	dana	Knife	დანა ² -ები	dan-eb-i	Knives
13	მაგიდა	magida	Table	მაგიდა ² -ები	magid-eb-i	Tables
14	ჭიქა	tchiqa	Glass	ჭიქა ² -ები	tchiq-eb-i	Glasses
15	გზა	gza	Road	გზა ² -ები	gz-eb-i	Roads
16	კატა	kata	Cat	კატა ² -ები	kat-eb-i	Cats
17	ხე	khe	Tree	ხე ³ -ები	khe-eb-i	Trees
18	ტყე	tqke	Forest	ტყე ³ -ები	tqke-eb-i	Forests
19	კიბე	kibe	Staircase	კიბე ³ -ები	kibe-eb-i	Staircases
20	დღე	dgre	Day	დღე ³ -ები	dgre-eb-i	Days
21	მორიგე	morige	Person on duty	მორიგე ³ -ები	morige-eb-i	Persons on duty
22	მოლარე	molare	Cashier	მოლარე ³ -ები	molare-eb-i	Cashiers
23	სადამღ	sagramo	Evening	სადამღ ⁴ -ები	sagramo-eb-i	Evenings
24	სოკო	soko	Mushroom	სოკო ⁴ -ები	soko-eb-i	Mushrooms
25	სალარო	salaro	Cashbox	სალარო ⁴ -ები	salaro-eb-i	Cashboxes
26	ღვინო	grvino	Wine	ღვინო ⁴ -ები	grvino-eb-i	Wines
27	გოგო	gogo	Girl	გოგო ⁴ -ები	gogo-eb-i	Girls

28	რუ	ru	Ditch	რუ ⁵ -ებ-ი	ru-eb-i	Ditches
29	კუ	ku	Turtle	კუ ⁵ -ებ-ი	ku-eb-i	Turtles
30	ფანქარ-ი	panqar-i	Pencil	ფანქარ ⁶ -ებ-ი	panqr-eb-i	Pencils
31	მტერ-ი	mter-i	Enemy	მტ ⁷ რ ¹ -ებ-ი	mtr-eb-i	Enemies
32	მეგობარ-ი	megobar-i	Friend	მეგობ ⁶ რ ¹ -ებ-ი	megobr-eb-i	Friends
33	სტუმარ-ი	stumar-i	Guest	სტუმ ⁶ რ ¹ -ებ-ი	stumr-eb-i	Guests
34	მასპინძელ-ი	maspindzel-i	Host	მასპინძ ⁷ ლ ¹ -ებ-ი	maspindzl-eb-i	Hosts
35	მეზობელ-ი	mezobel-i	Neighbor	მეზობ ⁷ ლ ¹ -ებ-ი	mezobl-eb-i	Neighbors
36	სოფელ-ი	sopel-i	Village	სოფლ-ებ-ი	sopl-eb-i	Villages

¹ The end vowel letter ი (i) is omitted

² The end vowel letter უ (a) is omitted

³ The end vowel letter ე (e) is preserved

⁴ The end vowel letter ო (o) is preserved

⁵ The end vowel letter უ (u) is preserved

⁶ The last vowel უ (a) in the basis of the word is omitted

⁷ The last vowel ე (e) in the basis of the word is omitted

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 words in the singular and 6 in the plural), as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 95-97, "Supplement to Lesson No. 25" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the singular and the corresponding word in the plural. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #25	Group #1
------------	----------

გაზეთი - გაზეთები

წიგნი - წიგნები

კბილი - კბილები

თვალი - თვალები

თითი - თითები

ადამიანი - ადამიანები

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-fifth lesson.

Lesson twenty six

The Georgian grammatical cases

Before the start of the twenty-sixth lesson, both leaders of the learning process are familiarized with table No. 26 in advance, which lists 36 Georgian nouns, which are shown in all 6 grammatical cases, both in the singular and in the plural. Students have already met these Georgian nouns in previous lessons. However, for this lesson, we need these nouns only in order to learn and remember case endings or suffixes.

The content of the twenty-sixth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator reminds the listeners of the following:

1. “At the beginning of the seventh lesson of our learning process, grammatical cases were mentioned. This time we should dwell in detail on the purpose of each case. We must once again recall that in the Georgian language, without taking into account the form of address (vocative), there are 6 main cases:

- The nominative case expresses the independent position of a noun in a speech construction (in a phrase or in a sentence). The nominative case of a noun in the singular is the initial (original) form of a noun in Georgian. Nouns in the nominative case answer the questions - Who? and what?
- The ergative or declarative case is used only by the subject, which answers the questions - Who? (e.g. "Who did?") and What? (e.g. "What ruined the case?")
- The dative shows that someone is being given or doing something. Nouns in this case answer the questions - To whom? and what?
- The directive or circumstantial case shows that something turns into something, or becomes something, or is taken for something or for someone. Nouns in this case answer questions - By whom? and By what?
- Genitive case expresses the meaning of the definition of an object. Nouns in this case answer questions - Whom? and What?
- The instrumental case shows what tool or material is used to perform the action. Nouns in this case answer the questions – By what? and By whose?»

2. “Georgian declension is extremely simple. In essence, all inflected parts of speech have the same case endings, both in the singular and in the plural. The suffix of the plural, -ებ- (-eb-), always comes before the case ending.

3. “In the nominative case, all Georgian nouns end with vowels. Of the final vowels, ი (i) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels [ა (a), ე (e), ო (o), უ (u)] are included in the basis of the corresponding words. Typical is the declension of Georgian nouns, which in the nominative case end in a vowel ი (i). Other Georgian nouns that end in other vowels [ა (a), ე (e), ო (o), უ (u)] are also declined with slight modifications”.

4. “Individually taken adjectives, numerals and most pronouns (except personal pronouns) are inclined in the same way as nouns. But if an adjective, numeral or pronoun act as a definition for a noun, then their declension is simplified. In this case, you should pay attention to the following circumstances:

a) With a joint declension of a noun and a definition (adjective, numeral and pronoun), this latter is always in the singular;

b) Definitions (adjectives, numerals and pronouns) with final vowels ა (a), ე (e), ო (o), უ (u) do not change by case at all; in definitions with the final vowel ი (i), some case forms are repeated;

c) With a cardinal number, the noun is always in the singular.”

5. “For surnames and given names, the forms of the nominative, narrative, dative and genitive cases are the most active. When names and surnames are declensed together, only the surname is usually declined”.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 54-56).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 26 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Table No. 26 shows the declensions of 6 already familiar Georgian nouns, both in the singular and in the plural. Pay attention to how the endings or suffixes change in grammatical cases. Case endings or suffixes are separated from word stems with a dash. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №26

№	The word in the singular	The word in the plural
1	2	3
Words in the nominative case		
1	* ამხანაგ- <u>ი</u>	ამხანაგ- <u>ებ-ი</u>
	** amkhanag- <u>i</u>	amkhanag- <u>eb-i</u>
2	* მეგობარ- <u>ი</u>	მეგობრ- <u>ებ-ი</u>
	** megobar- <u>i</u>	megobr- <u>eb-i</u>
3	* ცხენ- <u>ი</u>	ცხენ- <u>ებ-ი</u>
	** tskhen- <u>i</u>	tskhen- <u>eb-i</u>
4	* სოფელ- <u>ი</u>	სოფლ- <u>ებ-ი</u>
	** sopl- <u>i</u>	sopl- <u>eb-i</u>
5	* სახელ- <u>ი</u>	სახელ- <u>ებ-ი</u>
	** sakhel- <u>i</u>	sakhel- <u>eb-i</u>
6	* კაც- <u>ი</u>	კაც- <u>ებ-ი</u>
	** kats- <u>i</u>	kats- <u>eb-i</u>
Word in the genitive case		
7	* ამხანაგ- <u>ის</u>	ამხანაგ- <u>ებ-ის</u>
	** amkhanag- <u>is</u>	amkhanag- <u>eb-is</u>
8	* მეგობრ- <u>ის</u>	მეგობრ- <u>ებ-ის</u>
	** megobr- <u>is</u>	megobr- <u>eb-is</u>
9	* ცხენ- <u>ის</u>	ცხენ- <u>ებ-ის</u>
	** tskhen- <u>is</u>	tskhen- <u>eb-is</u>
10	* სოფლ- <u>ის</u>	სოფლ- <u>ებ-ის</u>
	** sopl- <u>is</u>	sopl- <u>eb-is</u>
11	* სახელ- <u>ის</u>	სახელ- <u>ებ-ის</u>
	** sakhel- <u>is</u>	sakhel- <u>eb-is</u>
12	* კაც- <u>ის</u>	კაც- <u>ებ-ის</u>
	** kats- <u>is</u>	kats- <u>eb-is</u>

Words in the dative case		
13	* ამხანაგ- <u>ს</u>	ამხანაგ- <u>ებ-ს</u>
	** amkhanag- <u>s</u>	amkhanag- <u>eb-s</u>
14	* მეგობარ- <u>ს</u>	მეგობრ- <u>ებ-ს</u>
	** megobar- <u>s</u>	megobr- <u>eb-s</u>
15	* ცხენ- <u>ს</u>	ცხენ- <u>ებ-ს</u>
	** tsghen- <u>s</u>	tsghen- <u>eb-s</u>
16	* სოფელ- <u>ს</u>	სოფლ- <u>ებ-ს</u>
	** sopl- <u>s</u>	sopl- <u>eb-s</u>
17	* სახელ- <u>ს</u>	სახელ- <u>ებ-ს</u>
	** sakhel- <u>s</u>	sakhel- <u>eb-s</u>
18	* კაც- <u>ს</u>	კაც- <u>ებ-ს</u>
	** kats- <u>s</u>	kats- <u>eb-s</u>
Words in the ergative case		
19	* ამხანაგ- <u>მა</u>	ამხანაგ- <u>ებ-მა</u>
	** amkhanag- <u>ma</u>	amkhanag- <u>eb-ma</u>
20	* მეგობარ- <u>მა</u>	მეგობრ- <u>ებ-მა</u>
	** megobar- <u>ma</u>	megobr- <u>eb-ma</u>
21	* ცხენ- <u>მა</u>	ცხენ- <u>ებ-მა</u>
	** tsghen- <u>ma</u>	tsghen- <u>eb-ma</u>
22	* სოფელ- <u>მა</u>	სოფლ- <u>ებ-მა</u>
	** sopl- <u>ma</u>	sopl- <u>eb-ma</u>
23	* სახელ- <u>მა</u>	სახელ- <u>ებ-მა</u>
	** sakhel- <u>ma</u>	sakhel- <u>eb-ma</u>
24	* კაც- <u>მა</u>	კაც- <u>ებ-მა</u>
	** kats- <u>ma</u>	kats- <u>eb-ma</u>
Words in the instrumental case		
25	* ამხანაგ- <u>ით</u>	ამხანაგ- <u>ებ-ით</u>
	** amkhanag- <u>ith</u>	amkhanag- <u>eb-ith</u>
26	* მეგობრ- <u>ით</u>	მეგობრ- <u>ებ-ით</u>
	** megobr- <u>ith</u>	megobr- <u>eb-ith</u>
27	* ცხენ- <u>ით</u>	ცხენ- <u>ებ-ით</u>
	** tsghen- <u>ith</u>	tsghen- <u>eb-ith</u>
28	* სოფლ- <u>ით</u>	სოფლ- <u>ებ-ით</u>
	** sopl- <u>ith</u>	sopl- <u>eb-ith</u>
29	* სახელ- <u>ით</u>	სახელ- <u>ებ-ით</u>
	** sakhel- <u>ith</u>	sakhel- <u>eb-ith</u>
30	* კაც- <u>ით</u>	კაც- <u>ებ-ით</u>
	** kats- <u>ith</u>	kats- <u>eb-ith</u>
Words in the directive case		
31	* ამხანაგ- <u>ად</u>	ამხანაგ- <u>ებ-ად</u>
	** amkhanag- <u>ad</u>	amkhanag- <u>eb-ad</u>
32	* მეგობრ- <u>ად</u>	მეგობრ- <u>ებ-ად</u>
	** megobr- <u>ad</u>	megobr- <u>eb-ad</u>
33	* ცხენ- <u>ად</u>	ცხენ- <u>ებ-ად</u>
	** tsghen- <u>ad</u>	tsghen- <u>eb-ad</u>
34	* სოფლ- <u>ად</u>	სოფლ- <u>ებ-ად</u>

	** <u>sopl-ad</u>	<u>sopl-eb-ad</u>
35	* <u>სახელ-ად</u>	<u>სახელ-ებ-ად</u>
	** <u>sakhel-ad</u>	<u>sakhel-eb-ad</u>
36	* <u>კაც-ად</u>	<u>კაც-ებ-ად</u>
	** <u>kats-ad</u>	<u>kats-eb-ad</u>
	* The Georgian word	
	** English transliteration of the Georgian word	

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 words in the singular and the same 6 words in the plural), as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 98-103, "Supplement to Lesson No. 26" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the singular and the corresponding word in the plural. The combinations of the corresponding English letters are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #26	Group #1
	ამხანაგი - ამხანაგები
	მეგობარი - მეგობრები
	ცხენი - ცხენები
	სოფელი - სოფლები
	სახელი - სახელები
	კაცი - კაცები

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-sixth lesson.

Lesson twenty seven

The Georgian vocative case

The content of the twenty-seventh lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we again have to deal with grammatical cases because the previous lesson was devoted to only 6 main cases. Then we left without attention the seventh case - the vocative case. In a Georgian sentence, the vocative case form can only be an address".

2. "The vocative case, like other ones, has its own ending. Such a case ending is the vowel -ო (-o) for those Georgian words that end in the vowel -ი (-i) in the nominative case. For example, the already familiar Georgian word კაც-ი (kats-i) in the vocative case will take the form of address: კაც-ო (kats-o)."

3. "If Georgian words end in other vowels [-ა (-a), -ე (-e), -ო (-o), -უ (-u)], but have one or more other vowels in word root, then in this case these words in the vocative case can take the form of address using a different case ending -ვ (-v) or without using any additional ending. For example, the already familiar Georgian word დედა (deda) in the vocative case can take one of two forms of address: დედა-ვ (deda-v) or simply დედა (deda). Or we take another familiar Georgian word მამიდა (mamida) with three vowels. And in this case, this word in the vocative case can take one of two forms of address: მამიდა-ვ (mamida-v) or simply მამიდა (mamida)."

4. "If Georgian words end in vowels [-ა (-a), -ე (-e), -ო (-o), -უ (-u)], but do not have a different vowel in the word stem, then these words in the vocative case can take the form of an address using the main case ending -ო (-o). For example, the already familiar Georgian word და (da) in the vocative case can take the standard form of address: და-ო (da-o). Or we take another familiar Georgian word ძმა (dzma). And in this case, this word in the vocative case can take the standard form of address: ძმა-ო (dzma-o)."

5. "Without exception, all Georgian words in the plural in the vocative case take the form of address using the main case ending -ო (-o). For example, let's compare the above words in the vocative case, both in the singular and in the plural:

კაც-ო (კაცი-ო) → კაც-ებ-ო (კაცი-ებ-ო)

დედა-ვ (დედა-ვ) → დედა-ებ-ო (დედა-ებ-ო)

მამიდა-ვ (მამიდა-ვ) → მამიდა-ებ-ო (მამიდა-ებ-ო)

და-ო (და-ო) → დ-ებ-ო (და-ებ-ო)

ძმა-ო (ძმა-ო) → ძმ-ებ-ო (ძმა-ებ-ო)».

6. "When addressing by name and surname, in the modern Georgian language the vocative case is sometimes replaced by the nominative."

7. “And one more circumstance: Georgian words in all forms of the 6 main grammatical cases are associated with verbs and, therefore, are members of sentences. However, Georgian words in the vocative case act as a form of address and are not associated with verbs. Therefore, these forms of address are not considered as members of the sentence and, therefore, are separated from them using a comma. If a Georgian word in the vocative case is not followed by members of a sentence, then an exclamation mark (!) is placed at the end of this word”.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 54-56).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 27 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Pay attention to how Georgian nouns are written in the vocative case, both in singular and in plural. We will recall once again the words denoting a person, but this time in the form of address (i.e. in the vocative case). We have already met with these words during lesson No. 15. For clarity, the endings of the vocative case, as well as the suffix -ებ- (-eb-) are highlighted with a dash. The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №27

Georgian nouns in the vocative case						
№	Georgian words in the singular			Georgian words in the plural		
	The Georgian word	English transliteration of the Georgian word	English synonym of the Georgian word	The Georgian word	English transliteration of the Georgian word	English synonym of the Georgian word
1	მამა-ვ! ¹	mama-v!	Father!	მამ ² -ებ-ო!	mam-eb-o!	Fathers!
2	დედა-ვ! ¹	deda-v!	Mother!	დედ ² -ებ-ო!	ded-eb-o!	Mothers!
3	ძმა-ო!	dzma-o!	Brother!	ძმ ² -ებ-ო!	dzm-eb-o!	Brothers!
4	და-ო!	da-o!	Sister!	დ ² -ებ-ო!	d-eb-o!	Sisters!
5	ამხანაგ-ო!	amkhanag-o!	Comrade!	ამხანაგ-ებ-ო!	amkhanag-eb-o!	Comrades!
6	მეგობარ-ო!	megobar-o!	Friend!	მეგობ ³ რ-ებ-ო!	megobr-eb-o!	Friends!
7	მასწავლებელ-ო!	mastzavlebel-o!	Teacher!	მასწავლებ ⁴ ლ-ებ-ო!	mastzavlebl-eb-o!	Teachers!

8	მეომარ-ო!	meomar-o!	Warrior!	მეომარ-ებ-ო!	meomr-eb-o!	Warriors!
9	მუშა-ვ! ¹	musha-v!	Worker!	მუშ-ებ-ო!	mush-eb-o!	Workers!
10	სტუდენტ-ო!	student-o!	Student!	სტუდენტ-ებ-ო!	student-eb-o!	Students!
11	კაც-ო!	kats-o!	Man!	კაც-ებ-ო!	kats-eb-o!	Men!
12	მოლარე-ვ! ¹	molare-v!	Cashier!	მოლარე-ებ-ო!	molare-eb-o!	Cashiers!
13	ბიჭ-ო!	bitch-o!	Boy!	ბიჭ-ებ-ო!	bitch-eb-o!	Boys!
14	გოგო-ვ! ¹	gogo-v!	Girl!	გოგო-ებ-ო!	gogo-eb-o!	Girls!
15	ქმარ-ო!	qmar-o!	Husband!	ქმარ-ებ-ო!	qmr-eb-o!	Husbands!
16	ცოლ-ო!	tsol-o!	Wife!	ცოლ-ებ-ო!	tsol-eb-o!	Wivies!
17	საქმრო-ვ! ¹	saqmro-v!	Fiance!	საქმრო-ებ-ო!	saqmro-eb-o!	Fiances!
18	საცოლო-ვ! ¹	satsolo-v!	Fiancee!	საცოლო-ებ-ო!	satsolo-eb-o!	Fiances!
19	რძალ-ო!	rdzal-o!	Daughter-in-law!	რძალ-ებ-ო!	rdzl-eb-o!	Daughters-in-law!
20	სიძე-ვ! ¹	sidze-v!	Son-in-law!	სიძე-ებ-ო!	sidze-eb-o!	Sons-in-law!
21	სიმამრ-ო!	simamr-o!	Father-in-law! (Father of the wife)	სიმამრ-ებ-ო!	simamr-eb-o!	Fathers-in-law!
22	სიდედრ-ო!	sidedr-o!	Mother-in-law! (Mother of the wife)	სიდედრ-ებ-ო!	sidedr-eb-o!	Mothers-in-law!
23	მამამთილ-ო!	mamamthil-o!	Father-in-law! (Father of the husband)	მამამთილ-ებ-ო!	mamamthil-eb-o!	Fathers-in-law!
24	დედამთილ-ო!	dedamthil-o!	Mother-in-law! (Mother of the husband)	დედამთილ-ებ-ო!	dedamthil-eb-o!	Mothers-in-law!
25	პაპა-ვ! ¹	παπα-v!	Grandfather!	პაპ-ებ-ო!	παπ-eb-o!	Grandfathers!
26	ბებია-ვ! ¹	bebia-v!	Grandmother!	ბები-ებ-ო!	bebi-eb-o!	Grandmothers!
27	ნაცნობ-ო!	natsnob-o!	Familiar!	ნაცნობ-ებ-ო!	natsnob-eb-o!	Familiars!
28	ნათესავ-ო!	nathesav-o!	Relative!	ნათესავ-ებ-ო!	nathesav-eb-o!	Relatives!

29	ძიძა-ვ! ¹	dzidza-v!	Nurse!	ძიძ ² -ებ-ო!	dzidz-eb-o!	Nurses!
30	მსახურ-ო!	msakhur-o!	Servant!	მსახურ-ებ-ო!	msakhur-eb-o!	Servants!
31	მოახლე-ვ! ¹	moakhle-v!	Maid!	მოახლე-ებ-ო!	moakhle-eb-o!	Maids!
32	მხატვარ-ო!	mkhatvar-o!	Painter!	მხატვ ³ -ებ-ო!	mkhatvr-eb-o!	Painters!
33	ვაჭარ-ო!	vachar-o!	Merchant!	ვაჭ ³ -ებ-ო!	vachr-eb-o!	Merchants!
34	მჭედელ-ო!	mtchedel-o!	Blacksmith!	მჭედ ⁴ -ლებ-ო!	mtchedl-eb-o!	Blacksmiths!
35	დურგალ-ო!	durgal-o!	Carpenter!	დურგ ³ -ლებ-ო!	durgl-eb-o!	Carpenters!
36	მწყემს-ო!	mtzqkems-o!	Shepherd!	მწყემს-ებ-ო!	mtzqkems-eb-o!	Shepherds!

¹ In the Georgian speech, this ending of the vocative case (-ვ) is often omitted

² The end vowel letter ა in the word root is omitted

³ The vowel letter ა in the word root is omitted

⁴ The vowel letter ე in the word root is omitted

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 12 Georgian words are written in the vocative case (6 words in the singular and 6 in the plural), as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 104-106, "Supplement to Lesson No. 27" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words in the vocative case. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the singular and the corresponding word in the plural. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #27	Group #1
------------	----------

მამავ! - მამებო!

დედავ! - დედებო!

ძმავ! - ძმებო!

დავ! - დებო!

ამხანავო! - ამხანაგებო!

მეგობარო! - მეგობრებო!

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-seventh lesson.

Lesson twenty eight

The Georgian postpositions

The content of the twenty-eighth lesson:

1) First, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Knowledge of Georgian grammatical cases allows us to start studying Georgian postpositions. Georgian postpositions – words like “in”, “at” and “behind” – come after the main (basic) words and not before them as in English language. Most of the Georgian postpositions are joined to the main (basic) words themselves”.

2. “Georgian postpositions that are written together require that the words (nouns, numerals, pronouns) be in the appropriate grammatical cases. Today we are going to look at three postpositions [“-თან” (“-than” by English transliteration), “-ზე” (“-ze” by English transliteration) and “-ში” (“-shi” by English transliteration)]. These Georgian postpositions require the main (basic) words to be in the dative case.”

3. "The Georgian postposition “-თან” corresponds to English words “to”, “with”, “by”, “at”, and is meant to express the presence of someone or something near a person, object or place."

4. "The Georgian postposition “-ზე” corresponds to English words “on”, “at”, “about”, “to”, and is intended to express the presence of someone or something on the surface of something or to express the time of doing something."

5. "The Georgian postposition “-ში” (-shi) corresponds to English words “in”, “to”, “into”, “among”, and is meant to express the presence of someone or something inside something or the time of doing something."

6. “Next, we should recall the ending of the dative case, which we got acquainted with during the twenty-sixth lesson. We have already learned that in the dative case the noun ends with the letter -ბ (-s). For example, the word კაც-ი (kats-i) is a noun in the nominative singular [the letter -ი (-i) is the ending of the nominative case]. To decline this word in the dative case, you need to remove the ending of the nominative case and insert the ending of the dative case instead [letter -ბ (-s)]. Therefore, we get the word კაც-ბ (kats-s) - a noun in the dative case of the singular”.

7. “It remains to connect the noun in the dative case [კაც-ბ (katz-s)] with the above postpositions [-თან (-than), -ზე (-ze) and -ში (-shi)]. To do this, remove the ending of the dative case [letter -ბ (-s)] and replace it with postpositions [-თან (-than), -ზე (-ze) and -ში (-shi)]. Therefore, we will get the words we are interested in [კაც-თან (kats-than), კაც-ზე (kats-ze), კაც-ში (kats-shi)]. It should, however, be remembered that there are exceptions when the ending of the dative case [letter -ბ (-s)] is not removed”.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 46-48).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 28 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with the three Georgian postpositions [-თან (-than), -ზე (-ze) and -ში (-shi)] and their semantic meanings in conjunction with the main words in the dative case." The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

№	Georgian postpositions	Basic word used ¹	The basic word used in the dative case	The main word in the dative case + postposition	Semantic meanings of postpositions in English phrases
1	2	3	4	5	6
1	*-ში	სკოლა ¹	სკოლა-ს ²	სკოლა ³ -ში	
	** -shi	skola	skola-s	skola-shi	
	*** To	School		To school.	I'm going to school
2	*-ზე	ხე ¹	ხე-ს ²	ხე ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	khe	khe-s	khe-ze	
	*** On	Tree		On a tree.	Sitting on a tree.
3	*-თან	დედა ¹	დედა-ს ²	დედა-ს-თან	
	** -than	deda	deda-s	deda-s-than	
	*** To	Mother		To mother.	I'm going to my mother
4	*-თან	ამხანაგ-ი ¹	ამხანაგ-ს ²	ამხანაგ ³ -თან	
	** -than	amkhanag-i	amkhanag-s	amkhanag-than	
	*** With	Comrade		With a friend	I'm with a friend
5	*-ში	რუსეთ-ი ¹	რუსეთ-ს ²	რუსეთ ³ -ში	
	** -shi	ruseth-i	ruseth-s	ruseth-shi	
	*** To	Russia		To Russia	I often go to Russia
6	*-თან	ისინი ⁴	მათ ⁵	მათ-თან	
	** -than	isini	math	math-than	
	*** To	They		To them	I go to them
7	*-თან	ჩვენ ⁴	ჩვენ ⁵	ჩვენ-თან	

	** -than	chven	chven	chven-than	
	*** With	We		With us	Stay with us
8	*-ზე	ზღვა ¹	ზღვა-ს ²	ზღვა ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	zgrva	zgrva-s	zgrva-ze	
	*** On	Sea		On the sea	Relaxing on the sea
9	*-ში	ჰაერ-ი ¹	ჰაერ-ს ²	ჰაერ ³ -ში	
	** -shi	haer-i	haer-s	haer-shi	
	*** In	Air		In the air	Today there are many airplanes flying in the air
10	*-ზე	ფულ-ი ¹	ფულ-ს ²	ფულ ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	pul-i	pul-s	pul-ze	
	*** About	Money		About money	Argument about money
11	*-თან	მასწავლებელ-ი ¹	მასწავლებელ-ს ²	მასწავლებელ ³ -თან	
	** -than	mastzavlebel-i	mastzavlebel-s	mastzavlebel-than	
	*** With	Teacher		With the teacher	He argues with the teacher
12	*-ში	ნაცნობ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	ნაცნობ-ებ-ს ²	ნაცნობ-ებ ³ -ში	
	** -shi	natsnob-eb-i	natsnob-eb-s	natsnob-eb-shi	
	*** In	Acquaintances		In acquaintances	He is looking for help in his acquaintances
13	*-ზე	ცხენ-ი ¹	ცხენ-ს ²	ცხენ ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	tskhen-i	tskhen-s	tskhen-ze	
	*** On	Horse		On a horse	He is sitting on a horse
14	*-ში	საავადმყოფო ¹	საავადმყოფო-ს ²	საავადმყოფო ³ -ში	
	** -shi	saavadmqkopo	saavadmqkopo-s	saavadmqkopo-shi	
	*** In	Hospital		In the hospital	Now I'm in the hospital
15	*-ზე	ნაპირ-ი ¹	ნაპირ-ს ²	ნაპირ ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	napir-i	napir-s	napir-ze	

	* ** On	Coast		On the shore	He will walk on the shore
16	*-ში	სამინისტრო ¹	სამინისტრო-ს ²	სამინისტრო ³ -ში	
	* *-shi	saministro	saministro-s	saministro-shi	
	* ** In	Ministry		In the ministry	I work in the ministry
17	*-ზე	მიწა ¹	მიწა-ს ²	მიწა ³ -ზე	
	* *-ze	mitza	mitza-s	mitza-ze	
	* ** To	Ground		To the ground	The plane fell to the ground
18	*-ში	ეზო ¹	ეზო-ს ²	ეზო ³ -ში	
	* *-shi	ezo	ezo-s	ezo-shi	
	* ** In	Yard		In the yard	Children play in our yard
19	*-ზე	თოვლ-ი ¹	თოვლ-ს ²	თოვლ ³ -ზე	
	* *-ze	thovl-i	thovl-s	thovl-ze	
	* ** On	Snow		On the snow	Skating on the snow
20	*-თან	ფანჯარა ¹	ფანჯარა-ს ²	ფანჯარა-ს-თან	
	* *-than	panjara	panjara-s	panjara-s-than	
	* ** By	Window		By the window	She sits by the window
21	*-ში	კავკასიელ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	კავკასიელ-ებ-ს ²	კავკასიელ-ებ ³ -ში	
	* *-shi	kavkasiel-eb-i	kavkasiel-eb-s	kavkasiel-eb-shi	
	* ** To	Caucasians		To Caucasians	There are many things peculiar to Caucasians
22	*-ზე	ხმელეთ-ი ¹	ხმელეთ-ს ²	ხმელეთ ³ -ზე	
	* *-ze	khmeleth-i	khmeleth-s	khmeleth-ze	
	* ** On	Land		On land	Animals move on land
23	*-თან	თქვენ ⁴	თქვენ ⁵	თქვენ-თან	
	* *-than	thqven	thqven	thqven-than	
	* ** To	You		To you	I am coming to you

24	*-ში	წყალ-ი ¹	წყალ-ს ²	წყალ ³ -ში	
	** -shi	tzqkal-i	tzqkal-s	tzqkal-shi	
	*** Into	Water		Into the water	He jumped into the water
25	*-ზე	ტანსაცმელ-ი ¹	ტანსაცმელ-ს ²	ტანსაცმელ ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	tansatsmel-i	tansatsmel-s	tansatsmel-ze	
	*** About	Clothes		About clothes	They are arguing about clothes
26	*-თან	მამა ¹	მამა-ს ²	მამა-ს-თან	
	** -than	mama	mama-s	mama-s-than	
	*** With	Father		With father	They are all with father
27	*-თან	სახლ-ი ¹	სახლ-ს ²	სახლ ³ -თან	
	** -than	sakhl-i	sakhl-s	sakhl-than	
	*** At	House		At house	Be at my house in the evening
28	*-ზე	მთა ¹	მთა-ს ²	მთა ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	mtha	mtha-s	mtha-ze	
	*** On	Mountain		On the mountain	It is cold on the mountain
29	*-ში	ბაღ-ი ¹	ბაღ-ს ²	ბაღ ³ -ში	
	** -shi	bagr-i	bagr-s	bagr-shi	
	*** To	Garden		To the garden	We often go to the garden
30	*-ზე	მამულ-ი ¹	მამულ-ს ²	მამულ ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	mamul-i	mamul-s	mamul-ze	
	*** About	Estate		About the estate	I often think about my estate
31	*-თან	მზე ¹	მზე-ს ²	მზე-ს-თან	
	** -than	mze	mze-s	mze-s-than	
	*** To	Sun		To the Sun	The planet Mercury is close to the Sun

32	*-ში	ტყე ¹	ტყე-ს ²	ტყე ³ -ში	
	** -shi	tqke	tqke-s	tqke-shi	
	*** In	Woods		In the woods	The neighbor got lost in the woods
33	*-თან	მეგობრ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	მეგობრ-ებ-ს ²	მეგობრ-ებ ³ -თან	
	** -than	megobr-eb-i	megobr-eb-s	megobr-eb-than	
	*** With	Friends		With friends	He plays basketball with his friends
34	*-ში	ნათესავ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	ნათესავ-ებ-ს ²	ნათესავ-ებ ³ -ში	
	** -shi	nathesav-eb-i	nathesav-eb-s	nathesav-eb-shi	
	*** Among	Relatives		Among relatives	He spends time among relatives
35	*-ზე	მაგიდა ¹	მაგიდა-ს ²	მაგიდა ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	magida	magida-s	magida-ze	
	*** On	Table		On a table	I placed a book on the table
36	*-ზე	სამუშაო ¹	სამუშაო-ს ²	სამუშაო ³ -ზე	
	** -ze	samushao	samushao-s	samushao-ze	
	*** At	Work		At work	I'm at work
* Phrases and words in Georgian language					
** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words					
*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words					

¹ The initial form of the Georgian noun is the word in the nominative case. All Georgian nouns end in vowels. The vowel “o” is also the ending of the nominative case. Other vowels at the end of the word are parts of the root.

² The ending of the dative case.

³ The case ending is omitted.

⁴ Personal pronoun in the nominative case.

⁵ Personal pronoun in the dative case (End of the dative case “-ს” is not used).

⁶ The combination “-ებ” indicates that the word is in the plural.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 words in the dative case without postpositions and 6 words in the dative case with postpositions), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 107-112, "Supplement to Lesson No. 28" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the dative case without a postposition and the corresponding word in the dative case with a postposition . The combinations of English letters are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson #28	Group #1
სკოლას - სკოლაში	
ხეს - ხეზე	
დედას - დედასთან	
ამხანაგს - ამხანაგთან	
რუსეთს - რუსეთში	
იმათ - იმათთან	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-eighth lesson.

Lesson twenty nine

The Georgian postpositions

The content of the twenty-ninth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we have to continue the study of Georgian postpositions that we started in the previous lesson. We have already met three postpositions [“-თან” (“-than”), “-ზე” (“-ze”), “-ში” (“-shi”)], which require the use of the dative case. Recall that Georgian postpositions come after the main (basic) words and not before them as in English language. Most of the Georgian postpositions are joined to the main (basic) words themselves”.

2. "Today we're going to look at three new postpositions [“-თვით” (“-thvis” by English transliteration), “-გან” (“-gan” by English transliteration), “-კენ” (“-ken” by English transliteration)]. These Georgian postpositions require the main (basic) words to be in the genitive case».

3. "The postposition “-თვით” corresponds to English word “for”, “by”, and is intended to show the destination for someone or something, as well as the purpose of the action."

4. "The postposition “-გან” corresponds to English words “from”, “out of”, “of”, “with”, and is intended to show the distance from someone or something, as well as the reason for what is happening."

5. "The postposition “-კენ” corresponds to English word “towards”, “to”, and is intended to express a direction."

6. "Next, we should recall the ending of the genitive case, which we got acquainted with during the twenty-sixth lesson. We have already learned that in the genitive case the noun ends with the letters -ის (-is). For example, the word კაც-ი (kats-i) is a noun in the nominative singular [the letter -ი (-i) is the ending of the nominative case]. To decline this word in the genitive case, you need to remove the ending of the nominative case and insert the ending of the genitive case instead [letters -ის (-is)]. Consequently, we get the word კაც-ის (kats-is) - a noun in the genitive case of the singular”.

7. "It remains to connect the noun in the genitive case [კაც-ის (kats-is)] with the above postpositions [-თვით (-thvis), -გან (-gan), -კენ (-ken)]. Therefore, we will get the words we are interested in [კაც-ის-თვით (kats-is-thvis), კაც-ის-გან (kats-is-gan), კაც-ის-კენ (kats-is-ken)]”.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 46-48).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 29 on the big screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with the three Georgian postpositions [-თვით (-thvis), -გან (-gan), -კენ (-ken)] and their semantic meanings, together with the main words in the genitive case." The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №29

№	Georgian postpositions	Basic word used ¹	The basic word used in the genitive case	The main word in the genitive case + postposition	Semantic meanings of postpositions in English phrases
1	2	3	4	5	6
1	* -გან	მინა ¹	მინ ³ -ის ²	მინ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	mina	min-is	min-is-gan	
	*** Of	Glass		Of glass	This is made of glass
2	* -თვის	საკითხ-ი ¹	საკითხ-ის ²	საკითხ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	sakithkh-i	sakithkh-is	sakithkh-is-thvis	
	*** For	Issue		For the issue	We have gathered for the important issue
3	* -თვის	საქმე ¹	საქმ ³ -ის ²	საქმ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	saqme	saqm-is	saqm-is-thvis	
	*** For	Business		For the business	He quarreled for the business
4	* -თვის	ბავშვ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	ბავშვ-ებ-ის ²	ბავშვ-ებ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	bavshv-eb-i	bavshv-eb-is	bavshv-eb-is-thvis	
	*** For	Children		For children	This is harmful for children
5	* -გან	ქმარ-ი ¹	ქმ ⁵ რ-ის ²	ქმრ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	qmar-i	qmr-is	qmr-is-gan	
	*** From	Husband		From husband	Wife received gifts from husband
6	* -გან	ნაწილაკ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	ნაწილაკ-ებ-ის ²	ნაწილაკ-ებ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	natzilak-eb-i	natzilak-eb-is	natzilak-eb-is-gan	
	*** Of	Particles		Of particles	An atom consists of particles
7	* -თვის	სადილ-ი ¹	სადილ-ის ²	სადილ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	sadil-i	sadil-is	sadil-is-thvis	
	*** By	Dinner		By dinner	We were all home by dinner time
8	* -თვის	ქალ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	ქალ-ებ-ის ²	ქალ-ებ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	qal-eb-i	qal-eb-is	qal-eb-is-thvis	
	*** For	Women		For the sake of women	he is capable of everything for the sake of women
9	* -გან	მეგობარ-ი ¹	მეგობ ⁵ რ-ის ²	მეგობრ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	megobar-i	megobr-is	megobr-is-gan	
	*** From	Friend		From a friend	He heard about it from a friend
10	* -გან	ქაღალდ-ი ¹	ქაღალდ-ის ²	ქაღალდ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	qagrald-i	qagrald-is	qagrald-is-gan	
	*** Of	Paper		Of paper	It is made of paper
11	* -გან	ამხანაგ-ი ¹	ამხანაგ-ის ²	ამხანაგ-ის-გან	

	*-gan	amkhanag-i	amkhanag-is	amkhanag-is-gan	
	*** From	Comrade		From a comrade	I received a letter from a comrade
12	*-კენ	სტადიონ-ი ¹	სტადიონ-ის ²	სტადიონ-ის-კენ	
	** -ken	stadion-i	stadion-is	stadion-is-ken	
	*** Towards	Stadium		Towards the stadium	We went towards the stadium
13	*-თვის	და ¹	დ ³ -ის ²	დ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	da	d-is	d-is-thvis	
	*** For	Sister		For sister	He bought it for sister
14	*-თვის	მამულ-ი ¹	მამულ-ის ²	მამულ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	mamul-i	mamul-is	mamul-is-thvis	
	*** For	Motherland		For the sake of the motherland	He died for the sake of the motherland
15	*-თვის	დილა ¹	დილ ³ -ის ²	დილ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	dila	dil-is	dil-is-thvis	
	*** By	Morning		By the morning	They managed to arrive by morning
16	*-გან	ჩვენ ⁶	ჩვენ ⁷	ჩვენ-გან	
	** -gan	chven	chven	chven-gan	
	*** Of	Us		Of us	She is tired of us
17	*-გან	ბოსტნეულ-ი ¹	ბოსტნეულ-ის ²	ბოსტნეულ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	bostneul-i	bostneul-is	bostneul-is-gan	
	*** From	Vegetables		From vegetables	Dishes are made from vegetables
18	*-გან	შენობა ¹	შენობ ³ -ის ²	შენობ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	shenoba	shenob-is	shenob-is-gan	
	*** Out of	Building		Out of the building	He walked out of the building
19	*-კენ	მთვარე ¹	მთვარ ³ -ის ²	მთვარ-ის-კენ	
	** -ken	mthvare	mthvar-is	mthvar-is-ken	
	*** Towards	Moon		Towards the Moon	The rocket is directed towards the Moon
20	*-თვის	ბინა ¹	ბინ ³ -ის ²	ბინ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	bina	bin-is	bin-is-thvis	
	*** For	Apartment		For the apartment	New furniture was bought for the apartment
21	*-გან	სიცვი ¹	სიცვ ³ -ის ²	სიცვ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	sitsive	sitsiv-is	sitsiv-is-gan	
	*** From	Cold		From the cold	I was exhausted from the cold
22	*-გან	მშობლ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	მშობლ-ებ-ის ²	მშობლ-ებ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	mshobl-eb-i	mshobl-eb-is	mshobl-eb-is-gan	
	*** From	Parents		From parents	They received reprimands from parents
23	*-თვის	ოჯახ-ი ¹	ოჯახ-ის ²	ოჯახ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	ojakh-i	ojakh-is	ojakh-is-thvis	
	*** For	Family		For the sake of family	She suffers this for the

					sake of family
24	* -გან	შიშ-ი ¹	შიშ-ის ²	შიშ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	shish-i	shish-is	shish-is-gan	
	*** With	Fear		With fear	He was numb with fear
25	*-კენ	გზა ¹	გზ ³ -ის ²	გზ-ის-კენ	
	** -ken	gza	gz-is	gz-is-ken	
	*** Towards	Road		Towards the road	They move towards the road
26	* -გან	დირექტორ-ი ¹	დირექტორ-ის ²	დირექტორ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	direqtor-i	direqtor-is	direqtor-is-gan	
	*** From	Director		From the director	I got a compliment from the director
27	*-კენ	კუნძულ-ი ¹	კუნძულ-ის ²	კუნძულ-ის-კენ	
	** -ken	kundzul-i	kundzul-is	kundzul-is-ken	
	*** Towards	Island		Towards the island	Mariners set sail towards the island
28	*-თვის	შენ ⁶	შენ ⁷	შენ-თვის	
	** -thvis	shen	shen	shen-thvis	
	*** For	You		For you	I'm ready for everything for you
29	* -გან	ავადმყოფ-ი ¹	ავადმყოფ-ის ²	ავადმყოფ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	avadmqkop-i	avadmqkop-is	avadmqkop-is-gan	
	*** From	Patient		From the patient	He got infected from the patient
30	*-თვის	ამხანაგ-ი ¹	ამხანაგ-ის ²	ამხანაგ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	amkhanag-i	amkhanag-is	amkhanag-is-thvis	
	*** For	Comrade		For a comrade	We did this for a comrade
31	* -გან	ქვა ¹	ქვ ³ -ის ²	ქვ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	qva	qv-is	qv-is-gan	
	*** Of	Stone		Of stone	The hammer is made of stone
32	*-კენ	სკოლა ¹	სკოლ ³ -ის ²	სკოლ-ის-კენ	
	** -ken	skola	skol-is	skol-is-ken	
	*** To	School		To school	Children rushed to school
33	* -გან	ალუბალ-ი ¹	ალუბლ-ის ²	ალუბლ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	alubal-i	alubl-is	alubl-is-gan	
	*** From	Cherry		From cherry	From cherry one gets jam
34	*-თვის	გამოცდ-ებ ⁴ -ი ¹	გამოცდ-ებ-ის ²	გამოცდ-ებ-ის-თვის	
	** -thvis	gamotsd-eb-i	gamotsd-eb-is	gamotsd-eb-is-thvis	
	*** For	Exams		For exams	We are preparing for exams
35	*-თვის	ისინი ⁶	მათ ⁷	მათ-თვის	
	** -thvis	isini	math	math-thvis	
	*** For	They		For them	He suffered for them
36	* -გან	ხე ¹	ხ ³ -ის ²	ხ-ის-გან	
	** -gan	khe	kh-is	kh-is-gan	
	*** Of	Wood		Of wood	It is made of wood

* Phrases and words in Georgian language
** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words
*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words

¹ The initial form of the Georgian noun is the word in the nominative case. All Georgian nouns end in vowels. The vowel *o* is also the ending of the nominative case. Other vowels at the end of the word are parts of the root.

² The ending of the genitive case.

³ The vowel ending of the root is omitted.

⁴ The combination *-ობ-* indicates that the word is in the plural.

⁵ In the root of the word the last vowel letter *o* is omitted

⁶ Personal pronoun in the nominative case.

⁷ Personal pronoun in the genitive case (The ending of the genitive case *-ობ* is not used).

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (6 words in the genitive case without postpositions and 6 words in the genitive case with postpositions), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 113-118, "Supplement to Lesson No. 29" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the genitive case without a postposition and the corresponding word in the genitive case with a postposition . The combinations of English letters are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 29	Group No. 1
<p>მინის - მინისგან საკითხის - საკითხისთვის საქმის - საქმისთვის ბავშვების - ბავშვებისთვის ქმრის - ქმრისგან ნაწილაკების - ნაწილაკებისგან</p>	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the twenty-ninth lesson.

Lesson thirty

The Georgian postpositions

The content of the thirtieth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we will continue the study of Georgian postpositions. Recall that Georgian postpositions come after the main (basic) words and not before them as in English language. Most of the Georgian postpositions are joined to the main (basic) words themselves".

2. "Let's get acquainted with three new postpositions: two postpositions ["-ურთ" ("-urth" by English transliteration) and "-დან" ("-dan" by English transliteration)], which require the use of the instrumental case, and the postposition "-მდე" ("-mde" by English transliteration), which requires the use of the directive case".

3. "The postposition ["-ურთ" ("-urth")] corresponds to English words "with", and is meant to express the same idea as the already familiar postposition "-თან" ("-than"): someone or something is together with someone or something."

4. "The postposition "-დან" ("-dan") corresponds to English word "from", "since", and is intended to show the departure or exit from something, the moving away from something, the removal of something from someone or something."

5. "The postposition "-მდე" ("-mde") corresponds to English words "until", "to", "till", and is meant to express the end of some process up to a certain point in terms of location, time and quantity."

6. "Now we should remember the ending of the instrumental case, which we got acquainted with during the twenty-sixth lesson. Recall, for example, that the word სახლ-ი (sakhli-i; in English "House") is a noun in the nominative singular [the letter -ი (-i) is the ending of the nominative case]. To decline this word in the instrumental case, you need to remove the ending of the nominative case and insert the ending of the instrumental case instead [letters -ით (-ith)]. Therefore, we get the word სახლ-ით (sakhli-ith) - a noun in the instrumental case of the singular.

7. "Next, you should combine the noun in the instrumental case - სახლ-ით (sakhli-ith) - with the postpositions [-ურთ (-urth) and -დან (-dan)]. Therefore, we get the words we are interested in [სახლ-ით-ურთ (sakhli-ith-urth) and სახლ-ით-დან (sakhli-ith-dan)]. The word სახლ-ით-ურთ (sakhli-ith-urth) in English means "Together with the house." As for the word სახლ-ით-დან (sakhli-ith-dan), after deleting the letter თ (th) we get the word we need სახლ-ი-დან (sakhli-i-dan). It, this word, in English means "From the house".

8. "In addition, we still need to remember the ending of the directive case, which we got acquainted with during the twenty-sixth lesson. Let's take again the word სახლ-ი (sakhli-i) - this is a noun in the nominative case of the singular [the letter -ი (-i) is the ending of the nominative case]. To decline this word in the directive case, you need to remove the ending of the nominative case and insert the ending of the directive case instead [letters -ად (-ad)]. Therefore, we get the word სახლ-ად (sakhli-ad) - a noun in the directive case of the singular."

9. "After that, you should combine the noun in the directive case - სახლ-ად (sakhl-ad) - with the postposition - მდე (-mde). Therefore, we get the word we are interested in სახლ-ად-მდე (sakhl-ad-mde). After removing the letter დ (d), we get the word we need სახლ-ა-მდე (sakhl-a-mde). It, this word, in English means "Until the house."

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 46-48).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 30 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with the three Georgian postpositions [-ურთ (-urth), -დან (-dan), -მდე (-mde)] and their semantic meanings, together with the main words in instrumental or directive cases." The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №30

№	Georgian postpositions	Basic word used ¹	The basic word used in the instrumental case	The basic word used in the c directive case	The main word in the instrumental or the directive cases + postposition	Semantic meanings of postpositions in English phrases
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	*-მდე	ქალაქ-ი ¹		ქალაქ-ად	ქალაქ-ა ² -მდე	
	** -mde	qalaq-i		qalaq-ad	qalaq-a-mde	
	*** To	City			To the city	Five kilometers to the city
2	*-ურთ	მეგობარ-ი ¹	მეგობ ³ რ-ით		მეგობრ-ით-ურთ	
	** -urth	megobar-i	megobr-ith		megobr-ith-urth	
	*** With	Friend			With a friend	He came with a friend
3	*-დან	ბიბლიოთეკა	ბიბლიოთეკ ⁴ -ით		ბიბლიოთეკ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** -dan	bibliotheka	bibliothek-ith		bibliothek-i-dan	
	*** From	Library			From library.	I borrowed a book from the library
4	*-დან	სახლ-ი ¹	სახლ-ით		სახლ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	sakhl-i	sakhl-ith		sakhl-i-dan	
	*** From	House			From house	It is a 10-minute walk from the house to the car park

5	*-დან	ბილიკ-ი ¹	ბილიკ-ით		ბილიკ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	bilik-i	bilik-ith		bilik-i-dan	
	*** From	Path			From path	Snow is removed from the path
6	*-მდე	სიკვდილ-ი ¹		სიკვდილ-ად	სიკვდილ-ა ² -მდე	
	** - mde	sikvdil-i		sikvdil-ad	sikvdil-a-mde	
	*** To	Death			To death	He was beaten to death
7	*-მდე	წერტილ-ი ¹		წერტილ-ად	წერტილ-ა ² -მდე	
	** - mde	tzertil-i		tzertil-ad	tzertil-a-mde	
	*** To	Point			To point	The water temperature rose to the boiling point
8	*-ურთ	ამხანაგ-ი ¹	ამხანაგ-ით		ამხანაგ-ით-ურთ	
	** - urth	amkhanag-i	amkhanag-ith		amkhanag-ith-urth	
	*** With	Comrade			With comrade	Father is resting with comrade
9	*-დან	სოფელ-ი ¹	სოფ ^ლ -ით		სოფლ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	sopel-i	sopl-ith		sopl-i-dan	
	*** From	Village			From village	They came from the village
10	*-დან	ნაპირ-ი ¹	ნაპირ-ით		ნაპირ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	naπir-i	naπir-ith		naπir-i-dan	
	*** From	Shore			From shore	He sailed from the shore
11	*-დან	სახურავ-ი ¹	სახურავ-ით		სახურავ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	sakhurav-i	sakhurav-ith		sakhurav-i-dan	
	*** From	Roof			From roof	The neighbor fell from the roof
12	*-მდე	საღამო		საღამო- ⁷ დ	საღამო- ² მდე	
	** - mde	sagramo		sagramo-d	sagramo-mde	

	*** Until	Evening			Until evening	I was there until evening
13	*-მდე	ნაპირ-ი ¹		ნაპირ-ად	ნაპირ-ა ² -მდე	
	** - mde	naɪir-i		naɪir-ad	naɪir-a-mde	
	*** To	Shore			To shore	He swam to shore
14	*-ურთ	ბავშვ-ი ¹	ბავშვ-ით		ბავშვ-ით-ურთ	
	** - urth	bavshv-i	bavshv-ith		bavshv-ith-urth	
	*** With	Child			With child	He traveled with his child
15	*-დან	გაზეთ-ი ¹	გაზეთ-ით		გაზეთ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	gazeth-i	gazeth-ith		gazeth-i-dan	
	*** From	Newspaper			From newspaper	I heard this from the newspaper
16	*-დან	მოსკოვ-ი ¹	მოსკოვ-ით		მოსკოვ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	moskov-i	moskov-ith		moskov-i-dan	
	*** From	Moscow			From Moscow	There are 2390 kilometers from Moscow to Tbilisi
17	*-დან	ზურგ-ი ¹	ზურგ-ით		ზურგ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	zurg-i	zurg-ith		zurg-i-dan	
	*** From	Rear			From rear	Enemies attacked from the rear
18	*-დან	ნატურა	ნატურ ⁴ -ით		ნატურ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	natura	natur-ith		natur-i-dan	
	*** From	Nature			From nature	Artists painted from nature
19	*-მდე	მწვერვალ-ი ¹		მწვერვალ-ად	მწვერვალ-ა ² -მდე	
	** - mde	mtzverval-i		mtzverval-ad	mtzverval-a-mde	
	*** To	Top			To top	There is a little distance left to the top
20	*-ურთ	ჩანთა	ჩანთ ⁴ -ით		ჩანთ-ით-ურთ	

	** - urth	chantha	chanth-ith		chanth-ith-urth	
	*** With	Bag			With bag	She always walks with a bag
21	* -დან	რომან-ი ¹	რომან-ით		რომან-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	roman-i	roman-ith		roman-i-dan	
	*** From	Novel			From novel	I used a quote from the novel
22	* -დან	თავ-ი ¹	თავ-ით		თავ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	thav-i	thav-ith		thav-i-dan	
	*** From	Beginning			From beginning	I read the novel from beginning to end
23	* -დან	ვოგზალ-ი ¹	ვოგზ ³ ლ-ით		ვოგზ ⁵ ლ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	vogzal-i	vogzl-ith		vogzl-i-dan	
	*** From	Train station			From train station	I came directly from the train station
24	* -მდე	მდინარე		მდინარე- ⁷ დ	მდინარე- ² მდე	
	** - mde	mdinare		mdinare-d	mdinare-mde	
	*** To	River			To river	We walked down to the river
25	* -მდე	განთიად-ი ¹		განთიად-ად	განთიად-ა ² -მდე	
	** - mde	ganthiad-i		ganthiad-ad	ganthiad-a-mde	
	*** Until	Dawn			Until dawn	We were on duty until dawn
26	* -ურთ	კალამ-ი ¹	კალ ³ მ-ით		კალმ-ით-ურთ	
	** - urth	kalam-i	kalm-ith		kalm-ith-urth	
	*** With	Pen			With a pen	He came to the library with a pen
27	* -დან	ფანჯარა	ფანჯ ³ რ ⁴ -ით		ფანჯ ⁵ რ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	panjara	panjr-ith		panjr-i-dan	

	*** From	Window			From window	She threw the garbage from the window
28	* -მდე	ბოლო		ბოლო- ⁷ დ	ბოლო- ² მდე	
	** - mde	bolo		bolo-d	bolo-mde	
	*** Till	End			Till the end	I watched the movie till the end
29	* -დან	კოსმოს-ი ¹	კოსმოს-ით		კოსმოს-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	kosmos-i	kosmos-ith		kosmos-i-dan	
	*** From	Outer space			From outer space	Radiation penetrates from outer space
30	* -დან	დილა	დილ ⁴ -ით		დილ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	dila	dil-ith		dil-i-dan	
	*** Since	Morning			Since morning	Since morning I will be with them
31	* -მდე	კვირა		კვირა- ⁷ დ	კვირა- ² მდე	
	** - mde	kvira		kvira-d	kvira-mde	
	*** To	Friday			To Friday	From Monday to Friday I will be on a business trip
32	* -ურთ	მშობლ-ებ-ი ¹	მშობლ-ებ-ით		მშობლ-ებ-ით-ურთ	
	** - urth	mshobl-eb-i	mshobl-eb-ith		mshobl-eb-ith-urth	
	*** With	Parents			With parents	He was there with his parents
33	* -მდე	მთვარე		მთვარე- ⁷ დ	მთვარე- ² მდე	
	** - mde	mthvare		mthvare-d	mthvare-mde	
	*** To	The Moon			To the Moon	The distance from the Earth to the Moon is about 385,000 km.
34	* -დან	წარსულ-ი ¹	წარსულ-ით		წარსულ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	tzarsul-i	tzarsul-ith		tzarsul-i-dan	

	*** From	Past			From the past	We should learn from the past
35	* -დან	ბავშვობა	ბავშვობ ⁴ -ით		ბავშვობ-ი ⁵ -დან	
	** - dan	bavshvoba	bavshvob-ith		bavshvob-i-dan	
	*** Since	Childhood			Since childhood	Since childhood, I have been fascinated by singing
36	*-მდე	სახლ-ი ¹		სახლ-ად	სახლ-ა ² -მდე	
	** - mde	sakhl-i		sakhl-ad	sakhl-a-mde	
	*** To	House			To the house	It is 500 meters from the road to the house
* Phrases and words in Georgian language						
** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words						
*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words						

¹ The initial form of the Georgian noun is the word in the nominative case. All Georgian nouns end in vowels. The vowel *o* is also the ending of the nominative case. Other vowels at the end of the word are parts of the root.

² The consonant letter of the ending of the directive case is deleted.

³ The last vowel letter *o* is deleted from the root of the word

⁴ The vowel ending of the root is omitted.

⁵ The consonant letter of the ending of the instrumental case is deleted.

⁶ ³ The last vowel letter *o* is deleted from the root of the word

⁷ The vowel of the ending of the directive case is deleted.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (groups No. 1, No. 2, No. 4 and No. 5 receive 6 words in the instrumental case without postpositions and 6 words in the same case with postpositions; groups No. 3 and No. 6 receive 6 words in the directive case without postpositions and 6 words in the same case with postpositions), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 119-

124, "Supplement to Lesson No. 30" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the required case without a postposition and the same word with a postposition. The combinations of English letters are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 30	Group No. 1
მეგობრით - მეგობრითურთ	
ბიბლიოთეკით - ბიბლიოთეკიდან	
სახლით - სახლიდან	
ბილიკით - ბილიკიდან	
ამხანაგით - ამხანაგითურთ	
სოფლით - სოფლიდან	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirtieth lesson.

Lesson thirty one

The Georgian postpositions

Content of the thirty-first lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we have to finish the study of Georgian postpositions. Let us recall that Georgian postpositions come after the main (basic) words and not before them as in English language. Most of the Georgian postpositions are joined to the main (basic) words themselves".

2. "Let's get acquainted with the postposition "-ვით" ("-vith" by English transliteration), which expresses the same idea as the English words "like" and "as".

3. "Recall also that the noun in the nominative singular is called the initial form of the word. In their initial form, Georgian nouns end in a vowel. Of the final vowels, the letter *ო* (*i*) is the end of the nominative case, while other final vowels - *ა* (*a*), *ე* (*e*), *ო* (*o*), *უ* (*u*) - are the basis of the corresponding words.

4. "Let's consider the case of using the postposition -ვით (-vith) with words whose stems have final vowels - *ა* (*a*), *ე* (*e*), *ო* (*o*), *უ* (*u*). In this case, the postposition -ვით (-vith) requires the use of the dative case. For example, let's take the word ქვა (*qva*), the English synonym for which is the word "stone". In order to write the word ქვა (*qva*) and the postposition -ვით (-vith) together, you must first translate the word ქვა (*qva*) into the dative case. To do this, to the word ქვა (*qva*) one must add the corresponding case ending, that is, the letter *ს* (*s*). We get the word in the dative case - ქვა-ს (*qva-s*). It remains to write the word ქვა-ს (*qvas*) and the postposition -ვით (-vith) together. To do this, you need to add a vowel *ა* (*a*), which must be inserted between the case ending -ს (-s) and the postposition -ვით (-vith). Thus, we get a new word ქვა-ს-ა-ვით (*qva-s-a-vith*), the English synonym of which is the word "Like a stone".

5. "Let's consider another case. Words end in a vowel *ი* (*i*) and you must use the postposition -ვით (-vith). This time, the postposition -ვით (-vith) requires the use of the nominative case. For example, let's take the word ჰაერ-ი (*haer-i*), whose English synonym is the word "air". In order to write together the word ჰაერ-ი (*haer-i*) and the postposition -ვით (-vith), there is no need to add any new letter. Thus, we get a new word ჰაერ-ი-ვით (*haer-i-vith*), the English synonym of which is the word "Like air".

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 46-48).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 31 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with the postposition -ვით (-vith) and its semantic meaning, together with the main words in the dative and nominative cases." The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №31

№	Georgian postpositions	Basic word used ¹	The basic word used in the dative case	The basic word used in the nominative case	The main word in the dative or the nominative cases + postposition	Semantic meanings of postpositions in English phrases
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	*-ვით	ჭიანჭველა ¹	ჭიანჭველა-ს		ჭიანჭველა-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	tchiantchvela	tchiantchvela-s		tchiantchvela-s-a-vith	
	*** Like	Ant			Like an ant	He is industrious like an ant
2	*-ვით	კუ ¹	კუ-ს		კუ-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	ku	ku-s		ku-s-a-vith	
	*** Like	Turtle			Like a turtle	He walked like a turtle
3	*-ვით	ბავშვი ¹		ბავშვი	ბავშვი-ვით	
	** -vith	bavshv-i		bavshv-i	bavshv-i-vith	
	*** Like	Child			Like a child	The boy is crying like a child
4	*-ვით	გმირი ¹		გმირი	გმირი-ვით	
	** -vith	gmir-i		gmir-i	gmir-i-vith	
	*** Like	Hero			Like a hero	He behaved like a hero
5	*-ვით	გედი ¹		გედი	გედი-ვით	
	** -vith	ged-i		ged-i	ged-i-vith	
	*** Like	Swan			Like a swan	He swims like a swan
6	*-ვით	ავადმყოფი ¹		ავადმყოფი	ავადმყოფი-ვით	
	** -vith	avadmqkop-i		avadmqkop-i	avadmqkop-i-vith	
	*** Like	Sick person			Like a sick person	He behaves like a sick person
7	*-ვით	კატა ¹	კატა-ს		კატა-ს-ა-ვით	

	* *-vith	kata	kata-s		kata-s-a-vith	
	*** Like	Cat			Like a cat	The child jumps up like a cat
8	*-ვით	სოკო ¹	სოკო-ს		სოკო-ს-ა-ვით	
	* *-vith	soko	soko-s		soko-s-a-vith	
	*** Like	Mushroom			Like a mushroom	The cloud after the atomic explosion looks like a mushroom
9	*-ვით	მერცხალ-ი ¹		მერცხალ-ი	მერცხალ-ი-ვით	
	* *-vith	mertskhal-i		mertskhal-i	mertskhal-i-vith	
	*** Like	Swallow			Like a swallow	Your daughter chirps like a swallow
10	*-ვით	თოვლ-ი ¹		თოვლ-ი	თოვლ-ი-ვით	
	* *-vith	thovl-i		thovl-i	thovl-i-vith	
	*** As	Snow			As snow	Purchased ice cream is white as snow
11	*-ვით	მშობელ-ი ¹		მშობელ-ი	მშობელ-ი-ვით	
	* *-vith	mshobel-i		mshobel-i	mshobel-i-vith	
	*** Like	Parent			Like a parent	The stranger cares about the child, like a parent
12	*-ვით	ცხოველ-ი ¹		ცხოველ-ი	ცხოველ-ი-ვით	
	* *-vith	tskhovel-i		tskhovel-i	tskhovel-i-vith	
	*** Like	Animal			Like an animal	He treated me like an animal
13	*-ვით	თევზ-ი ¹		თევზ-ი	თევზ-ი-ვით	
	* *-vith	thevz-i		thevz-i	thevz-i-vith	
	*** Like	Fish			Like a fish	My brother swims like a fish
14	*-ვით	ღორ-ებ-ი ¹		ღორ-ებ-ი	ღორ-ებ-ი-ვით	

	** -vith	gror-eb-i		gror-eb-i	gror-eb-i-vith	
	** Like	Pigs			Like pigs	They are behaving like pigs
15	*-ვით	ფოლად-ი ¹		ფოლად-ი	ფოლად-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	polad-i		polad-i	polad-i-vith	
	** As	Steel			As steel	His nerves are as strong as steel
16	*-ვით	მზე ¹	მზე-ს		მზე-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	mze	mze-s		mze-s-a-vith	
	** Like	The sun			Like the sun	Her face shines like the sun
17	*-ვით	ქვა ¹	ქვა-ს		ქვა-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	qva	qva-s		qva-s-a-vith	
	** Like	Stone			Like a stone	The ship crashed to the ground like a stone
18	*-ვით	კაკალ-ი ¹		კაკალ-ი	კაკალ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	kakal-i		kakal-i	kakal-i-vith	
	** As	Nut			As a nut	This shell is solid as a nut
19	*-ვით	ოქრო ¹	ოქრო-ს		ოქრო-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	oqro	oqro-s		oqro-s-a-vith	
	** Like	Gold			Like gold	The domes of the church shine like gold
20	*-ვით	ღვინო ¹	ღვინო-ს		ღვინო-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	grvino	grvino-s		grvino-s-a-vith	
	** Like	Wine			Like wine	This drink is intoxicating like wine
21	*-ვით	მტრედ-ი ¹		მტრედ-ი	მტრედ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	mtred-i		mtred-i	mtred-i-vith	

	*** As	Dove			As a dove	He is as peace-loving as a dove
22	*-ვით	პატიმარ-ი ¹		პატიმარ-ი	პატიმარ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	patimar-i		patimar-i	patimar-i-vith	
	*** Like	Prisoner			Like a prisoner	I felt myself like a prisoner
23	*-ვით	ისარ-ი ¹		ისარ-ი	ისარ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	isar-i		isar-i	isar-i-vith	
	*** Like	Arrow			Like an arrow	Her words cut the heart like an arrow
24	*-ვით	ძაღლ-ი ¹		ძაღლ-ი	ძაღლ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	dzagrl-i		dzagrl-i	dzagrl-i-vith	
	*** Like	Dog			Like a dog	The chief howled like a dog
25	*-ვით	წყალ-ი ¹		წყალ-ი	წყალ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	tzqkal-i		tzqkal-i	tzqkal-i-vith	
	*** Like	Water			Like water	The rain pours like water
26	*-ვით	ჰაერ-ი ¹		ჰაერ-ი	ჰაერ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	haer-i		haer-i	haer-i-vith	
	*** Like	Air			Like air	They need money like air
27	*-ვით	ძმა ¹	ძმა-ს		ძმა-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	dzma	dzma-s		dzma-s-a-vith	
	*** Like	Brother			Like a brother	He treats me like a brother
28	*-ვით	და ¹	და-ს		და-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	da	da-s		da-s-a-vith	
	*** As	Sister			As a sister	She loves him as a sister
29	*-ვით	მტერ-ი ¹		მტერ-ი	მტერ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	mter-i		mter-i	mter-i-vith	

	*** As	Enemy			As an enemy	He behaved as an enemy
30	*-ვით	სტუმარ-ი ¹		სტუმარ-ი	სტუმარ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	stumar-i		stumar-i	stumar-i-vith	
	*** Like	Guest			Like a guest	Do not act like a guest
31	*-ვით	დედა ¹	დედა-ს		დედა-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	deda	deda-s		deda-s-a-vith	
	*** Like	Mother			Like a mother	She looks after them like a mother
32	*-ვით	მამა ¹	მამა-ს		მამა-ს-ა-ვით	
	** -vith	mama	mama-s		mama-s-a-vith	
	*** As	Father			As a father	He cares for them as a father
33	*-ვით	შაქარ-ი ¹		შაქარ-ი	შაქარ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	shaqar-i		shaqar-i	shaqar-i-vith	
	*** Like	Sugar			Like sugar	This dish is sweet like sugar
34	*-ვით	მობუც-ი ¹		მობუც-ი	მობუც-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	mokhuts-i		mokhuts-i	mokhuts-i-vith	
	*** Like	Old man			Like an old man	He looks like an old man.
35	*-ვით	მეგობარ-ი ¹		მეგობარ-ი	მეგობარ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	megobar-i		megobar-i	megobar-i-vith	
	*** Like	Friend			Like a friend	She took care of me like a friend
36	*-ვით	დედოფალ-ი ¹		დედოფალ-ი	დედოფალ-ი-ვით	
	** -vith	dedopal-i		dedopal-i	dedopal-i-vith	
	*** Like	Queen			Like a queen	She looks like a queen
* Phrases and words in Georgian language						

	** English transliteration of Georgian phrases and words
	*** English synonyms of Georgian phrases and words

¹The initial form of the Georgian noun is the word in the nominative case. All Georgian nouns end in vowels. The vowel o is also the ending of the nominative case. Other vowels at the end of the word are parts of the root.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 12 Georgian words are written (groups No. 1, No. 2, No. 4 and No. 5 receive 6 words in the nominative case without postpositions and 6 words in the same case with postpositions; groups No. 3 and No. 6 receive 6 words in the dative case without postpositions and 6 words in the same case with postpositions), as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 125-130, "Supplement to Lesson No. 31" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: each group has a list of 12 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write 2 pairs of words in Georgian - in each pair one word in the required case without a postposition and the same word with a postposition. The combinations of English letters are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson 31	Group No. 1
ბავშვი - ბავშვივით	
გმირი - გმირვით	
გედი - გედივით	
ავადმყოფი - ავადმყოფვით	
მერცხალი - მერცხალვით	
თოვლი - თოვლვით	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-first lesson.

Lesson thirty two

The Georgian words about simple cardinal numbers

The content of the thirty-second lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we should start getting acquainted with the ways of forming those Georgian words that sound numbers. Today we will study the so-called simple cardinal words that sound numbers from 1 to 20 inclusive, as well as 40, 60, 80, 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900, 1000, 1000000, 1000000000 , 1000000000000".

2. "The following grammatical rule should be remembered: in the case of simultaneous declension of nouns and words denoting quantitative numbers, both parts change."

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 32 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with simple cardinal numbers." The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian words shown in the columns 2, 3, 4 and 5 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №32

№	Numeral	Georgian word which voices numeral	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	2	3	4	5
1	1	ერთ-ი ¹	erth-i	One
2	2	ორ-ი ¹	or-i	Two
3	3	სამ-ი ¹	sam-i	Three
4	4	ოთხ-ი ¹	othkh-i	Four
5	5	ხუთ-ი ¹	khuth-i	Five
6	6	ექვს-ი ¹	eqvs-i	Six
7	7	შვიდ-ი ¹	shvid-i	Seven
8	8	რვა ¹	rva	Eight
9	9	ცხრა ¹	tskhra	Nine

10	10	ათ-ი ¹	ath-i	Ten
11	11	თერთმეტი-ი ¹	therthmet-i	Eleven
12	12	თორმეტი-ი ¹	thormet-i	Twelve
13	13	ცამეტი-ი ¹	tsamet-i	Thirteen
14	14	თოთხმეტი-ი ¹	thothkhmet-i	Fourteen
15	15	თხუთმეტი-ი ¹	thkhuthmet-i	Fifteen
16	16	თექვსმეტი-ი ¹	theqvsmet-i	Sixteen
17	17	ჩვიდმეტი-ი ¹	chvidmet-i	Seventeen
18	18	თვრამეტი-ი ¹	thvramet-i	Eighteen
19	19	ცხრამეტი-ი ¹	tskhramet-i	Nineteen
20	20	ოცი-ი ¹	ots-i	Twenty
21	40	ორმოცი-ი ¹	ormots-i	Forty
22	60	სამოცი-ი ¹	samots-i	Sixty
23	80	ოთხმოცი-ი ¹	othkhmots-i	Eighty
24	100	ას-ი ¹	as-i	Hundred
25	200	ორას-ი ¹	oras-i	Two hundred
26	300	სამას-ი ¹	samas-i	Three hundred
27	400	ოთხას-ი ¹	othkhas-i	Four hundred
28	500	ხუთას-ი ¹	khuthas-i	Five hundred
29	600	ექვსას-ი ¹	eqvsas-i	Six hundred
30	700	შვიდას-ი ¹	shvidas-i	Seven hundred
31	800	რვაას-ი ¹	rvaas-i	Eight hundred
32	900	ცხრაას-ი ¹	tskhraas-i	Nine hundred
33	1000	ათას-ი ¹	athas-i	Thousand

34	1000000	მილიონ-ი ¹	milion-i	Million
35	1000000000	მილიარდ-ი ¹	miliard-i	Billion
36	1000000000000	ტრილიონ-ი ¹	trilion-i	Trillion

¹ The vowel ending o (i) is also the ending of the nominative case.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 131-133, "Supplement to Lesson No. 32" on three pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 32
	ერთი
	ორი
	სამი
	ოთხი
	ხუთი
	ექვსი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-second lesson.

Lesson thirty three

The Georgian words about multiplicity

The content of the thirty-third lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Today our lesson will be a continuation of the previous one, because we will need the words learned then to get acquainted with Georgian words expressing the multiplicity of this or that event or action.”

2. “Multiplicity in the Georgian language is expressed by adding the suffix -ჯერ (-jer) to words denoting quantitative numbers. For example, let's take the already familiar Georgian word ორ-ი (or-i), the English synonym for which is the word "two". In order to say “twice” in Georgian, you need to do the following: from the word ორ-ი (or-i) we remove the vowel ending -ი (-i) and write the suffix -ჯერ (-jer) together. Therefore, we will get the Georgian word we need ორ-ჯერ (or-jer)”.

3. “An exception to the general rule is the case when you need to say “once” in Georgian: we take the already familiar Georgian word ერთ-ი (ert-i), the English synonym for which is the word “one” and delete the vowel ending -ი (-i). After that, we write the suffix -ხელ (-khel) together and get the Georgian word we need ერთ-ხელ (ert-khel)”.

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 33 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with Georgian words that express multiplicity. For comparison, the table re-presents the Georgian words that we have already learned in the previous lesson. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №33

№	Georgian words that sound quantitative numbers	Georgian words expressing multiplicity
1	2	3
1	*ერთ-ი	ერთ- ¹ ხელ
	** erth-i	erth-khel
	*** One	Once
2	*ორ-ი	ორ- ¹ ჯერ
	** or-i	or-jer

	*** Two	Twice
3	*სამ-ო	სამ- ¹ ჯერ
	** sam-i	sam- <i>jer</i>
	*** Three	Three times
4	*ოთხ-ო	ოთხ- ¹ ჯერ
	** othkh-i	othkh- <i>jer</i>
	*** Four	Four times
5	*ხუთ-ო	ხუთ- ¹ ჯერ
	** khuth-i	khuth- <i>jer</i>
	*** Five	Five times
6	*ექვს-ო	ექვს- ¹ ჯერ
	** eqvs-i	eqvs- <i>jer</i>
	*** Six	Six times
7	*შვიდ-ო	შვიდ- ¹ ჯერ
	** shvid-i	shvid- <i>jer</i>
	*** Seven	Seven times
8	*რვა	რვა- <i>ჯერ</i>
	** rva	rva- <i>jer</i>
	*** Eight	Eight times
9	*ცხრა	ცხრა- <i>ჯერ</i>
	** tskhra	tskhra- <i>jer</i>
	*** Nine	Nine times
10	*ათ-ო	ათ- ¹ ჯერ
	** ath-i	ath- <i>jer</i>
	*** Ten	Ten times
	*თერთმეტი-ო	თერთმეტი- ¹ ჯერ

11	** therthmet-i	therthmet-jer
	*** Eleven	Eleven times
12	*თორმეტ-ი	თორმეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** thormet-i	thormet-jer
	*** Twelve	Twelve times
13	*ცამეტ-ი	ცამეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** tsamet-i	tsamet-jer
	*** Thirteen	Thirteen times
14	*თოთხმეტ-ი	თოთხმეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** thothkhmet-i	thothkhmet-jer
	*** Fourteen	Fourteen times
15	*თხუთმეტ-ი	თხუთმეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** thkhuthmet-i	thkhuthmet-jer
	*** Fifteen	Fifteen times
16	*თექვსმეტ-ი	თექვსმეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** theqvsmet-i	theqvsmet-jer
	*** Sixteen	Sixteen times
17	*ჩვიდმეტ-ი	ჩვიდმეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** chvidmet-i	chvidmet-jer
	*** Seventeen	Seventeen times
18	*თვრამეტ-ი	თვრამეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** thvramet-i	thvramet-jer
	*** Eighteen	Eighteen times
19	*ცხრამეტ-ი	ცხრამეტ- ¹ ჯერ
	** tskhramet-i	tskhramet-jer
	*** Nineteen	Nineteen times

20	*ოც-ი	ოც- ¹ ჯერ
	** ots-i	ots- ¹ jer
	*** Twenty	Twenty times
21	*ორმოც-ი	ორმოც- ¹ ჯერ
	** ormots-i	ormots- ¹ jer
	*** Forty	Forty times
22	*სამოც-ი	სამოც- ¹ ჯერ
	** samots-i	samots- ¹ jer
	*** Sixty	Sixty times
23	*ოთხმოც-ი	ოთხმოც- ¹ ჯერ
	** othkhmots-i	othkhmots- ¹ jer
	*** Eighty	Eighty times
24	*ას-ი	ას- ¹ ჯერ
	** as-i	as- ¹ jer
	*** Hundred	Hundred times
25	*ორას-ი	ორას- ¹ ჯერ
	** oras-i	oras- ¹ jer
	*** Two hundred	Two hundred times
26	*სამას-ი	სამას- ¹ ჯერ
	** samas-i	samas- ¹ jer
	*** Three hundred	Three hundred times
27	*ოთხას-ი	ოთხას- ¹ ჯერ
	** othkhas-i	othkhas- ¹ jer
	*** Four hundred	Four hundred times
28	*ხუთას-ი	ხუთას- ¹ ჯერ
	** khuthas-i	khuthas- ¹ jer

	*** Five hundred	Five hundred times
29	*ექვსას-ი	ექვსას- ¹ ჯერ
	** eqvsas-i	eqvsas- ¹ jer
	*** Six hundred	Six hundred times
30	*შვიდას-ი	შვიდას- ¹ ჯერ
	** shvidas-i	shvidas- ¹ jer
	*** Seven hundred	Seven hundred times
31	*რვაას-ი	რვაას- ¹ ჯერ
	** rvaas-i	rvaas- ¹ jer
	*** Eight hundred	Eight hundred times
32	*ცხრაას-ი	ცხრაას- ¹ ჯერ
	** tskhraas-i	tskhraas- ¹ jer
	*** Nine hundred	Nine hundred times
33	*ათას-ი	ათას- ¹ ჯერ
	** athas-i	athas- ¹ jer
	*** Thousand	Thousand times
34	*მილიონ-ი	მილიონ- ¹ ჯერ
	** milion-i	milion- ¹ jer
	*** Million	Million times
35	*მილიარდ-ი	მილიარდ- ¹ ჯერ
	** miliard-i	miliard- ¹ jer
	*** Billion	Billion times
36	*ტრილიონ-ი	ტრილიონ- ¹ ჯერ
	** trillion-i	trillion- ¹ jer
	*** Trillion	Trillion times
	* Words in Georgian language	

	** English transliteration of Georgian words
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words

¹ The vowel ending o (i) is removed.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 134-136, "Supplement to lesson No. 33 on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 33
	ერთხელ
	ორჯერ
	სამჯერ
	ოთხჯერ
	ხუთჯერ
	ექვსჯერ

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-third lesson.

Lesson thirty four

The Georgian words about simple ordinal numbers

The content of the thirty-fourth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Today we continue our acquaintance with Georgian words that sound numbers. In particular, we will get acquainted with the ways of forming words that denote ordinal numbers. I’ll say right away that for this we need to remember those simple cardinal numerals that we learned in the course of lesson No. 32”.

2. “Georgian ordinal numbers are formed by adding the prefix მჟ- (me-) and the suffix -ე (-e) to cardinal numbers. At the same time, these words lose the final vowel ი (i). For example, we take the already familiar Georgian word ორ-ი (or-i), the English synonym of which is the word “two”. In order to say “second” in Georgian, the following work must be done: from the word ორ-ი (or-i) we remove the vowel ending -ი (-i) and instead of it we write the suffix -ე (-e); in addition, we write the prefix მჟ- (me-) together and get the word we need “მჟ-ორ-ე” (“me-or-e”).

3. “As we already know, there are no rules without exceptions. This concerns the Georgian word, the English synonym of which is the word "first". In this case, we should remember that such a Georgian synonym is the word "პირველი" ("pirveli").

4. “The following grammatical rule should be remembered: with simultaneous declension of words voicing ordinal numbers and nouns, only nouns change [this rule does not apply to the word “პირველი” (“pirveli”), which is declined together with the noun]”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 34 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted with Georgian words that sound ordinal numbers. For clarity, the table again shows those simple quantitative numerators that we met during the penultimate lesson. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №34

№	Georgian words that sound quantitative numbers	Georgian words that sound ordinal numbers
1	2	3
1	*ერთ-ი	პირველ-ი
	** erth-i	pirvel-i

	*** One	The first
2	*որ-օ	մը-որ ¹ -ը
	** or-i	me-or-e
	*** Two	The second
3	*սամ-օ	մը-սամ ¹ -ը
	** sam-i	me-sam-e
	*** Three	The third
4	*օտե-օ	մը-օտե ¹ -ը
	** othkh-i	me-othkh-e
	*** Four	The fourth
5	*խոտ-օ	մը-խոտ ¹ -ը
	** khuth-i	me-khuth-e
	*** Five	The fifth
6	*եղև-օ	մը-եղև ¹ -ը
	** eqvs-i	me-eqvs-e
	*** Six	The sixth
7	*մջու-օ	մը-մջու ¹ -ը
	** shvid-i	me-shvid-e
	*** Seven	The seventh
8	*րՅա	մը-րՅ ² -ը
	** rva	me-rv-e
	*** Eight	The eighth
9	*Յերա	մը-Յեր ² -ը
	** tskhra	me-tskhr-e
	*** Nine	The ninth
	*սօ-օ	մը-սօ ¹ -ը

10	** ath-i	me-ath-e
	*** Ten	The tenth
11	*თერთმეტ-ი	მე-თერთმეტ ¹ -ე
	** thertmet-i	me-thertmet-e
	*** Eleven	The eleventh
12	*თორმეტ-ი	მე-თორმეტ ¹ -ე
	** thormet-i	me-thormet-e
	*** Twelve	The twelfth
13	*ცამეტ-ი	მე-ცამეტ ¹ -ე
	** tsamet-i	me-tsamet-e
	*** Thirteen	The thirteenth
14	*თოთხმეტ-ი	მე-თოთხმეტ ¹ -ე
	** thothkhmet-i	me-thothkhmet-e
	*** Fourteen	The fourteenth
15	*თხუთმეტ-ი	მე-თხუთმეტ ¹ -ე
	** thkhuthmet-i	me-thkhuthmet-e
	*** Fifteen	The fifteenth
16	*თექვსმეტ-ი	მე-თექვსმეტ ¹ -ე
	** theqvsmet-i	me-theqvsmet-e
	*** Sixteen	The sixteenth
17	*ჩვიდმეტ-ი	მე-ჩვიდმეტ ¹ -ე
	** chvidmet-i	me-chvidmet-e
	*** Seventeen	The seventeenth
18	*თვრამეტ-ი	მე-თვრამეტ ¹ -ე
	** thvramet-i	me-thvramet-e
	*** Eighteen	The eighteenth

19	*ցեբրամեժ-օ	մե-ցեբրամեժ ¹ -ը
	** tskhramet-i	me-tskhramet-e
	*** Nineteen	The nineteenth
20	*ոց-օ	մե-ոց ¹ -ը
	** ots-i	me-ots-e
	*** Twenty	The twentieth
21	*օրմոց-օ	մե-օրմոց ¹ -ը
	** ormots-i	me-ormots-e
	*** Forty	The fortieth
22	*ճամոց-օ	մե-ճամոց ¹ -ը
	** samots-i	me-samots-e
	*** Sixty	The sixtieth
23	*օտեմոց-օ	մե-օտեմոց ¹ -ը
	** othkhmots-i	me-othkhmots-e
	*** Eighty	The eightieth
24	*ձս-օ	մե-ձս ¹ -ը
	** as-i	me-as-e
	*** Hundred	The hundredth
25	*օրաս-օ	մե-օրաս ¹ -ը
	** oras-i	me-oras-e
	*** Two hundred	The two hundredth
26	*ճամս-օ	մե-ճամս ¹ -ը
	** samas-i	me-samas-e
	*** Three hundred	The three hundredth
27	*օտեխս-օ	մե-օտեխս ¹ -ը
	** othkhas-i	me-othkhas-e

	*** Four hundred	The four hundredth
28	*ხუთას-ი	მე-ხუთას ¹ -ე
	** khuthas-i	me-khuthas-e
	*** Five hundred	The five hundredth
29	*ექვსას-ი	მე-ექვსას ¹ -ე
	** eqvsas-i	me-eqvsas-e
	*** Six hundred	The six hundredth
30	*შვიდას-ი	მე-შვიდას ¹ -ე
	** shvidas-i	me-shvidas-e
	*** Seven hundred	The seven hundredth
31	*რვაას-ი	მე-რვაას ¹ -ე
	** rvaas-i	me-rvaas-e
	*** Eight hundred	The eight hundredth
32	*ცხრაას-ი	მე-ცხრაას ¹ -ე
	** tskhraas-i	me-tskhraas-e
	*** Nine hundred	The nine hundredth
33	*ათას-ი	მე-ათას ¹ -ე
	** athas-i	me-athas-e
	*** Thousand	The thousandth
34	*მილიონ-ი	მე-მილიონ ¹ -ე
	** milion-i	me-milion-e
	*** Million	The millionth
35	*მილიარდ-ი	მე-მილიარდ ¹ -ე
	** miliard-i	me-miliard-e
	*** Billion	The billionth
	*ტრილიონ-ი	მე-ტრილიონ ¹ -ე

36	** trillion-i	me-trillion-e
	*** Trillion	The trillionth
	* Words in Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words	

¹ The vowel ending *o* (*i*) is removed.

² The vowel ending *ა* (*a*) is removed.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 137-139, "Supplement to lesson No. 34 on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Lesson No. 34	Group No. 1
	პირველი
	მეორე
	მესამე
	მეოთხე
	მეხუთე
	მეექვსე

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-fourth lesson.

Lesson thirty five

The Georgian words about multiplicity

The content of the thirty-fifth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "This lesson will be a kind of continuation of the penultimate lesson, when we got acquainted with Georgian words expressing the multiplicity of events or actions. Then we learned such words on the basis of words that sound quantitative numbers. Today we will learn similar words, but with the help of those Georgian words that sound ordinal numbers. We learned these words during the previous lesson".

2. "We already know how to say "twice" in Georgian. It's time to find out how the words "For the second time" sound in Georgian. To do this, we must remember the already familiar Georgian word "მეორე" ("meore"), which in English means "second". At the end of the word "მეორე" ("meore"), we should add the consonant letter "დ" ("d") and we will get the word we need "მეორე-დ" ("meore-d"). There is another way to express the words "For the second time" in Georgian. To do this, you need to use the word "მეორე" ("meore") again and add the already familiar suffix -ჯერ (-jer) at the end. Let's get the word we need "მეორე-ჯერ" ("meore-jer"). Thus, it turns out that the Georgian words "მეორე-დ" ("meore-d") and "მეორე-ჯერ" ("meore-jer") have the same synonym in English - "For the second time".

3. "An exception to the general rule is the case when you need to say "For the first time" in Georgian: we take the already familiar Georgian word "პირველი" ("pirveli"), the English synonym of which is the word "first", and delete the vowel ending -ო (-i). After that, we write together the letter combination "ად" ("ad") and get the Georgian word we need "პირველ-ად" ("pirvel-ad").

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 35 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with Georgian words expressing multiplicity (the table shows variants of words with the ending -დ). For comparison, the table re-presents the Georgian words that we already learned in the previous lesson." The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №35

№	Georgian words that sound ordinal numbers	Georgian words expressing multiplicity
1	2	3
	პირველ-ი	პირველ-ად

1	πirveli	πirvel-ad
	The first	For the first time
2	მეორე	მეორე-დ
	meore	meore-d
	The second	For the second time
3	მესამე	მესამე-დ
	mesame	mesame-d
	The third	For the third time
4	მეოთხე	მეოთხე-დ
	meothkhe	meothkhe-d
	The fourth	For the fourth time
5	მეხუთე	მეხუთე-დ
	mekhuthe	mekhuthe-d
	The fifth	For the fifth time
6	მეექვსე	მეექვსე-დ
	meeqvse	meeqvse-d
	The sixth	For the sixth time
7	მეშვიდე	მეშვიდე-დ
	meshvide	meshvide-d
	The seventh	For the seventh time
8	მერვე	მერვე-დ
	merve	merve-d
	The eighth	For the eighth time
9	მეცხრე	მეცხრე-დ
	metskhre	metskhre-d
	The ninth	For the ninth time

10	მეათე	მეათე-დ
	meathe	meathe-d
	The tenth	For the tenth time
11	მეთერთმეტე	მეთერთმეტე-დ
	methertmetete	methertmetete-d
	The eleventh	For the eleventh time
12	მეთორმეტე	მეთორმეტე-დ
	methormete	methormete-d
	The twelfth	For the twelfth time
13	მეცამეტე	მეცამეტე-დ
	metsamete	metsamete-d
	The thirteenth	For the thirteenth time
14	მეთოთხმეტე	მეთოთხმეტე-დ
	methothkhmete	methothkhmete-d
	The fourteenth	For the fourteenth time
15	მეთხუთმეტე	მეთხუთმეტე-დ
	methkhuthmete	methkhuthmete-d
	The fifteenth	For the fifteenth time
16	მეთექვსმეტე	მეთექვსმეტე-დ
	metheqvsmete	metheqvsmete-d
	The sixteenth	For the sixteenth time
17	მეჩვიდმეტე	მეჩვიდმეტე-დ
	mechvidmete	mechvidmete-d
	The seventeenth	For the seventeenth time
18	მეთვრამეტე	მეთვრამეტე-დ
	methvramete	methvramete-d

	The eighteenth	For the eighteenth time
19	მეცხრამეტე	მეცხრამეტე-დ
	metskhramete	metskhramete-d
	The nineteenth	For the nineteenth time
20	მეოცე	მეოცე-დ
	meotse	meotse-d
	The twentieth	For the twentieth time
21	მეორმოცე	მეორმოცე-დ
	meormotse	meormotse-d
	The fortieth	For the fortieth time
22	მესამოცე	მესამოცე-დ
	mesamotse	mesamotse-d
	The sixtieth	For the sixtieth time
23	მეოთხმოცე	მეოთხმოცე-დ
	meothkhmotse	meothkhmotse-d
	The eightieth	For the eightieth time
24	მეასე	მეასე-დ
	mease	mease-d
	The hundredth	For the hundredth time
25	მეორასე	მეორასე-დ
	meorase	meorase-d
	The two hundredth	For the two hundredth time
26	მესამასე	მესამასე-დ
	mesamase	mesamase-d
	The three hundredth	For the three hundredth time
	მეოთხასე	მეოთხასე-დ

27	meothkhase	meothkhase-d
	The four hundredth	For the four hundredth time
28	მეხუთასე	მეხუთასე-დ
	mekhuthase	mekhuthase-d
	The five hundredth	For the five hundredth time
29	მეექვსასე	მეექვსასე-დ
	meeqvsase	meeqvsase-d
	The six hundredth	For the six hundredth time
30	მეშვიდასე	მეშვიდასე-დ
	meshvidase	meshvidase-d
	The seven hundredth	For the seven hundredth time
31	მერვაასე	მერვაასე-დ
	mervaase	mervaase-d
	The eight hundredth	For the eight hundredth time
32	მეცხრაასე	მეცხრაასე-დ
	metskhraase	metskhraase-d
	The nine hundredth	For the nine hundredth time
33	მეათასე	მეათასე-დ
	meathase	meathase-d
	The thousandth	For the thousandth time
34	მემილიონე	მემილიონე-დ
	memilione	memilione-d
	The millionth	For the millionth time
35	მემილიარდე	მემილიარდე-დ
	memiliarde	memiliarde-d
	The billionth	For the billionth time

36	მეტრილიონე	მეტრილიონე-დ
	metriline	metriline-d
	The trillionth	For the trillionth time
	* Words in Georgian language	
	** English transliteration of Georgian words	
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words	

¹ The vowel ending o (i) is removed.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 140-142, "Supplement to lesson No. 35 on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 35
	პირველად
	მეორედ
	მესამედ
	მეოთხედ
	მეხუთედ
	მეექვსედ

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-fifth lesson.

Lesson thirty six

The Georgian words about fractional parts

The content of the thirty-sixth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Our stock of Georgian words about numbers would be incomplete if we didn’t get acquainted with the words that sound fractional parts of the whole. To do this, we will need exactly those words that we learned in the course of the previous lesson (they act as base words). For example, we know the English word "the third part" and want to learn the Georgian synonym for this word. To do this, we must recall the Georgian word already known to us “მესამედ” (“mesamed”), the English synonym of which is the word “For the third time”. If we add the vowel “-ო” (“-i”) to the word “მესამედ” (“mesamed”) at the end, then we get the Georgian word we need - “მესამედ-ო” (“mesamed-i”). Another example: the Georgian synonym for the English word “the tenth part” is formed in a similar way - we recall the already familiar word “მეათედ” (“meathed”) and at the end we add the vowel “-ო” (“-i”). We get the desired Georgian word "მეათედ-ო" ("meathed-i"). The third example: the Georgian synonym for the English word “the hundredth part” is formed in a similar way - we recall the already familiar word “მეასედ” (“meased”) and add the vowel “-ო” (“-i”) at the end. We get the desired Georgian word “მეასედ-ო” (“meased-i”).”

2. “It is necessary to pay attention and remember more complex expressions that sound fractional parts of the whole. For example, we know the English expression "two thirds" and we want to learn a synonym for this expression in the Georgian language. To do this, we must recall the Georgian word already known to us “მესამედი” (“mesamedi”), the English synonym of which is the word “the third part”, and put before it the word already known to us “ორი” (“ori”). We get the Georgian expression we need "ორი მესამედი" ("ori mesamedi"). Another example: the Georgian synonym for the English expression “Seven tenths” is formed in a similar way - we recall the already familiar word “მეათედი” (“meathedi”), the English synonym for which is the word “the tenth part”, and we put in front of it the already known word “შვიდი” ("shvidi"). We get the Georgian expression we need "შვიდი მეათედი" ("shvidi meathedi"). The third example: the Georgian synonym for the English expression “two hundredths” is formed in a similar way - we recall the already familiar word “მეასედი” (“measedi”), the English synonym for which is the word “the hundredth part”, and we put in front of it the already known word “ორი" (ori). Let's get the Georgian expression we need "ორი მეასედი" ("ori maasedi").”

3. “One should remember the case when we need to say in Georgian “Whole”. In this case, we should not use the already familiar word "პირველად" ("pirvelad"), the English synonym of which is "For the first time." The Georgian synonym for the English words “Whole” is the word “მთელი” (“mtheli”). As for the word “პირველად” (“pirvelad”), by adding the vowel “-ო” (“-i”) to it, we can get the word “პირველად-ო” (“pirvelad-i”), the English synonyms of which are the words “Primary”.

4. “There is a special case when we need to say “Half” in Georgian. We can use the already familiar word “მეორედ” (“meored”) and by adding the vowel “ო” (“i”) to it, get the Georgian word we need - “მეორედ-ო” (“meored-i”). However, in the Georgian language there is a more accurate correspondence to the English word “Half” and this synonym is the word “ნახევარი” (“nakhevari”).”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 36 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with the Georgian words expressing fractional parts [in the table, place number 1 is given to the word "პირველად-ი" ("pirvelad-i"), and places numbers 2 and 3 are given to two Georgian synonyms of the English word "Half »]. For comparison, the table re-presents the Georgian basic words that we have already learned in the previous lesson." The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 2 and 3 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №36

№	Georgian words expressing multiplicity	Georgian words expressing the fractional parts
1	2	3
1	პირველად	პირველად-ი
	pirvelad	pirvelad-i
	For the first time	Primary
2	მეორედ	მეორედ-ი
	meored	meored-i
	For the second time	The second part
3	მეორედ-ი	ნახევარ-ი
	meored-i	nakhevar-i
	The second part	Half
4	მესამედ	მესამედ-ი
	mesamed	mesamed-i
	For the third time	The third part (Third)
5	მეოთხედ	მეოთხედ-ი
	meothkhed	meothkhed-i
	For the fourth time	The fourth part (Quarter)

6	მეხუთედ	მეხუთედ-ი
	mekhuthed	mekhuthed-i
	For the fifth time	The fifth part
7	მეექვსედ	მეექვსედ-ი
	meeqvsed	meeqvsed-i
	For the sixth time	The sixth part
8	მეშვიდედ	მეშვიდედ-ი
	meshvided	meshvided-i
	For the seventh time	The seventh part
9	მერვედ	მერვედ-ი
	merved	merved-i
	For the eighth time	The eighth part
10	მეცხრედ	მეცხრედ-ი
	metskhred	metskhred-i
	For the ninth time	The ninth part
11	მეათედ	მეათედ-ი
	meathed	meathed-i
	For the tenth time	The tenth part
12	მეთერთმეტედ	მეთერთმეტედ-ი
	methethmeted	methethmeted-i
	For the eleventh time	The eleventh part
13	მეთორმეტედ	მეთორმეტედ-ი
	methormeted	methormeted-i
	For the twelfth time	The twelfth part
14	მეცამეტედ	მეცამეტედ-ი
	metsameted	metsameted-i

	For the thirteenth time	The thirteenth part
15	მეთოთხმეტედ	მეთოთხმეტედ-ი
	methothkhmeted	methothkhmeted-i
	For the fourteenth time	The fourteenth part
16	მეთხუთმეტედ	მეთხუთმეტედ-ი
	methkhuthmeted	methkhuthmeted-i
	For the fifteenth time	The fifteenth part
17	მეთექვსმეტედ	მეთექვსმეტედ-ი
	metheqvsmeted	metheqvsmeted-i
	For the sixteenth time	The sixteenth part
18	მეჩვიდმეტედ	მეჩვიდმეტედ-ი
	mechvidmeted	mechvidmeted-i
	For the seventeenth time	The seventeenth part
19	მეთვრამეტედ	მეთვრამეტედ-ი
	methvrameted	methvrameted-i
	For the eighteenth time	The eighteenth part
20	მეცხრამეტედ	მეცხრამეტედ-ი
	metskhrameted	metskhrameted-i
	For the nineteenth time	The nineteenth part
21	მეოცედ	მეოცედ-ი
	meotsed	meotsed-i
	For the twentieth time	The twentieth part
22	მეორმოცედ	მეორმოცედ-ი
	meormotsed	meormotsed-i
	For the fortieth time	The fortieth part
	მესამოცედ	მესამოცედ-ი

23	mesamotsed	mesamotsed-i
	For the sixtieth time	The sixtieth part
	მეთოთხმცედ	მეთოთხმცედ-ი
24	meothkkmotsed	meothkkmotsed-i
	For the eightieth time	The eightieth part
	მეასედ	მეასედ-ი
25	meased	meased-i
	For the hundredth time	The hundredth Part
	მეორასედ	მეორასედ-ი
26	meorased	meorased-i
	For the two hundredth time	The two hundredth part
	მესამასედ	მესამასედ-ი
27	mesamased	mesamased-i
	For the three hundredth time	The three hundredth part
	მეთოთხასედ	მეთოთხასედ-ი
28	meothkhased	meothkhased-i
	For the four hundredth time	The four hundredth part
	მეხუთასედ	მეხუთასედ-ი
29	mekhthased	mekhthased-i
	For the five hundredth time	The five hundredth part
	მექვსასედ	მექვსასედ-ი
30	meeqvsased	meeqvsased-i
	For the six hundredth time	The six hundredth part
	მეშვიდასედ	მეშვიდასედ-ი
31	meshvidased	meshvidased-i
	For the seven hundredth time	The seven hundredth part

32	მერვაასედ	მერვაასედ-ი
	mervaaased	mervaaased-i
	For the eight hundredth time	The eight hundredth part
33	მეცხრაასედ	მეცხრაასედ-ი
	metskhraased	metskhraased-i
	For the nine hundredth time	The ninth hundredth part
34	მეათასედ	მეათასედ-ი
	meathased	meathased-i
	For the thousandth time	The thousandth part
35	მემილიონედ	მემილიონედ-ი
	memilioned	memilioned-i
	For the millionth time	The millionth part
36	მემილიარდედ	მემილიარდედ-ი
	memiliarded	memiliarded-i
	For the billionth time	The billionth part
* Words in Georgian language		
** English transliteration of Georgian words		
*** English synonyms of Georgian words		

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 143-145, "Supplement to lesson No. 36 on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these three pages and with the help of scissors prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 36
	პირველადი
	მეორედი
	ნახევარი
	მესამედი
	მეოთხედი
	მეხუთედი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-sixth lesson.

Lesson thirty seven

The Georgian words about compound cardinal numbers

Contents of the thirty-seventh lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “In the course of lesson #32, we got acquainted with 36 words that sound the most frequently pronounced numbers. Today we will get acquainted with the so-called compound quantitative words. They are called compound because these words consist of two or more numeral words. For example, we know that the English word “twenty” corresponds to the Georgian word “ოცი” (“otsi”) and the English word “one” corresponds to the Georgian word “ერთი” (“erthi”). To form a Georgian synonym for the English word "twenty-one", the following work must be done: from the Georgian word "ოცი" ("otsi"), we remove the vowel ending "ი" ("i") and instead put the letter combination "და" ("da"), and after that we add the Georgian word "ერთი" ("erthi") to the phrase "ოცდა" ("otsda"). Thus, we get the desired Georgian compound quantitative word - "ოცდაერთი" ("otsdaerthi"). This word - "ოც-და-ერთი" ("ots-da-erthi") - is literally translated from Georgian into English as "twenty and one". Georgian words are formed in a similar way, voicing numbers from 22 to 39 inclusive [to the Georgian word "ოცდა" ("otsda"), the familiar Georgian words "ორი", "სამი", "ოთხი", "ხუთი", "ექვსი", "შვიდი", "რვა", "ცხრა", "ათი", "თერთმეტი", "თორმეტი", "ცამეტი", "თოთხმეტი", "თხუთმეტი", "თექვსმეტი", "ჩვიდმეტი", "თვრამეტი", "ცხრამეტი" are successively added using the letter combination "და" ("da")].

2. “Let's take another case: we know that the English word “forty” corresponds to the Georgian word “ორმოცი” (“ormotsi”). To form a Georgian synonym for the English word “forty-one”, the following work must be done: from the Georgian word “ორმოცი” (“ormotsi”), we remove the vowel ending “ი” (“i”) and instead put the letter combination “და” (“da”), and after that, to the phrase "ორმოცდა" ("ormotsda"), we simultaneously add the Georgian word "ერთი" ("erthi"). Thus, we get the desired Georgian compound quantitative word - "ორმოცდაერთი" ("ormotsdaerthi"). This word - "ორმოც-და-ერთი" ("ormots-da-erthi") - is literally translated from Georgian into English as "forty and one". Georgian words are formed in a similar way, voicing numbers from 42 to 59 inclusive [to the Georgian word "ორმოცდა" ("ormotsda"), the familiar Georgian words "ორი", "სამი", "ოთხი", "ხუთი", "ექვსი", "შვიდი", "რვა", "ცხრა", "ათი", "თერთმეტი", "თორმეტი", "ცამეტი", "თოთხმეტი", "თხუთმეტი", "თექვსმეტი", "ჩვიდმეტი", "თვრამეტი", "ცხრამეტი" are successively added using the letter combination "და" ("da")].

3. “Let's consider the third case: we know that the English word “sixty” corresponds to the Georgian word “სამოცი” (“samotsi”). To form a Georgian synonym for the English word “sixty-one”, the following work must be done: from the Georgian word “სამოცი” (“samotsi”), we remove the vowel ending “ი” (“i”) and instead put the letter combination “და” (“da”), and after that, to the phrase "სამოცდა" ("samotsda"), we simultaneously add the Georgian word "ერთი" ("erthi"). Thus, we get the desired Georgian compound quantitative word - "სამოცდაერთი" ("samotsdaerthi"). This word - "სამოც-და-ერთი" ("samots-da-erthi") - is literally translated from Georgian into English as "sixty and one". Georgian words are formed in a similar way, voicing numbers from 61 to 79 inclusive [to the Georgian word "სამოცდა" ("samotsda"), the familiar Georgian words "ორი", "სამი", "ოთხი", "ხუთი", "ექვსი", "შვიდი", "რვა", "ცხრა", "ათი", "თერთმეტი", "თორმეტი", "ცამეტი", "თოთხმეტი", "თხუთმეტი", "თექვსმეტი", "ჩვიდმეტი", "თვრამეტი", "ცხრამეტი" are successively added using the letter combination "და" ("da")].

4. "Let's consider one more case: we know that the English word "eighty" corresponds to the Georgian word "ოთხმოცი" ("othkhmotsi"). To form a Georgian synonym for the English word "eighty-one", the following work must be done: from the Georgian word "ოთხმოცი" ("othkhmotsi"), we remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i") and instead put the letter combination "და" ("da"), and after that, to the phrase "ოთხმოცდა" ("othkhmotsda") we simultaneously add the Georgian word "ერთი" ("erthi"). Thus, we get the desired Georgian compound quantitative word - "ოთხმოცდაერთი" ("othkhmotsdaerthi"). This word - "ოთხმოც-და-ერთი" ("othkhmots-da-erti") - is literally translated from Georgian into English as "eighty and one". Georgian words are formed in a similar way, voicing numbers from 81 to 99 inclusive [to the Georgian word "ოთხმოცდა" ("othkhmotsda"), the familiar Georgian words "ორი", "სამი", "ოთხი", "ხუთი", "ექვსი", "შვიდი", "რვა", "ცხრა", "ათი", "თერთმეტი", "თორმეტი", "ცამეტი", "თოთხმეტი", "თხუთმეტი", "თექვსმეტი", "ჩვიდმეტი", "თვრამეტი", "ცხრამეტი" are successively added using the letter combination "და" ("da")].

5. "The following grammatical rule should be remembered: words that sound numerals from 1 to 99 inclusive and numerals from 100 to 1000 are written together. Other words voicing the rest of the numerals are written separately".

6. "Let's consider an example of the formation of Georgian words that sound three-digit numbers. For example, consider the number 101. This number can be voiced in Georgian as follows: we should recall the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 100 and 1. These words are, respectively, "ასი" ("asi") and "ერთი" ("erthi"). In order to say "One hundred and one" in Georgian, you should do a simple job: from the word "ასი" ("asi"), remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i") and next (not together) put the word "ერთი" ("erthi"). We get the word we need "ას ერთი" ("as erthi"). Georgian words are formed in a similar way, voicing the numbers from 102 to 199 inclusive, as well as the numbers 201-299, 301-399, 401-499, 501-599, 601-699, 701-799, 801-899, 901-999".

7. "Let's also consider several examples of the formation of Georgian words that sound four-digit numbers. For example, consider the number 1001. This number can be voiced in Georgian as follows: we should recall the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 1000 and 1. These words are respectively "ათასი" ("athasi") and "ერთი" ("erthi"). In order to say "Thousand and One" in Georgian, you should do a simple job: from the word "ათასი" ("athasi"), remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i") and next (not together) put the word "ერთი" ("erthi"). We get the word we need "ათას ერთი" ("athas erthi"). Georgian words are formed in a similar way, voicing the numbers from 1002 to 1100 inclusive, as well as the numbers 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800 and 1900".

8. "Consider the case of another four-digit number. For example, consider the number 1101. This number can be voiced in Georgian as follows: we should remember the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 1000, 100 and 1. These words are, respectively, "ათასი" ("athasi"), "ასი" ("asi") and "ერთი" ("erthi"). In order to say "One thousand one hundred and one" in Georgian, one should do a simple job: from the words "ათასი" ("athasi") and "ასი" ("asi"), we remove the vowel endings "ო" ("i") and next (not together) put the word "ერთი" ("erthi"). We get the desired combination of adjacent words "ათას ას ერთი" ("athas as erthi"). Similarly, Georgian words are formed, voicing numbers from 1102 to 1199 inclusive, as well as numbers 1201-1299, 1301-1399, 1401-1499, 1501-1599, 1601-1699, 1701-1799, 1801-1899 and 1901-1999".

9. "Methods of forming Georgian words that sound larger numbers are similar and resemble the examples discussed above."

10. "Once again, let us recall an important Georgian grammatical rule: with the simultaneous decline of quantitative numerators and nouns, both parts of the sentence change."

11. "During the 33rd lesson, we learned how to express multiplicity based on 36 simple quantitative words. Recall that if we remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i") from the word "ორი" ("ori") and, instead of it, put the letter combination "ჯერ" ("jer"), then we get the necessary and familiar word "ორჯერ" ("orjer"), the English synonym of which is the word "two times". In the same way, we will be able to convert the composite quantitative number "ოცდაორი" ("otsdaori"), the English synonym for which is the word "twenty-two". From the word "ოცდაორი" ("otsdaori") we remove the vowel ending "ი" ("i") and, instead of it, put the letter combination "ჯერ" ("jer"). We get the desired word "ოცდაორჯერ" ("otsdaorjer"), the English synonym for which is the word "twenty-two times".

12. "If we are dealing with a combination of Georgian words for voicing three-digit and four-digit numbers [for example, "სამას თოთხმეტი" ("samass thothkhameti" = "Three hundred and fourteen") or "სამი ათას თხუთმეტი" ("sami athas thkhuthmeti" = "Three thousand and fifteen")], then in this case the suffix "ჯერ" ("jer") is added together to the closing word [for example, "სამას თოთხმეტჯერ" ("samass thothkhametjer" = "Three hundred and fourteen times") or "სამი ათას თხუთმეტჯერ" ("sami athas thkhuthmetjer" = "Three thousand and fifteen times")].

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 37 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with 36 words that sound composite quantitative numbers. Dashes are only used to show the constituent parts of words". The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian words shown in the 2nd column of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №37

Numeral	Words that sound composite quantitative numbers
1	2
21	* ოც-და-ერთ-ი ¹
	** ots-da-erth-i
	*** Twenty one
29	* ოც-და-ცხრა
	** ots-da-tskhra
	*** Twenty nine
30	* ოც-და-ათ-ი ¹
	** ots-da-ath-i

	*** Thirty
32	*ოც-და-თორმეტი-ი ¹
	** ots-da-thormet-i
	*** Thirty two
33	*ოც-და-ცამეტი-ი ¹
	** ots-da-tsamet-i
	*** Thirty three
38	*ოც-და-თვრამეტი-ი ¹
	** ots-da-thvramet-i
	*** Thirty eight
44	*ორმოც-და-ოთხი-ი ¹
	** ormots-da-othkh-i
	*** Forty-four
45	*ორმოც-და-ხუთი-ი ¹
	** ormots-da-khuth-i
	*** Forty five
50	*ორმოც-და-ათი-ი ¹
	ormots-da-ath-i
	*** Fifty
56	*ორმოც-და-თექვსმეტი-ი ¹
	** ormots-da-theqvsmet-i
	*** Fifty six
57	*ორმოც-და-ჩვიდმეტი-ი ¹
	** ormots-da-chvidmet-i
	*** Fifty seven
	*ორმოც-და-ცხრამეტი-ი ¹

59	** ormots-da-tskhramet-i
	*** Fifty nine
61	*სამოც-და-ერთ-ი ¹
	** samots-da-erth-i
	*** Sixty one
62	*სამოც-და-ორ-ი ¹
	** samots-da-or-i
	*** Sixty two
70	*სამოც-და-ათ-ი ¹
	** samots-da-ath-i
	*** Seventy
73	*სამოც-და-ცამეტ-ი ¹
	** samots-da-tsamet-i
	*** Seventy three
74	*სამოც-და-თოთხმეტ-ი ¹
	** samots-da-thothkhmet-i
	*** Seventy four
78	*სამოც-და-თვრამეტ-ი ¹
	** samots-da-thvramet-i
	*** Seventy eight
85	*ოთხმოც-და-ხუთ-ი ¹
	** othkhmots-da-khuth-i
	*** Eighty five
86	*ოთხმოც-და-ექვს-ი ¹
	** othkhmots-da-eqvs-i
	*** Eighty-six

90	*ოთხმოც-და-ათ-ი ¹
	** othkhmots-da-ath-i
	*** Ninety
97	*ოთხმოც-და-ჩვიდმეტ-ი ¹
	** othkhmots-da-chvidmet-i
	*** Ninety seven
98	*ოთხმოც-და-თვრამეტ-ი ¹
	** othkhmots-da-thvramet-i
	*** Ninety eight
99	*ოთხმოც-და-ცხრამეტ-ი ¹
	** othkhmots-da-tskhramet-i
	*** Ninety nine
101	*ას ერთ-ი ¹
	** as erth-i
	*** One hundred and one
123	*ას ოც-და-სამ-ი ¹
	** as ots-da-sam-i
	*** One hundred twenty three
204	*ორას ოთხ-ი ¹
	** oras othkh-i
	*** Two hundred and four
245	*ორას ორმოც-და-ხუთ-ი ¹
	** oras ormots-da-khuth-i
	*** Two hundred and forty-five
306	*სამას ექვს-ი ¹
	** samas eqvs-i

	*** Three hundred and six
367	*სამას სამოც-და-შვიდ-ი ¹
	** samas samots-da-shvid-i
	*** Three hundred sixty seven
1008	*ათას რვა ¹
	** athas rva
	*** One thousand and eight
2037	*ორი ათას ოც-და-ჩვიდმეტ-ი ¹
	** ori athas ots-da-chvidmet-i
	*** Two thousand and thirty seven
3456	*სამი ათას ოთხას ორმოც-და-თექვსმეტ-ი ¹
	** sami athas othkhas ormots-da-theqvsmet-i
	*** Three thousand four hundred fifty six
4009	*ოთხი ათას ცხრა ¹
	** othkhi athas tskhra
	*** Four thousand and nine
5076	*ხუთი ათას სამოც-და-თექვსმეტ-ი ¹
	** khuthi athas samots-da-theqvsmet-i
	*** Five thousand and seventy six
6899	*ექვსი ათას რვაას ოთხმოც-და-ცხრამეტ-ი ¹
	** eqvsi athas rvaas othkhmots-da-tskhramet-i
	*** Six thousand eight hundred ninety nine
	* Words in Georgian language
	** English transliteration of Georgian words
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words

¹ The vowel ending o (i) is also the ending of the nominative case.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 146-151, "Supplement to Lesson No. 37" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 37
	ოცდაერთი
	ოცდაცხრა
	ოცდაათი
	ოცდათორმეტი
	ოცდაცამეტი
	ოცდათვრამეტი

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-seventh lesson.

Lesson thirty eight

The Georgian words about compound ordinal numbers

Content of the thirty-eighth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we must complete a series of lessons on numbers. In the course of the previous lesson, we got acquainted with 36 so-called compound quantitative words. It's time to learn how to pronounce ordinal numbers based on these words. First of all, let's remember lessons No. 32 and No. 34, when we first learned the so-called simple quantitative words, and then the words that sound the corresponding ordinal numbers. Let's recall, for example, the word "ერთი" ("erthi"), the English synonym for which is the word "one" (we got acquainted with this word during the 32nd lesson). From the 34th lesson, we know that on the basis of this word, a new word can be formed to sound the corresponding ordinal number ("the first"). To do this, we remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i") from the word "ერთი" ("erthi") and instead put the suffix "-ე" ("-e"), and before the same word we write the prefix "მე-" ("me-"). We get the word we need "მე-ერთ-ე" ("me-erth-e"). This is the relatively simple way to convert the base word ["ერთ-ი" ("erth-i") → "მე-ერთ-ე" ("me-erth-e")].

2. "Let's take another case: let's remember the word "ოცდაერთი" ("otsdaerthi"), the English synonym of which is the word "twenty-one" (we got acquainted with this word during the previous, 37th, lesson). This word is the base for voicing the corresponding ordinal number - "the twenty-first". In this case, there is no easy way because the base word "ოცდაერთი" ("otsdaerthi"), in contrast to the word "ერთი" ("erthi"), is one of the compound quantitative words. We already know that the word "ოცდაერთი" ("otsdaerthi") consists of three parts - "ოც-და-ერთი" ("ots-da-erthi"). The prefix "მე-" ("me-") and the suffix "-ე" ("-e") should be added to the closing part of this word - "ერთი" ("-erthi"). As a result, we will get the word we need - "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე" ("ots-da-me-erth-e"). This, so to speak, complex way of converting words extends to those words that sound the numbers from 22 to 39 inclusive, as well as the numbers 41-59, 61-79, 81-99.

3. "Let's consider two examples of the formation of Georgian ordinal numbers that sound three-digit numbers. For example, consider the ordinal number 101. To voice this number, we should recall the words we already know that sound the numbers 100 and 1. These words are, respectively, "ასი" ("asi") and "ერთი" ("erthi"). Both of them are among the so-called simple quantitative words (we met with these words in the course of the 32nd lesson). In order to say "The One Hundred and First" in Georgian, one should do a simple job: from the word "ასი" ("asi") we remove the vowel ending "ი" ("i"), and the word "ერთი" ("erthi") is replaced by the word "მე-ერთ-ე" ("me-erth-e"). We get the combination of words we need - "ას მე-ერთ-ე" ("as me-erth-e"). Let's take the ordinal number 221. To sound this number, we should recall the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 200 and 21. These words are, respectively, "ორასი" ("orasi") and "ოცდაერთი" ("ots-da-erthi"). We got acquainted with the first word during the 32nd lesson, and with the second word - during the previous, 37th, lesson. In order to say "The two hundred twenty-first" in Georgian, the following work should be done: from the word "ორასი" ("orasi") we remove the vowel ending "ი" ("i"), and the word "ოცდაერთი" ("ots-da-erthi") is replaced by the word "ოცდამეერთე" ("ots-da-me-erth-e"). We get the combination of words we need - "ორას ოცდამეერთე" ("oras ots-da-me-erth-e"). Similarly, Georgian ordinal quantitative words are formed, voicing the numbers from 102 to 199 inclusive, as well as the numbers 201-299, 301-399, 401-499, 501-599, 601-699, 701-799, 801-899, 901-999".

4. "Let's consider an example of the formation of Georgian ordinal numbers that sound four-digit numbers. For example, consider the ordinal number 1001. To voice this number, we should recall the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 1000 and 1. These words are, respectively, "ათასი" ("athasi") and "ერთი" ("erthi"). Both of them are among the so-called simple quantitative words. We met with these words in the course of the 32nd lesson. In order to say "The One Thousand and First" in Georgian, one should do a simple job: from the word "ათასი" ("athasi") we remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i"), and the word "ერთი" ("erthi") is replaced by the word "მე-ერთ-ე" ("me-erth-e"). We get the combination of words we need - "ათას მე-ერთ-ე" ("athas me-erth-e"). Let's take the ordinal number 1021. To sound this number, we should recall the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 1000 and 21. These words are, respectively, "ათასი" ("athasi") and "ოც-და-ერთი" ("ots-da-erthi"). We met the second word during the previous, 37th, lesson. In order to say "The one thousand and twenty-first" in Georgian, the following work should be done: from the word "ათასი" ("athasi") we remove the vowel ending "ო" ("i"), and the word "ოც-და-ერთი" ("ots-da-erthi") is replaced by the word "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე" ("ots-da-me-erth-e"). We get the combination of words we need - "ათას ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე" ("athas ots-da-me-erth-e"). Similarly, Georgian ordinal quantitative words are formed, voicing the numbers from 1002 to 1100 inclusive, as well as the numbers 1200, 1300, 1400, 1500, 1600, 1700, 1800 and 1900".

5. "Let's consider another case with a four-digit number. Let's take the number 1101. To sound this number, we should recall the words already familiar to us that sound the numbers 1000, 100 and 1. These words are, respectively, "ათასი" ("athasi"), "ასი" ("asi") and "ერთი" ("erthi"). In order to say "The one thousand one hundred and first" in Georgian, one should do a simple job: from the words "ათასი" ("athasi") and "ასი" ("asi"), we remove the vowel endings "ო" ("i"), and the word "ერთი" ("erthi") is replaced by the word "მე-ერთ-ე" ("me-erth-e"). We get a combination of the three words next to each other "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე" ("athas as me-erth-e"). Georgian ordinal quantitative words are formed in a similar way, voicing the numbers from 1102 to 1199 inclusive, as well as the numbers 1201-1299, 1301-1399, 1401-1499, 1501-1599, 1601-1699, 1701-1799, 1801-1899 and 1901-1999".

6. "Methods of formation of Georgian ordinal quantitative words, voicing larger numbers, are similar and resemble the examples considered above."

7. "Once again, the following grammatical rule should be remembered and kept in mind: with the joint declension of ordinal numbers and nouns, only nouns change."

8. "The multiplicity of events and actions using the above compound ordinal words is expressed in the same way as in the case of simple quantitative words: the suffixes -ჯერ (-jer) or -დ (-d) are added at the end of the word. For example, "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე" ("ots-da-me-erth-e") → "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე-ჯერ" ("ots-da-me-erth-e-jer") or "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე" ("ots-da-me-erth-e") → "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე-დ" ("ots-da-me-erth-e-d"), and if there is a combination of two or more separate words, these suffixes are added at the end of the closing word [For example, "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე" ("athas as me-erth-e") → "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე-ჯერ" ("athas as me-erth-e-jer") or "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე" ("athas as me-erth-e") → "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე-დ" ("athas as me-erth-e-d")].

9. "During the 36th lesson, we learned how to express fractional parts of the whole in Georgian. The same rule must be observed in the case of the above considered compound ordinal words. The vowel "-ო" ("i") is added at the end of the word [For example, "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე-დ" ("ots-da-me-erth-e-d") → "ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე-დ-ო" ("ots-da-me-erth-e-di")], and if there is a combination of two or more separate words, this suffix is added at the end of the closing word [For example, "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე-დ" ("athas as me-erth-e-d") → "ათას ას მე-ერთ-ე-დ-ო" ("athas as me-erth-e-di")].

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutor of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23) and from the "Self-tutor of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 38 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted with compound ordinal numbers." The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in the 2nd column of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №38

Numeral	Words that express compound ordinal numbers
1	2
21	* ოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე ¹
	** ots-da-me-erth-e
	*** The twenty first
29	* ოც-და-მე-ცხრ-ე ²
	** ots-da-me-tskhr-e
	*** The twenty ninth
30	* ოც-და-მე-ათ-ე ¹
	** ots-da-me-ath-e
	*** The thirtieth
32	* ოც-და-მე-თორმეტ-ე ¹
	** ots-da-me-thormet-e
	*** The thirty second
33	* ოც-და-მე-ცამეტ-ე ¹
	** ots-da-me-tsamet-e
	*** The thirty third
38	* ოც-და-მე-თვრამეტ-ე ¹
	** ots-da-me-thvramet-e
	*** The thirty eighth
44	* ორმოც-და-მე-ოთხ-ე ¹
	** ormots-da-me-othkh-e
	*** The forty fourth
45	* ორმოც-და-მე-ხუთ-ე ¹
	** ormots-da-me-khuth-e
	*** The forty fifth
50	* ორმოც-და-მე-ათ-ე ¹
	** ormots-da-me-ath-e
	*** The fiftieth
56	* ორმოც-და-მე-თექვსმეტ-ე ¹
	** ormots-da-me-theqvsmet-e
	*** The fifty sixth
57	* ორმოც-და-მე-ჩვიდმეტ-ე ¹
	** ormots-da-me-chvidmet-e

	*** The fifty seventh
59	*ორმოც-და-მე-ცხრამეტ-ე ¹
	** ormots-da-me-tskhramet-e
	*** The fifty ninth
61	*სამოც-და-მე-ერთ-ე ¹
	** samots-da-me-erth-e
	*** The sixty first
62	*სამოც-და-მე-ორ-ე ¹
	** samots-da-me-or-e
	*** The sixty second
70	* სამოც-და-მე-ათ-ე ¹
	** samots-da-me-ath-e
	*** The seventieth
73	*სამოც-და-მე-ცამეტ-ე ¹
	** samots-da-me-tsamet-e
	*** The seventy third
74	*სამოც-და-მე-თოთხმეტ-ე ¹
	** samots-da-me-thothkhmet-e
	*** The seventy fourth
78	*სამოც-და-მე-თვრამეტ-ე ¹
	** samots-da-me-thvramet-e
	*** The seventyeighth
85	*ოთხმოც-და-მე-ხუთ-ე ¹
	** othkhmots-da-me-khuth-e
	*** The eighty fifth
86	*ოთხმოც-და-მე-ექვს-ე ¹
	** othkhmots-da-me-eqvs-e
	*** The eighty sixth
90	*ოთხმოც-და-მე-ათ-ე ¹
	** othkhmots-da-me-ath-e
	*** The ninetieth
97	*ოთხმოც-და-მე-ჩვიდმეტ-ე ¹
	** othkhmots-da-me-chvidmet-e
	*** The ninety seventh
98	*ოთხმოც-და-მე-თვრამეტ-ე ¹
	** othkhmots-da-me-thvramet-e
	*** The ninety eighth
99	*ოთხმოც-და-მე-ცხრამეტ-ე ¹
	** othkhmots-da-me-tskhramet-e
	*** The ninety ninth
101	*ას მე-ერთ-ე ¹
	** as me-erth-e
	*** One hundred and the first
123	*ას ოც-და-მე-სამ-ე ¹
	** as ots-da-me-sam-e
	*** One hundred and the twenty-third
	*ორას მე-ოთხ-ე ¹

204	** oras me-othkh-e
	*** Two hundred and the fourth
245	*ორას ორმოც-და-მე-ხუთ-ე ¹
	** oras ormots-da-me-khuth-e
306	*** Two hundred and the forty-fifth
	*სამას მე-ექვს-ე ¹
367	** samas me-eqvs-e
	*** Three hundred and the sixth
1008	*სამას სამოც-და-მე-შვიდ-ე ¹
	** samas samots-da-me-shvid-e
2037	*** Three hundred and the sixty-seventh
	*ათას მე-რვ-ე ²
2037	** athas me-rv-e
	*** Thousand and the eighth
3456	*ორი ათას ოც-და-მე-ჩვიდმეტ-ე ¹
	** ori athas ots-da-me-chvidmet-e
3456	*** Two thousand and the thirty-seventh
	*სამი ათას ოთხას ორმოც-და-მე-თექვსმეტ-ე ¹
4009	** sami athas othkhas ormots-da-me-theqvsmet-e
	*** Three thousand four hundred and fifty-sixth
4009	*ოთხი ათას მე-ცხრ-ე ²
	** othkhi athas me-tskhr-e
5076	*** Four thousand and the ninth
	*ხუთი ათას სამოც-და-მე-თექვსმეტ-ე ¹
5076	** khuthi athas samots-da-me-theqvsmet-e
	*** Five thousand and the seventy-sixth
6899	*ექვსი ათას რვაას ოთხმოც-და-მე-ცხრამეტ-ე ¹
	** eqvsi athas rvaas othkhmots-da-me-tskhramet-e
6899	*** Six thousand eight hundred and the ninety-ninth
	* Words in Georgian language
	** English transliteration of Georgian words
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words

¹ The suffix -ე replaces the vowel ending of the nominative case (ო).

² The suffix -ე replaces the vowel ending of the root word (ა).

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 152-157, "Supplement to Lesson No. 38" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only words in Georgian on the flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words”.

An example of compiling a flip sheet No. 1 by a group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 38
ოცდამეერთე	
ოცდამეცხრე	
ოცდამეათე	
ოცდამეთორმეტე	
ოცდამეცამეტე	
ოცდამეთვრამეტე	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-eighth lesson.

Lesson thirty nine

The Georgian linking verbs in the present tense

The content of the thirty-ninth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Today we have to start getting acquainted with Georgian verbs. Without exaggeration, we can say that the study of a complex Georgian verb actually means the study of the basic issues of morphology (morphology studies the properties of words) and syntax (syntax studies the types of sentences and the rules for connecting words) of the Georgian language. However, the complexity of the Georgian verb should not be intimidating. To speak Georgian quite clearly, it is enough, for the first time, to know the basic tense and person forms of the Georgian verb.”

2. “The structure of Georgian verbs is very different from English. In theory it is very logical – in practice, especially because of many irregular forms, it can be difficult to follow what is going on and, more pertinently, who is doing what to whom. Every Georgian verb has a “root” – a basic word that carries a basic meaning. To this are added, at both ends, smaller words or letters that add further information to tell you exactly who is doing what to whom or what and how and when. A lot of information can be packed into any one verb – but all the “slots” are never used at one time. As part of this initial course, you are invited to become familiar with some verbs that are very often used in Georgian speech.”

3. “There is no infinitive (an indefinite form of a verb) in the Georgian language. Its place is replaced by the Georgian verbal name of the action. On the other hand, Georgian grammar is familiar with such a concept as the main (original) form of the Georgian verb. The verb in the third person singular of the present tense acts as such an initial form”.

4. “Let's start our acquaintance with Georgian verbs with such a common verbal name of the action as “ყობა” (“qoba”), the English synonym of which is the verb “Being”. The main (original) form of this Georgian verbal action name is the linking verb “არის” (“aris”), the English synonym of which is the verb “is”. If we put the word “ის” (“is”), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the third person singular, before the verb “არის” (“aris”), then we get the affirmative phrase “ის არის” (“is aris”). The literal English translation of the words “ის არის” is the affirmative phrase “he (she, it) is.” These words exactly mean the following: “he (she, it) is someone or something” or “he (she, it) is somewhere.” At the same time, it is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the personal pronoun of the third person in the singular (ის) replaces the Georgian noun in the nominative case of the singular”.

5. “In the third person plural of the present tense, the linking verb “არიან” (“arian”) is used. If we put the word “ისინი” (“isini”), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the third person plural, before the verb “არიან” (“arian”), we get the affirmative phrase “ისინი არიან” (“isini arian”), the literal English translation of which is the affirmative phrase “they are”, although it exactly means “they are someone or something” or “they are somewhere.” At the same time, it is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the personal pronoun of the third person in the plural (ისინი) replaces the Georgian noun in the nominative plural case”.

6. “In the second person singular of the present tense, the linking verb “ხარ” (“khar”) is used. If we put the word “შენ” (“shen”), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person singular, before the verb “ხარ” (“khar”), then we get the affirmative phrase “შენ ხარ” (“shen khar”), the literal English translation of which is the affirmative phrase “you are”, although it exactly means “you are someone or something” or “you are somewhere”.

7. “In the second person plural of the present tense, the linking verb “ხართ” (“kharth”) is used. If before the verb “ხართ” (“kharth”) we put the word “თქვენ” (“thqven”), the familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase “თქვენ ხართ” (“thqven kharth”), the literal English translation of which is the affirmative phrase “you are”, although it exactly means “you are someone or something” or “you are somewhere”.

8. “In the first person singular of the present tense, the linking verb “ვარ” (“var”) is used. If we put the word “მე” (“me”), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, before the verb “ვარ” (“var”), we get the affirmative phrase “მე ვარ” (“me var”), the literal English translation of which is the affirmative phrase “I am”, although it exactly means “I am someone or something” or “I am somewhere”.

9. “In the first person plural of the present tense, the linking verb “ვართ” (“varth”) is used. If we put the word “ჩვენ” (“chven”), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, before the verb “ვართ” (“varth”), then we get the affirmative phrase “ჩვენ ვართ” (“chven varth”), the literal English translation of which is the affirmative phrase “we are”, although it exactly means “we are someone or something” or “we are somewhere”.

10. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the linking verbs mentioned above and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, "ის არის" ("is aris") → "არის ის?" (“aris is?”) and so on.”

11. “Negative word combinations are formed by inserting the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the linking verbs mentioned above and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “ის არის” (“is aris”) → “ის არ არის” (“is ar aris”) and so on.”

Note: this lesson is based on materials from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 25-27, 34-35), the "Self-tutoring manual of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 17-19) and “Georgian-English and English-Georgian dictionary and phrasebook (authors Nicholas Awde and Thea Khitarishvili).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 39 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's present the above phrases as the basic structure of the verbal name of the action “ყოფა” (“qkopa”) in all persons and in all numbers.”

The facilitators alternately pronounce the Georgian phrases shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №39

The basic structure of the verb ყოფა (Being) in the present tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		3	4		5	6		7	8	
1	2									

		Affirmative collocations								
Singular	*	ის	არის	*	შენ	ხარ	*	მე	ვარ	
	**	is	aris	**	shen	khar	**	me	var	
Plural	*	ისინი	არიან	*	თქვენ	ხართ	*	ჩვენ	ვართ	
	**	isini	arian	**	thqven	kharth	**	chven	varth	
		* Words in Georgian language								
		** English transliteration of Georgian words								
		Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)								
Singular		არის	ის?		ხარ	შენ?		ვარ	მე?	
Plural		არიან	ისინი?		ხართ	თქვენ?		ვართ	ჩვენ?	
		Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]								
Singular		ის	არ არის		შენ	არ ხარ		მე	არ ვარ	
Plural		ისინი	არ არიან		თქვენ	არ ხართ		ჩვენ	არ ვართ	

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb *ყოფა* (Being) in the present tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can do what we could not do in previous lessons. We will be able, with the help of the linking verbs discussed above, to construct the simplest affirmative Georgian sentences in the present tense. In this case, we will be helped by the stock of Georgian words that we have already learned in previous lessons, as well as the knowledge of those basic grammatical rules that we met during these lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon).”

Note 1: in the Georgian language there are no words for English “the”, ‘a”, or ‘an” – instead the meaning of a Georgian word is understood from the context.

Note 2: although word order can be quite free in Georgian language, the verb tends to go at the end of the sentence.

4) The facilitators also draw the attention of the listeners to the following circumstance: “Today and in subsequent lessons we will study simple Georgian sentences that reflect the everyday life of typical residents of Georgian cities and villages, as well as the general ideas of ordinary residents of Georgia about their country and their people. It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

5) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 40 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words of the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Ordinal №		Georgian affirmative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action "ყოფა" (Being)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	მე	ვარ	ქართველი.	ჩემი	სახელი არის	ალექსანდრე.
	**	me	var	qarthveli.	chemi	sakheli aris	aleqsandre.
	***	I	am	a Georgian.	My	name is	Alexander.
2	*	მე	ვარ	ქალაქში.	ჩემი	მშობლები არიან	სოფელში.
	**	me	var	qalaqshi.	chemi	mshoblebi arian	sopelshi.
	***	I	am	in the city.	My	parents are	in the village.
3	*	ჩემთან ბინაში	არის ჩემი	ოჯახი:	ცოლი	და ერთი	ბავშვი.
	**	chemthan binashi	aris chemi	ojakhi:	tsoli	da erthi	bavshvi.
	***	In my apartment	there is my	family:	wife	and one	child.
4	*	დღეს	მე ვარ	მასპინძელი:	ჩვენთან	არიან	სტუმრები.
	**	dgres	me var	maspindzeli:	chventhan	arian	stumrebi.
	***	Today	I am	the host:	with us	are	guests.
5	*	ჩვენთან	ბინაში	არიან	ჩემი და	და	ძმა.
	**	chventhan	binashi	arian	chemi da	da	dzma.
	***	In our	apartment	there are	my sister	and	brother.
6	*	ჩვენთან	არიან	ჩვენი	მეგობრები	და	მეზობლები.
	**	chventhan	arian	chveni	megobrebi	da	mezoblebi.
	***	With us	there are	our	friends	and	neighbors.
7	*	ჩემი	მამა არის	მწყემსი.	მისი	სახელი არის	ლევანი.
	**	chemi	mama aris	mtzqkems.	misi	sakheli aris	levani.
	***	My	father is	a shepherd.	His	name is	Levan.
8	*	ლევანი	არის	მტკიცე	და	ჩუმი	კაცი.
	**	levani	aris	mtkitse	da	chumi	katsi.

	***	Levan	is	a firm	and	silent	person.
9	*	ჩემი	ბებია არის	მეყვავილე.	მისი	სახელი არის	ქეთევანი.
	**	chemi	bebia aris	meqkvavile.	misi	sakheli aris	qethevani.
	***	My	grandmother is	florist.	Her	name is	Ketevani.
10	*	ქეთევანი	არის	ამაყი	და	ლამაზი	ადამიანი.
	**	qethevani	aris	amaqki	da	lamazi	adamiani.
	***	Ketevani	is	a proud	and	beautiful	person.
11	*	ჩემი	მშობლები	არიან	კარგად	და	ტკბილად.
	**	chemi	mshoblebi	arian	kargad	da	tkbilad.
	***	My	parents	live	well	and	sweetly.
12	*	მათი	სოფელი	არის	მდინარესთან.	მიწა იქ არის	ნაყოფიერი.
	**	mathi	sopeli	aris	mdinarestan.	mitza iq aris	naqkoperi.
	***	Their	village	is	at the river.	The land there is	fertile.
13	*	ჩემი	ცოლი არის	ექიმი.	მისი	სახელი არის	მარიამი.
	**	chemi	tsoli aris	eqimi.	misi	sakheli aris	mariami.
	***	My	wife is	a doctor.	Her	name is	Mary.
14	*	მარიამი	არის	ფრთხილი	და	მორცხვი	ადამიანი.
	**	mariami	aris	prthkhili	da	mortskhvi	adamiani.
	***	Mary	is	a cautious	and	shy	person.
15	*	მის	საავადმყოფოში	არიან	მისი	მეგობრები.	
	**	mis	saavadmqkposhi	arian	misi	megobrebi.	
	***	In her	hospital	there are	her	friends.	
16	*	მისი	ავადმყოფები	არიან	ცუდად	და	მძიმედ.
	**	misi	avadmqkopebi	arian	tsudad	da	mdzimed.
	***	Her	patients	feel	badly	and	hardly.
	*	ჩემი	სიმაძრი არის	მხატვარი.	მისი	სახელი არის	მიხეილი.

17	**	chemi	simamri aris	mkhatvari.	misi	sakheli aris	mikheili.
	***	My	father-in-law is	a painter.	His	name is	Michael.
18	*	ჩემი	სიდედრი არის	მასწავლებელი.	მისი	სახელი არის	თამარი.
	**	chemi	sidedri aris	mastzavlebeli.	misi	sakheli aris	thamari.
	***	My	mother-in-law is	a teacher.	Her	name is	Tamari.
19	*	ჩემი	ბავშვი	არის	ჯიუტი	და მარდი	ბიჭი.
	**	chemi	bavshvi	aris	jiuti	da mardi	bitchi.
	***	My	child	is	a stubborn	and nimble	boy.
20	*	დღეს	ის არის	ჩემს	სიმამრთან	და	სიდედრთან.
	**	dgres	is aris	chems	simamrthan	da	sidedrthan.
	***	Today	he is	with my	father-in-law	and	mother-in-law.
21	*	ჩემი	და არის	სტუდენტი.	მისი	სახელი არის	ნინო.
	**	chemi	da aris	studenti.	misi	sakheli aris	nino.
	***	My	sister is	a student.	Her	name is	Nino.
22	*	ნინო	არის	კობტა	და	მხიარული	გოგო.
	**	nino	aris	kokhta	da	mkhiaruli	gogo.
	***	Nino	is	an elegant	and	cheerful	girl.
23	*	მისი	საქმრო	არის	კარგი	მეცნიერი.	
	**	misi	saqmro	aris	kargi	metsnieri.	
	***	Her	fiance	is	a good	scientist.	
24	*	მისი	სამეცნიერო	სამუშაო	არის	რთული.	
	**	misi	sametsniero	samushao	aris	rthuli.	
	***	His	scientific	work	is	complicated.	
25	*	ჩემი	ძმა არის	მუშა.	მისი	სახელი არის	ნოდარი.
	**	chemi	dzma aris	musha.	misi	sakheli aris	nodari.
	***	My	brother is	a worker.	His	name is	Nodari.

26	*	ნოდარი	არის	მეავეჯე.	მისი	სამუშაო არის	ნაყოფიერი.
	**	nodari	aris	meaveje.	misi	samushao aris	naqkopieri.
	***	Nodari	is	a furniture-maker.	His	work is	productive.
27	*	მისი	საცოლო	არის	იშვიათი	პარიკმახერი.	
	**	misi	satsolo	aris	ishviathi	parikmakheri.	
	***	His	fiancee	is	a rare	hairstresser.	
28	*	ჩემი	მეგობრები	არიან	კარგი	ადამიანები.	
	**	chemi	megobrebi	arian	kargi	adamianebi.	
	***	My	friends	are	good	people.	
29	*	ვიღაც	არის	კახელი,	ვიღაც	არის	იმერელი.
	**	vigrats	aris	kakheli,	vigrats	aris	imereli.
	***	Someone	is	a Kakhetian,	someone	is	Imeretian.
30	*	ვიღაც	არის	მკურნალი,	ვიღაც	არის	მზარეული.
	**	vigrats	aris	mkurnali,	vigrats	aris	mzareuli.
	***	Someone	is	a physician,	someone	is	cook.
31	*	ჩვენ	ყველა	ვართ	ქართველები	და	კავკასიელები.
	**	chven	qkvela	varth	qarthvelebi	da	kavkasielebi.
	***	We,	everyone,	are	the Georgians	and	the Caucasians.
32	*	ჩვენი	სამშობლო	არის	საქართველო	და	კავკასია.
	**	chveni	samshoblo	aris	saqarthvelo	da	kavkasia.
	***	Our	homeland	is	Georgia	and	the Caucasus.
33	*	ჩვენი	ხალხი	არის	მხიარული	და	ამაყი.
	**	chveni	khalkhi	aris	mkhiaruli	da	amaqki.
	***	Our	people	are	cheerful	and	proud.
34	*	საქართველოში	არის	ქართული	ეკლესია	თავისი	მსახურებით.
	**	saqarthveloshi	aris	qarthuli	eklesia	thavisi	msakhurebith.

	***	In Georgia,	there is	a Georgian	church	with its	servants.
35	*	საქართველოში	არის	ქართული	მთავრობა	თავისი	მინისტრებით.
	**	saqarthveloshi	aris	qarthuli	mthavroba	thavisi	ministrebith.
	***	In Georgia,	there is	a Georgian	government	with its	ministers.
36	*	ჩვენში	მიწა არის	უხვი	და	ნაყოფიერი.	
	**	chvenshi	mitza aris	ukhvi	da	naqkoperi.	
	***	In us,	land is	generous	and	fertile.	
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

6) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

7) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 158-163, "Supplement to Lesson No. 39" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

8) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group must write in Georgian two pairs of sentences, which are marked with separate serial numbers. For example, one of the three members of group No. 1 must write sentences under serial numbers 1 and 2, the next must write sentences under serial numbers 3 and 4, and the last, third, member must write sentences under serial numbers 5 and 6. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 39
-----------	-------------

1. მე ვარ ქართველი. ჩემი სახელი არის ალექსანდრე.
2. მე ვარ ქალაქში. ჩემი მშობლები არიან სოფელში.
3. ჩემთან ბინაში არის ჩემი ოჯახი: ცოლი და ერთი ბავშვი.

Group # 1

Lesson # 39

4. დღეს მე ვარ მასპინძელი: ჩვენთან არიან სტუმრები.
5. ჩვენთან ბინაში არიან ჩემი და და ძმა.
6. ჩვენთან არიან ჩვენი მეგობრები და მეზობლები.

9) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the thirty-ninth lesson.

Lesson forty

Let's talk in Georgian about ourselves and our relatives

The content of the fortieth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “This lesson will be a kind of continuation of the previous one, since each of us, including the two leaders of the educational process, will have to compose our own oral presentation in Georgian. Each of us will appear before the audience in order to say a few sentences about ourselves, our family members, and our closest relatives. It will be a very simple presentation because you will have to give your first and last name, as well as the names of your closest relatives by blood, as well as friends and neighbors”.

2. “Today we will not have written work and work in groups. We will only speak in Georgian. We will all have to use those Georgian linking verbs that we met in the previous lesson. In particular, we must use the forms of the verbal name of the action "ყოფა" ("qkopa") in the first and third persons. When talking about ourselves, we should use the linking verbs "ვარ" ("var") in the singular and/or "ვართ" ("varth") in the plural. When talking about next of kin, we should use the linking verbs "არის" ("aris") in the singular and/or "არიან" ("arian") in the plural. For example, someone would have to say “My sister is....(followed by first name and last name or just first name)”, while another would have to say “My sisters are....(followed by first and last names or only first names)”. We got acquainted with the Georgian pronunciations of many names during the 16th, 17th and 18th lessons of our educational process [for example, the Georgian synonym for the name "Alexander" is the word "ალექსანდრე" ("aleqsandre")]. Speakers can use these pronunciations. But if these Georgian pronunciations cannot be adapted to a specific name, then this name should be pronounced as it sounds in English or in the local native language. The surname should be pronounced as it sounds in English or in the local native language with only one caveat - if such a pronunciation of the surname ends with a consonant sound, then the Georgian vowel sound “ო” (“i”) must be added at the end”.

3. “In addition to listing specific persons, each speaker must mention his native city or native village (the name of the city or village is pronounced as it sounds in English or in the local native language), and at the end of his speech, mention his homeland (under the term “homeland” we can mention names of city, township, county, and State). We got acquainted with the Georgian pronunciations of many countries and states during the 7th lesson of our educational process. Speakers can use these pronunciations. But if these Georgian pronunciations cannot be adapted to a particular country, then this country must be pronounced as it sounds in English or in the local native language with only one caveat - if the English pronunciation of the country ends with a consonant sound, then a Georgian vowel must be added at the end the sound "ო" ("i”).”

4. “We got acquainted with the Georgian names of relatives during the 15th lesson of our educational process. Today you are invited, speaking about yourself, to also mention your closest relatives by blood (naturally, from the list of proposals offered to you, each of you will choose those that will be needed during the presentation). If you wish, each of you can, at your choice, additionally mention in Georgian other relatives, as well as friends or neighbors. But for this, each of us must remember how the corresponding words sound in Georgian (we got acquainted with these words during the 15th lesson).”

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 41 on the big screen. The facilitator addresses the audience with the following words: "Let's look at the general scheme of the presentation speech of each of us. The ellipsis in parentheses (...) means that here we must pronounce the first name, last name, city name, village name or homeland name. We also pay attention to those notes that are written to the right of each sentence. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №41

Ordinal №		The general scheme of presentation speech in the Georgian language with the use of forms (link-verbs) of Georgian verbal name of action «ყოფა» («Being»)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	მე	ვარ	(...) ¹ .	¹ Each speaker pronounces his name and surname.		
	**	me	var	(...).			
	***	I	am	(...).			
2	*	ჩემი	მშობლები	არიან	(... და ...) ² .	² The names of both parents are mentioned, regardless of whether they are alive or not at the time of the presentation. The Georgian word "და" is a union that connects the two main parts of the sentence.	
	**	chemi	mshoblebi	arian	(... da ...).		
	***	My	parents	are	(... and ...).		
3	*	ჩემი	პაპები	არიან	(... და ...) ³ .	³ The names of both grandfathers are mentioned, regardless of whether they are alive or not at the time of the presentation. The Georgian word "და" is a union that connects the two main parts of the sentence.	
	**	chemi	παπები	arian	(... da ...).		
	***	My	grandfathers	are	(...and ...).		
4	*	ჩემი	ბებები	არიან	(...) ⁴ .	⁴ The names of both grandmothers are mentioned, regardless of whether they are alive or not at the time of the presentation. The Georgian word "და" is a union that connects the two main parts of the sentence.	
	**	chemi	ბებები	arian	(...).		
	***	My	grandmothers	are	(...).		
	*	ჩემი	ძმები	არიან	(... და ...) ⁵ .	⁵ You can only mention the names of brothers. If their number is more than	

5	**	chemi	dzmebi	arian	(... da ...).	two, then the connecting word "და" is used between the last two names.
	***	My	brothers	are	(...and ...).	
6	*	ჩემი	ძმა	არის	(...) ⁶ .	⁶ You can mention only the name of the brother.
	**	chemi	dzma	aris	(...).	
	***	My	brother	is	(...).	
7	*	ჩემი	დები	არიან	(... და ...) ⁷ .	⁷ You can only mention the names of sisters. If their number is more than two, then the connecting word "და" is used between the last two names.
	**	chemi	debi	arian	(... da ...).	
	***	My	sisters	are	(...and ...).	
8	*	ჩემი	და	არის	(...) ⁸ .	⁸ You can mention only the name of the sister.
	**	chemi	da	aris	(...).	
	***	My	sister	is	(...).	
9	*	ჩემი	ქმარი	არის	(...) ⁹ .	⁹ You can mention the name and surname of husband.
	**	chemi	qmari	aris	(...).	
	***	My	husband	is	(...).	
10	*	ჩემი	ცოლი	არის	(...) ¹⁰ .	¹⁰ You can mention the name and the maiden name of wife.
	**	chemi	tsoli	aris	(...).	
	***	My	wife	is	(...).	
11	*	ჩემი	შვილები	არიან	(... და ...) ¹¹ .	¹¹ You can only mention the names of children. If their number is more than two, then the connecting word "და" is used between the last two names.
	**	chemi	shvilebi	arian	(... da ...).	
	***	My	children	are	(...and ...).	
12	*	ჩემი	შვილი	არის	(...) ¹² .	¹² You can only mention the name of the child.
	**	chemi	shvili	aris	(...).	
	***	My	child	is	(...).	
	*	ჩემი	შვილიშვილები	არიან	(... და ...) ¹³ .	¹³ You can only mention the names of grandchildren. If their number is

13	**	chemi	shvilishvilebi	arian	(... da ...).	more than two, then the connecting word "და" is used between the last two names.	
	***	My	grandchildren	are	(...and ...).		
14	*	ჩემი	შვილიშვილი	არის	(...) ¹⁴ .	¹⁴ You can only mention the name of the grandchild.	
	**	chemi	shvilishvili	aris	(...).		
	***	My	grandchild	is	(...).		
15	*	ჩემი	მშობლიური	ქალაქი	არის	(...).	
	**	chemi	mshobliuri	qalaqi	aris	(...).	
	***	My	native	city	is	(...).	
16	*	ჩემი	მშობლიური	სოფელი	არის	(...).	
	**	chemi	mshobliuri	sopeli	aris	(...).	
	* * *	My	native	village	is	(...).	
17	*	ჩემი	სამშობლო	არის	(...) ¹⁵ .	¹⁵ You can mention county, state and nation (country).	
	* *	chemi	samshoblo	aris	(...).		
	* * *	My	homeland	is	(...).		
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

3) Listeners are not distributed between groups, as was done in previous lessons. Both leaders of the educational process and all students work individually.

4) Each participant of the educational process receives his copy of the “The general scheme of presentation speech in the Georgian language with the use of forms (link-verbs) of Georgian verbal name of action «ყოფა» («Being”)”, where 17 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of corresponding English letters and English synonyms for these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 164-166, “Supplement to Lesson No. 40”, which gives “The general scheme of presentation speech in the Georgian language with the use of forms (link-verbs) of Georgian verbal name of action «ყოფა» («Being”)” on four pages. It

is necessary to make one copy of these pages for each participant in the educational process. With the help of this, so to speak, "cheat sheet", each participant in the educational process prepares his presentation speech.

5) The facilitators explain to all participants in the educational process the essence of the task: "Each of us has in his hands a general scheme already known to us. Each of us works individually on its own presentation speech. During the presentation, the speaker may hold his copy of the general scheme in his hands. Each of us speaks only sentences in Georgian. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

6) After all participants in the educational process are ready for presentations, one of the presenters comes out in front of the audience and talks about himself and his relatives. After it, all students speak, and the presentation part is completed by the second leader of the educational process. The order of the audience's speeches can be determined by a lot. For example, we write different numbers (from 1 to 18) on sheets of small size. Then we fold these sheets so that the numbers are not visible. Then we place these folded sheets in a sack or in a park. The presenter with a sack or in a park in his hands approaches each listener so that the latter takes out one folded sheet. The listener opens the folded sheet and the figure written on it becomes its serial number. For example, the number 7 means that the listener becomes the seventh speaker during the presentation part of the lesson.

After the completion of the presentation speeches, the fortieth lesson ends.

Lesson forty one

The Georgian linking verbs in the past tense

Content of the forty-first lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Today we will continue our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action “ყოფა” (“qkopa”), the English synonym of which is the verb “Being”. This time we will study the past tense forms of this action name”.

2. “We already know that the main (original) form of the word “ყოფა” (“qkopa”) is a linking verb in the third person singular of the present tense - “არის” (“aris”), the synonym of which in English is the word "is". In the third person singular of the past tense, instead of the verb "არის" ("aris"), the linking verb "იყო" ("iqko") is used, the English synonyms of which are the verbs "Was". If we put the word “ის” (“is”), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the third person singular, before the verb “იყო” (“iqko”), then we get the affirmative phrase “ის იყო” (“is ikgo”), the English synonyms of which are affirmative phrases "he/she/it was". At the same time, it is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the personal pronoun of the third person in the singular (ის) replaces the Georgian noun in the nominative case of the singular”.

3. “In the third person plural of the past tense, the linking verb “იყვნენ” (“iqkven”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “Were”. If before the verb “იყვნენ” (“iqkven”) we put the word “ისინი” (“isini”), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the third person plural, then we get the affirmative phrase “ისინი იყვნენ” (“isini iqkven”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "they were". At the same time, it is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the personal pronoun of the third person in the plural (ისინი) replaces the Georgian noun in the nominative plural case”.

4. “In the second person singular of the past tense, the linking verb “იყავი” (“iqkavi”) is used. If before the verb “იყავი” (“iqkavi”) we put the word “შენ” (“shen”), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person singular, then we get the affirmative phrase “შენ იყავი” (“shen iqkavi”), the English synonyms of which are affirmative phrases "you were”.

5. “In the second person plural of the past tense, the linking verb “იყავით” (“iqkavith”) is used. If before the verb “იყავით” (“iqkavith”) we put the word “თქვენ” (“thqven”), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase “თქვენ იყავით” (“thqven iqkavith”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "you were”.

6. “In the first person singular of the past tense, the linking verb “ვიყავი” (“viqkavi”) is used. If we put the word “მე” (“me”), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the first person singular, before the verb “ვიყავი” (“viqkavi”), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the first person singular, then we get the affirmative phrase “მე ვიყავი” (“me viqkavi”), the English synonyms of which are affirmative phrases "I was”.

7. “In the first person plural of the past tense, the linking verb “ვიყავით” (“viqkavith”) is used. If before the verb “ვიყავით” (“viqkavith”) we put the word “ჩვენ” (“chven”), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the first person plural, then we get the affirmative phrase “ჩვენ ვიყავით” (“chven viqkavith”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "we were”.

8. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, "ობ იყო" ("is iqko") → "იყო ობ?" ("iqko is?") and so on.”

9. “Negative phrases are formed by inserting the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “ობ იყო” (“is iqko”) → “ობ არ იყო” (“is ar iqko”) and so on.”

Note: this lesson is based on materials from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 25-27, 34-35) and from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 17-19).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 42 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's present the above phrases as the basic structure of the verbal name of the action “ყოფა” (“qkopa”) in all persons and in all numbers.”

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian word combinations shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №42

The basic structure of the verb <i>ყოფა</i> (Being) in the past tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
Affirmative collocations										
Singular	*	ობ	იყო	*	შენ	იყავი	*	მე	ვოყავი	
	**	is	iqko	**	shen	iqkavi	**	me	viqkavi	
Plural	*	ობინი	იყვნენ	*	თქვენ	იყავით	*	ჩვენ	ვოყავით	
	**	isini	iqkven	**	thqven	iqkavith	**	chven	viqkavith	
* Words in Georgian language										
** English transliteration of Georgian words										
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)										
Singular		იყო	ობ?		იყავი	შენ?		ვოყავი	მე?	

Plural		იყვნენ	ისინი?		იყავით	თქვენ?		ვიყავით	ჩვენ?	
Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]										
Singular		ის	არ იყო		შენ	არ იყავი		მე	არ ვიყავი	
Plural		ისინი	არ იყვნენ		თქვენ	არ იყავით		ჩვენ	არ ვიყავით	

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb ყოფა (Being) in the past tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the past tense using the verbs discussed above. In this case, we will be helped by the stock of Georgian words that we have already learned in previous lessons, as well as the knowledge of those basic grammatical rules that we met in the course of these lessons. Also pay attention to the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon, dash). One should also take into account the fact that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous” sentence.

4) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 43 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №43

Ordinal №		Georgian sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action "ყოფა" ("Being")					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	გუშინ	მე	და ჩემი	ოჯახი	ვიყავით	სოფელში.
	**	gushin	me	da chemi	ojakhi	viqkavith	sopelshi.
	***	Yesterday,	I	and my	family	were	in the village.
2	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	მშობლებთან	მხიარული	დღე	იყო.
	**	sopelshi	chems	mshoblebthan	mkhiaruli	dgre	iqko.
	***	In the village,	with my	parents	a fun	day	was.
3	*	დილას	მე ვიყავი	ვენახში.	მამა არის	მევენახე და	მელვინე.
	**	dilas	me viqkavi	venakhshi.	mama aris	mevenakhe da	megrvine.
	***	In the morning	I was	in the vineyard.	The father is	a winegrower and	winemaker.
4	*	ვენახში	უხვად	იყო	ტკბილი	ყურძენი.	
	**	venakhshi	ukhvad	iqko	tkbili	qkurdzeni.	

	***	In the vineyard	abundantly	were	sweet	grapes.	
5	*	ჩემი	ცოლი იყო	ბოსტანში.	ჩემი დედა	არის	მეზოსტნე.
	**	chemi	tsoli iqko	bostanshi.	chemi deda	aris	mebostne.
	***	My	wife was	in the garden.	My mother	is	a gardener.
6	*	ბოსტანში	უხვად	იყო	პამიდორი,	კიტრი და	ბადრიჯანი.
	**	bostanshi	ukhvad	iqko	πamidori,	kitri da	badrijani.
	***	In the garden	abundantly	was	a tomato,	cucumber and	eggplant.
7	*	ჩვენი	ბავშვი	იყო	ჩვენს	ლამაზ	ბაღში.
	**	chveni	bavshvi	iqko	chvens	lamaz	bagrshi.
	***	Our	child	was	in our	beautiful	garden.
8	*	ჩვენს	ბაღში	მინდორი	არ არის	ვიწრო და	მოკლე.
	**	chvens	bagrshi	mindori	ar aris	vitzro da	mokle.
	***	In our	garden	the field	is not	narrow and	short.
9	*	ბაღში	ის იყო	სოფელელ	მეზობლებთან:	გოგოებთან	და ბიჭებთან.
	**	bagrshi	Is iqko	soplel	mezoblebthan:	gogoebthan	da bitchebthan.
	***	In the garden	he was	with rural	neighbors:	with girls	and with boys.
10	*	ჩვენს	ბაღში	არის	ყვავილები,	მაგიდები	და სკამები.
	**	chvens	bagrshi	aris	qkvavilebi,	magidebi	da skamebi.
	***	In our	garden	there are	flowers,	tables	and chairs.
11	*	შუადღეს	მე და	ჩემი	ბავშვი	ვიყავით	მდინარესთან.
	**	shuadgres	me da	chemi	bavshvi	viqkavith	mdinaresthan.
	***	At noon,	I and	my	child	were	at the river.
12	*	წყალი	მდინარეში	არ იყო	ცივი.		
	**	tzqkali	mdinareshi	ar iqko	tsivi.		
	***	The water	in the river	was not	cold.		
	*	ჩემი	ოჯახი	და ჩემი	მშობლები	ვიყავით	ეკლესიაში.

13	**	chemi	ojakhi	da chemi	mshoblebi	viqkavith	eklesiashi.
	***	My	family	and my	parents	were	in church.
14	*	ეკლესიაში	ხალხი	იყო	ჩუმად	და	ფრთხილად.
	**	eklesiashi	khalkhi	iqko	chumad	da	prthkhilad.
	***	In the church	the people	were	quiet	and	cautious.
15	*	სადამოს	ჩემს	მამასთან	იყვნენ	მისი	ნათესავები.
	**	sagramos	chems	mamasthan	iqvnen	misi	nathesavebi.
	***	In the evening	with my	father	were	his	relatives.
16	*	სოფელში	მისი	ძმა	რევაზი	არის	ხელოსანი.
	**	sopelshi	misi	dzma	revazi	aris	khelosani.
	***	In the village,	his	brother	Revazi	is	a master.
17	*	გუშინ	დილას	რევაზი	იყო	თავის	სახელოსნოში.
	**	gushin	dilas	revazi	iqko	thavis	sakhelosnoshi.
	***	Yesterday	morning,	Revazi	was	in his	workshop.
18	*	სადამოს	ჩემს	მამასთან	იყო	მისი და	ლამარა.
	**	sagramos	chems	mamasthan	iqko	misi da	lamara.
	***	In the evening,	with my	father	was	his sister	Lamara.
19	*	ლამარა	არის	ექიმი.	ის არის	მტკიცე	ადამიანი.
	**	lamara	aris	eqimi.	is aris	mtkitse	adamiani.
	***	Lamara	is	a doctor.	She's	a solid	person.
20	*	გუშინ	დილას	ლამარა	იყო	მეზობლებში.	
	**	gushin	dilas	lamara	iqko	mezoblebshi.	
	***	Yesterday	morning	Lamara	was	among neighbors.	
21	*	სოფელში	ერთი	ჩვენი	მეზობელი	იყო	ცუდად.
	**	sopelshi	erthi	chveni	mezobeli	iqko	tsudad.
	***	In the village,	one of	our	neighbors	was	ill.

22	*	სოფელში	არის	სასტუმრო.	ჩვენ	ვიყავით	სასტუმროში.
	**	sopelshi	aris	sastumro.	chven	viqkavith	sastumroshi.
	***	In the village	there is	a hotel.	We	were	at the hotel.
23	*	სასტუმროში	იყვნენ	კობტა	და	მარდი	მოახლეები.
	**	sastumroshi	iqkvenen	kokhta	da	mardi	moakhleebi.
	***	At the hotel	there were	elegant	and	nimble	servants.
24	*	მათი	სამუშაო	იყო	სწრაფი	და	რთული.
	**	mathi	samushao	iqko	stzrapi	da	rthuli.
	***	Their	work	was	fast	and	complicated.
25	*	სოფელში	ჩვენი	ერთი	მეზობელი	არის	პარიკმახერი.
	**	sopelshi	chveni	erthi	mezobeli	aris	parikmakheri.
	***	In the village,	one of	our	neighbors	is	a hairdresser.
26	*	მე	ვიყავი	მის	საპარიკმახეროში	თავის	ბინაში.
	**	me	viqkavi	mis	sa-parikmakheroshi	thavis	binashi.
	***	I	was	at his	barber shop	in his	apartment.
27	*	მისი	სამუშაო	არ იყო	ადვილი.		
	**	misi	samushao	ar iqko	advili.		
	***	His	work	was not	easy.		
28	*	ჩემი	დედა და	ჩემი ცოლი	იყვნენ	სასოფლო	ბაზარში.
	**	chemi	deda da	chemi tsoli	iqkvenen	sasoplo	bazarshi.
	***	My	mother and	my wife	were	in the rural	market.
29	*	ბაზარში	უხვად	იყო	სურსათი:	ხორცი და	ხილი.
	**	bazarshi	ukhvad	iqko	sursathi:	khortsi da	khili.
	***	In the market	abundantly	was	the food:	meat and	fruit.
30	*	ბაზარში	ხორცი	იყო	ძვირი,	ხილი იყო	იაფი.
	**	bazarshi	khortsi	iqko	dzviri,	khili iqko	iapi.

	***	In the market,	meat	was	expensive,	fruits were	cheap.
31	*	მამასთან	ოჯახში	იყო	მხიარული	სადამო.	
	**	mamasthan	ojakhshi	iqko	mkhiaruli	sagramo.	
	***	With father	in family	it was	a gay	evening.	
32	*	მაგიდაზე	იყო პური,	ღვინო,	ყველი,	ხორცი და	თევზი.
	**	magidaze	iqko puri,	grvino,	qkveli,	khortsi da	thevzi.
	***	On the table	was bread,	wine,	cheese,	meat and	fish.
33	*	მაგიდასთან	ჩვენ ყველა	ვიყავით	მხიარულად	და	თავისუფლად.
	**	magidasthan	chven qkvela	viqkavith	mkhiarulad	da	thavisuplad.
	***	At the table	we all	were	fun	and	free.
34	*	ჩვენი	სტუმრები	იყვნენ	ამაყად	ჩემს	მამასთან.
	**	chveni	stumrebi	iqkvnen	amaqkad	chems	mamasthan.
	***	Our	guests	were	proud	with my	father.
35	*	ზოგიერთი	ჩვენი	სტუმარი	იყო	მელექსე.	
	**	zogierthi	chveni	stumari	iqko	meleqse.	
	***	Some of	our	guests	were	poets.	
36	*	სადამოს	სოფლური	ჰაერი	არ იყო	ცივი.	
	**	sagramos	sopluri	haeri	ar iqko	tsivi.	
	***	In the evening,	the rural	air	was not	cold.	
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

5) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

6) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written,

as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 167-172, "Supplement to Lesson No. 41" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

7) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 41
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. გუშინ მე და ჩემი ოჯახი ვიყავით სოფელში. 2. სოფელში ჩემს მშობლებთან მხიარული დღე იყო. 3. დილას მე ვიყავი ვენახში. მამა არის მევენახე და მეღვინე. 	

Group # 1	Lesson # 41
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. ვენახში უხვად იყო ტკბილი ყურძენი. 5. ჩემი ცოლი იყო ბოსტანში. ჩემი დედა არის მებოსტნე. 6. ბოსტანში უხვად იყო პამიდორი, კიტრი და ბადრიჯანი. 	

8) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-first lesson.

Lesson forty two

The Georgian linking verbs in the future tense

The content of the forty-second lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we will continue our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action "ყოფა" ("qkopa"), the synonym of which in English is the verb "Being". This time we will study the use of the word "ყოფა" ("qkopa") in the future tense."

2. "We already know that the main (original) form of the word "ყოფა" ("qkopa") is a verb in the third person of the present singular tense - "არის" ("aris"), the synonym of which in English is the word "is". In the third person of the future singular tense, instead of the verb "არის" ("aris"), the linking verb "იქნება" ("iqneba") is used, the English synonym of which is the verb "Will be". If we put the word "ის" ("is"), the personal pronoun familiar to us, before the verb "იქნება" ("iqneba"), then we get the affirmative phrase "ის იქნება" ("is iqneba"), the English synonyms of which are affirmative phrases "he/she/it will be". At the same time, it is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the personal pronoun of the third person in the singular (ის) replaces the Georgian noun in the nominative case of the singular time.

3. "In the third person plural of the past tense, the linking verb "იქნებიან" ("iqnebian") is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb "Will be". If before the verb "იქნებიან" ("iqnebian") we put the word "ისინი" ("isini"), a familiar personal pronoun in the third person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "ისინი იქნებიან" ("isini iqnebian"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "they will be". At the same time, it is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the personal pronoun of the third person in the plural (ისინი) replaces the Georgian noun in the nominative plural case.

4. "In the second person singular of the past tense, the linking verb "იქნები" ("iqnebi") is used. If before the verb "იქნები" ("iqnebi"), put the word "შენ" ("Shen"), a personal pronoun familiar to us, we will get the affirmative phrase "შენ იქნები" ("Shen iqnebi"), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "you will be".

5. "In the second person plural of the past tense, the linking verb "იქნებოთ" ("iqnebith") is used. If before the verb "იქნებოთ" ("iqnebith") we put the word "თქვენ" ("thqven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "თქვენ იქნებოთ" ("thqven iqnebith"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "you will be".

6. "In the first person singular of the past tense, the linking verb "ვიქნები" ("viqnebi") is used. If before the verb "ვიქნები" ("viqnebi"), put the word "მე" ("me"), a personal pronoun familiar to us, we will get an affirmative phrase "მე ვიქნები" ("me viqnebi"), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "I will be".

7. "In the first person plural of the past tense, the linking verb "ვიქნებოთ" ("viqnebith") is used. If before the verb "ვიქნებოთ" ("viqnebith") we put the word "ჩვენ" ("chven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "ჩვენ ვიქნებოთ" ("chven viqnebith"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "we will be".

8. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, "ის იქნება" ("is iqneba") → "იქნება ის?" (“iqneba is?”) and so on.”

9. “Negative phrases are formed by inserting in affirmative phrases the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the above-mentioned linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “ის იქნება” (“is iqneba”) → “ის არ იქნება” (“is ar iqneba”) and so on.”

Note: this lesson is based on materials from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 25-27, 34-35) and from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 17-19).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 44 on the big screen. The facilitator says: “Let's present the above phrases as the basic structure of the verbal name of the action “ყოფა” (“qkopa”) in all persons and in all numbers.”

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №44

The basic structure of the verb ყოფა (Being) in the future tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
Affirmative collocations										
Singular	*	ის	იქნება		შენ	იქნები		მე	ვიქნები	
	**	is	iqneba		shen	iqnebi		me	viqnebi	
Plural	*	ისინი	იქნებიან		თქვენ	იქნებით		ჩვენ	ვიქნებით	
	**	isini	iqnebian		thqven	iqnebith		chven	viqnebith	
* Words in Georgian language										
** English transliteration of Georgian words										
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)										
Singular		იქნება	ის?		იქნები	შენ?		ვიქნები	მე?	
Plural		იქნებიან	ისინი?		იქნებით	თქვენ?		ვიქნებით	ჩვენ?	

	Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]									
Singular		ის	არ იქნება		შენ	არ იქნები		მე	არ ვიქნები	
Plural		ისინი	არ იქნებიან		თქვენ	არ იქნებით		ჩვენ	არ ვიქნებით	

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb ყოფა (Being) in the future tense, the presenters address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the future tense using the above mentioned verbs. In this case, we will be helped by the stock of Georgian words that we have already learned in previous lessons, as well as the knowledge of those basic grammatical rules that we met in the course of these lessons. Also pay attention to the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon, dash). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous sentence.

4) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 45 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №45

Ordinal №		Georgian sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action "ყოფა" ("Being")					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	აგვისტოში	მე	და ჩემი	ოჯახი	ვიქნებით	ზღვაზე.
	**	agvistoshi	me	da chemi	ojakhi	viqnebith	zgrvaze.
	***	In August,	I	and my	family	will be	at sea.
2	*	ხვალ,	შაბათს,	მე	ვიქნები	საზღვაო	სასტუმროში.
	**	khval,	shabaths,	me	viqnebi	sazgrvao	sastumroshi.
	***	Tomorrow,	on Saturday,	I	will be	at the maritime	hotel.
3	*	კვირას	ჩემთან	იქნებიან	ჩემი	ცოლი და	ბავშვი.
	**	kviras	chemthan	iqnebian	chemi	tsoli da	bavshvi.
	***	On Sunday,	with me	will be	my	wife and	child.
4	*	ზღვაზე	ჩვენი	ერთი	თვე	იქნება	მხიარული.
	**	zgrvaze	chveni	erthi	thve	iqneba	mkhiaruli.
	***	At sea,	our	one	month	will be	fun.

5	*	ორშაბათს	მე და	ჩემი	ოჯახი	ვიქნებით	სანაპიროზე.
	**	orshabaths	me da	chemi	ojakhi	viqnebith	sanaπiroze.
	***	On Monday,	I and	my	family	will be	on the coast.
6	*	დილას	საზღვაო	სანაპირო	იქნება	ლამაზი.	
	**	dilas	sazgrvao	sanaπiro	iqneba	lamazi.	
	***	In the morning	the sea	coast	will be	beautiful.	
7	*	წყალი	ზღვაში	არ	იქნება	ცივი.	
	**	tzqkali	zgrvashi	ar	iqneba	tsivi.	
	***	Water	in the sea	will not	be	cold.	
8	*	შუადღეს	უზვად	იქნება	ხალხი	საზღვაო	სანაპიროზე.
	**	shuadgres	ukhvad	iqneba	khalkhi	sazgrvao	sanaπiroze.
	***	At noon,	abundantly	will be	people	on the sea	coast.
9	*	ასეთ დროს	ცურვა	და ყვინთვა	ზღვაში	არ იქნება	ადვილი.
	**	aseth dros	tsurva	da qkvintva	zgrvashi	ar iqneba	advili.
	***	At this time,	swimming	and diving	in the sea	will not be	easy.
10	*	აგვისტოში	სანაპიროსთან	იქნება	საზაფხულო	საბავშვო	ბანაკი.
	**	agvistoshi	sanaπirosthan	iqneba	sazapkhulo	sabavshvo	banaki.
	***	In August,	on the coast	there will be	a summer	children's	camp.
11	*	ერთი	კვირა	ჩვენი	ბავშვი	იქნება	ბანაკში.
	**	erthi	kvira	chveni	bavshvi	iqneba	banakshi.
	***	One	week	our	child	will be	in the camp.
12	*	ჩვენი ბავშვი	იქნება	ქართველ,	კიეველ	და მოსკოველ	ბავშვებთან.
	**	chveni bavshvi	iqneba	qarthvel,	kievel	da moskovvel	bavshvebthan.
	***	Our child	will be	with Georgian,	Kiev	and Moscow	children.
13	*	ზოგი	ბავშვი	იქნება	მარდი	და	სწრაფი.
	**	zogi	bavshvi	iqneba	mardi	da	stzrapl.

	***	Some	children	will be	nimble	and	quick.
14	*	ზოგი	ბავშვი	იქნება	მორცხვი	და	ფრთხილი.
	**	zogi	bavshvi	iqneba	mortskhvi	da	prthkhili.
	***	Some	children	will be	shy	and	cautious.
15	*	საბავშვო	ბანაკში	მათი	დრო	იქნება	ნაყოფიერი.
	**	sabavshvo	banakshi	mathi	dro	iqneba	naqkopieri.
	***	In the children's	camp	their	time	will be	fertile.
16	*	ერთ კვირაში	ჩვენთან	სასტუმროში	იქნებიან	ჩემი სიმამრი	და სიდედრი.
	**	erth kvirashi	chventhan	sastumroshi	iqnebian	chemi simamri	da sidedri.
	***	A week later,	with us	at the hotel	will be	my father-in-law	and mother-in-law.
17	*	საზღვაო	სანაპიროზე	ისინი	იქნებიან	ერთი საათი	დღეში.
	**	sazgrvao	sanapiroze	isini	iqnebian	erthi saathi	dgreshi.
	***	On the sea	coast,	they	will be	one hour	a day.
18	*	ჩემი	სიმამრი	არის	კარგი	მხატვარი.	
	**	chemi	simamri	aris	kargi	mkhatvari.	
	***	My	father-in-law	is	a good	artist.	
19	*	ხატვა	საზღვაო	სანაპიროსთან	იქნება	ადვილი.	
	**	khatva	sazgrvao	sanapirosthian	iqneba	advili.	
	***	Drawing	by the sea	coast	will be	easy.	
20	*	სანაპიროსთან	არის	ერთი	ლამაზი	სოფელი.	
	**	sanapirosthian	aris	erthi	lamazi	sopeli.	
	***	Off the coast	there is	one	beautiful	village.	
21	*	ჩვენ	ვიქნებით	სოფელში	ჩვენს	ნათესავეებთან.	
	**	chven	viqnebith	sopelshi	chvens	nathesavebthan.	
	***	We	will be	in the village	with our	relatives.	
	*	მათთან	უხვად	იქნება	საზამთრო,	ნესვი და	თხილი.

22	**	maththan	ukh vad	iqneba	sazamthro,	nesvi da	thkhili.
	***	With them	abundantly	will be	watermelons,	melons and	nuts.
23	*	ჩვენი	ნათესავები	არიან	კარგი	მეთევზეები.	
	**	chveni	nathesavebi	arian	kargi	methevzeebi.	
	***	Our	relatives	are	good	fishermen.	
24	*	მათ	მხარეში	უხვად	არის	თევზი	ზღვაში.
	**	math	mkhareshi	ukh vad	aris	thevzi	zgrvashi.
	***	In their	region	abundantly	is	fish	in the sea.
25	*	ზამთარში	მათთან	უხვად	იქნება	ფორთოხალი	და მანდარინი.
	**	zamtharshi	maththan	ukh vad	iqneba	porthokhali	da mandarini.
	***	In the winter	with them	abundantly	will be	oranges	and tangerines.
26	*	მათი	ფორთოხალი	და	მანდარინი	იქნება	ტკბილი.
	**	mathi	porthokhali	da	mandarini	iqneba	tkbili.
	***	Their	oranges	and	tangerines	will be	sweet.
27	*	ოქტომბერში	ჩვენი	ნათესავები	იქნებიან	ჩემს	მშობლებთან.
	**	oqtombersh	chveni	nathesavebi	iqnebian	chems	mshoblebthan.
	***	In October	our	relatives	will be	with my	parents.
28	*	ჩემს	მშობლებთან	სოფელში	უხვად იქნება	ყურძენი	და ღვინო.
	**	chems	mshoblebthan	sopelshi	ukh vad iqneba	qkurdzeni	da grvino.
	***	With my	parents	in the village	will be plenty of	grapes	and wine.
29	*	სოფელში	ისინი და	მათი	სტუმრები	იქნებიან	მხიარულად.
	**	sopelshi	isini da	mathi	stumrebi	iqnebian	mkhiarulad.
	***	In the village,	they and	their	guests	will have	fun.
30	*	ჩვენს	სოფელთან	არის	ტყე და	ვიწრო	მდინარე.
	**	chvens	sopelthan	aris	tqke da	vitzro	mdinare.
	***	With our	village	there is	a forest and	narrow	river.

31	*	ზაფხულში	ტყეში	უხვად	იქნება	ყვავილი	და სოკო.
	**	zapkhulshi	tqkeshi	ukh vad	iqneba	qkvavili	da soko.
	***	In the summer,	in the forest	abundantly	will be	flowers	and mushrooms.
32	*	საზღვაო	სანაპიროზე	უხვად	იქნება	სასადილოები.	
	**	sazgrvao	sanaπiroze	ukh vad	iqneba	sasadiloebi.	
	***	At the sea	coast	abundantly	will be	dining rooms.	
33	*	სასადილოებში	უხვად	იქნება	იაფი	სურსათი.	
	**	sasadiloebi	ukh vad	iqneba	iapi	sursathi.	
	***	In the dining rooms	abundantly	will be	cheap	food.	
34	*	საქართველოში	ზღვასთან	უხვად	არის	სოფელი და	ქალაქი.
	**	saqarthveloshi	zgrvasthan	ukh vad	aris	sopeli da	qalaqi.
	***	In Georgia,	at the seaside	abundantly	are	villages and	towns.
35	*	ზაფხულში	ამ	სოფლებში	და ქალაქებში	უხვად იქნებიან	სტუმრები.
	**	zapkhulshi	am	soplebshi	da qalaqebshi	ukh vad iqnebian	stumrebi.
	***	In summer	in these	villages	and towns	will be plenty of	guests.
36	*	ქართველ	მასპინძლებთან	სტუმრები	იქნებიან	მხიარულად.	
	**	qarthvel	masπindzlebthan	stumrebi	iqnebian	mkhiarulad.	
	***	With the Georgian	hosts	guests	will be	fun.	
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

5) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

6) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and

English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 173-178, "Supplement to Lesson No. 42" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

7) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 42
1. აგვისტოში მე და ჩემი ოჯახი ვიქნებით ზღვაზე. 2. ხვალ, შაბათს, მე ვიქნები საზღვაო სასტუმროში. 3. კვირას ჩემთან იქნებიან ჩემი ცოლი და ბავშვი.	

Group # 1	Lesson # 42
4. ზღვაზე ჩვენი ერთი თვე იქნება მხიარული. 5. ორშაბათს მე და ჩემი ოჯახი ვიქნებით სანაპიროზე. 6. დილას საზღვაო სანაპირო იქნება ლამაზი.	

8) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-second lesson.

Lesson forty three

The Georgian sentences about arithmetic operations with numbers

The content of the forty-third lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "I remind you that during lessons No. 32-38 we studied Georgian words for voicing numbers. On the other hand, during the previous lesson we learned the linking verb "იქნება" ("iqneba"), which is synonymous in English with the verb "Will be". This circumstance allows us to learn simple Georgian sentences regarding such simple arithmetic operations as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division."

2. "Before we get down to business, we must learn four Georgian words that are constantly used in such sentences. These words are shown in the following table #46".

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 21-23, 164) and from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 13-14).

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4 and 5 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №46

Ordinal №		Verbal action name	A word derived from the verbal action name	An alternative word that can replace a word in column 4
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მიმატებ-ა ¹	მიმატებ-ული ²	პლიუს
	**	mimateb-a	mimateb-uli	πlius
	***	Addition	Added	Plus
2	*	გამოკლებ-ა ¹	გამოკლებ-ული ²	მინუს
	**	gamokleb-a	gamokleb-uli	minus
	***	Subtraction	Subtracted	Minus

3	*	გამრავლებ-ა ¹	გამრავლებ-ული ²	
	**	gamravleb-a	gamravleb-uli	
	***	Multiplication	Multiplied	
4	*	გაყოფ-ა ¹	გაყოფ-ილი ²	
	**	gaqkop-a	gaqkop-ili	
	***	Division	Divided	
		* Words in Georgian language		
		** English transliteration of Georgian words		
		*** English synonyms of Georgian words		

¹ The vowel ending of the verbal action name

² The suffix replaces the vowel ending of the verbal action name

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 47 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted and learn the simple sentences that are so necessary and often used in Georgian speech to express arithmetic operations."

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №47

Ordinal №	Georgian proposals					
	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	*	ერთ-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	ერთ-ი ²	იქნება	ორ-ი ²
	**	erth-s	mimateb-uli	erth-i	iqneba	or-i
	***	One	plus	one	will be	two
2	*	ორ-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ერთ-ი ²	იქნება	ერთ-ი ²
	**	or-s	gamokleb-uli	erth-i	iqneba	erth-i
	***	Two	minus	one	will be	one
3		სამ-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	სამ-ზე ³	იქნება	ცხრა ²
		sam-i	gamravleb-uli	sam-ze	iqneba	tskhra

		Three	multiplied	by three	will be	nine
4		ოთხ-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	ორ-ი ²
		othkh-i	gaqkop-ili	or-ze	iqneba	or-i
		Four	divided	by two	will be	two
5		ხუთ-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	ორ-ი ²	იქნება	შვიდ-ი ²
		khuth-s	mimateb-uli	or-i	iqneba	shvid-i
		Five	plus	two	will be	seven
6		ექვს-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ორ-ი ²	იქნება	ოთხ-ი ²
		eqvs-s	gamokleb-uli	or-i	iqneba	othkh-i
		Six	minus	two	will be	four
7		ოთხ-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	რვა ²
		othkh-i	gamravleb-uli	or-ze	iqneba	rva
		Four	multiplied	by two	will be	eight
8		ცხრა ²	გაყოფ-ილი	სამ-ზე ³	იქნება	სამ-ი ²
		tskhra	gaqkop-ili	sam-ze	iqneba	sam-i
		Nine	divided	by three	will be	three
9		შვიდ-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	სამ-ი ²	იქნება	ათ-ი ²
		shvid-s	mimateb-uli	sam-i	iqneba	ath-i
		Seven	plus	three	will be	ten
10		ათ-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ოთხ-ი ²	იქნება	ექვს-ი ²
		ath-s	gamokleb-uli	othkh-i	iqneba	eqvs-i
		Ten	minus	four	will be	six
11		ხუთ-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	ათ-ი ²
		khuth-i	gamravleb-uli	or-ze	iqneba	ath-i
		Five	multiplied	by two	will be	ten
		ექვს-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	სამ-ზე ³	იქნება	ორ-ი ²

12		eqvs-i	gaqkop-ili	sam-ze	iqneba	or-i
		Six	divided	by three	will be	two
13		ოც-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	ოც-ი ²	იქნება	ორმოც-ი ²
		ots-s	mimateb-uli	ots-i	iqneba	ormots-i
		Twenty	plus	twenty	will be	forty
14		ორმოც-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ოც-ი ²	იქნება	ოც-ი ²
		ormots-s	gamokleb-uli	ots-i	iqneba	ots-i
		Forty	minus	twenty	will be	twenty
15		ათ-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ოთხ-ზე ³	იქნება	ორმოც-ი ²
		ath-i	gamravleb-uli	othkh-ze	iqneba	ormots-i
		Ten	multiplied	by four	will be	forty
16		ორმოც-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	ათ-ზე ³	იქნება	ოთხ-ი ²
		ormots-i	gaqkop-ili	ath-ze	iqneba	othkh-i
		Forty	divided	by ten	will be	four
17		ოც-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	ორმოც-ი ²	იქნება	სამოც-ი ²
		ots-s	mimateb-uli	ormots-i	iqneba	samots-i
		Twenty	plus	forty	will be	sixty
18		ორმოც-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ორმოც-ი ²	იქნება	ნულ-ი ²
		ormots-s	gamokleb-uli	ormots-i	iqneba	nul-i
		Forty	minus	forty	will be	null
19		ორ-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ორმოც-ზე ³	იქნება	ოთხმოც-ი ²
		or-i	gamravleb-uli	ormots-ze	iqneba	othkhmots-i
		Two	multiplied	by forty	will be	eighty
20		ოთხმოც-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	ოთხ-ზე ³	იქნება	ოც-ი ²
		othkhmots-i	gaqkop-ili	othkh-ze	iqneba	ots-i
		Eighty	divided	by four	will be	twenty

21		ორმოც-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	სამოც-ი ²	იქნება	ას-ი ²
		ormots-s	mimateb-uli	samots-i	iqneba	as-i
		Forty	plus	sixty	will be	hundred
22		სამოც-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ორმოც-ი ²	იქნება	ოც-ი ²
		samots-s	gamokleb-uli	ormots-i	iqneba	ots-i
		Sixty	minus	forty	will be	twenty
23		სამოც-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	ას ოც-ი ²
		samots-i	gamravleb-uli	or-ze	iqneba	as ots-i
		Sixty	multiplied	by two	will be	hundred twenty
24		ორას-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	ას-ი ²
		oras-i	gaqkop-ili	or-ze	iqneba	as-i
		Two hundred	divided	by two	will be	one hundred
25		ორას-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	სამას-ი ²	იქნება	ხუთას-ი ²
		oras-s	mimateb-uli	samas-i	iqneba	khuthas-i
		Two hundred	plus	three hundred	will be	five hundred
26		ექვსას-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ორას-ი ²	იქნება	ოთხას-ი ²
		eqvsas-s	gamokleb-uli	oras-i	iqneba	othkhas-i
		Six hundred	minus	two hundred	will be	four hundred
27		სამას-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	სამ-ზე ³	იქნება	ცხრაას-ი ²
		samas-i	gamravleb-uli	sam-ze	iqneba	tskhraas-i
		Three hundred	multiplied	by three	will be	nine hundred
28		ათას-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	ხუთ-ზე ³	იქნება	ორას-ი ²
		athas-i	gaqkop-ili	khuth-ze	iqneba	oras-i
		Thousand	divided	by five	will be	two hundred
29		შვიდას-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	ორას-ი ²	იქნება	ცხრაას-ი ²
		shvidas-s	mimateb-uli	oras-i	iqneba	tskhraas-i

		Seven hundred	plus	two hundred	will be	nine hundred
30		ათას-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ექვსას-ი ²	იქნება	ოთხას-ი ²
		athas-s	gamokleb-uli	eqvsas-i	iqneba	othkhas-i
		One thousand	minus	six hundred	will be	four hundred
31		ოთხას-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	რვაას-ი ²
		othkhas-i	gamravleb-uli	or-ze	iqneba	rvaas-i
		Four hundred	multiplied	by two	will be	eight hundred
32		ცხრაას-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	სამას-ზე ³	იქნება	სამ-ი ²
		tskhraas-i	gaqkop-ili	samas-ze	iqneba	sam-i
		Nine hundred	divided	by three hundred	will be	three
33		რვაას-ს ¹	მიმატებ-ული	ორას-ი ²	იქნება	ათას-ი ²
		rvaas-s	mimateb-uli	oras-i	iqneba	athas-i
		Eight hundred	plus	two hundred	will be	one thousand
34		ცხრაას-ს ¹	გამოკლებ-ული	ოთხას-ი ²	იქნება	ხუთას-ი ²
		tskhraas-s	gamokleb-uli	othkhas-i	iqneba	khuthas-i
		Nine hundred	minus	four hundred	will be	five hundred
35		შვიდას-ი ²	გამრავლებ-ული	ორ-ზე ³	იქნება	ათას ორმოც-ი ²
		shvidas-i	gamravleb-uli	or-ze	iqneba	athas ormots-i
		Seven hundred	multiplied	by two	will be	thousand forty
36		ხუთას-ი ²	გაყოფ-ილი	ას-ზე ³	იქნება	ხუთ-ი ²
		khuthas-i	gaqkop-ili	as-ze	iqneba	khuth-i
		Five hundred	divided	by hundred	will be	five
		* Words in Georgian language				
		** English transliteration of Georgian words				
		*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

- ¹ Quantitative word in the dative case
- ² Quantitative word in the nominative case
- ³ Quantitative word in the dative case with postposition -ზე (-ze)

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 179-184, "Supplement to Lesson No. 43" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 43
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. ერთს მიმატებული ერთი იქნება ორი. 2. ორს გამოკლებული ერთი იქნება ერთი. 3. სამი გამრავლებული სამზე იქნება ცხრა. 	

Group # 1	Lesson # 43
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. ოთხი გაყოფილი ორზე იქნება ორი. 5. ხუთს მიმატებული ორი იქნება შვიდი. 6. ექვს გამოკლებული ორი იქნება ოთხი. 	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-third lesson.

Lesson forty four

The Georgian linking verbs in interrogative sentences

The content of the forty-fourth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we have to complete the classes with different forms of the verbal action name "ყოფა" ("qkopa"). In previous lessons, we got acquainted with these forms in affirmative and, occasionally, in negative sentences. This time we should pay attention to interrogative sentences in all grammatical tenses".

2. "In interrogative sentences, we use part of those interrogative pronouns that we learned during the twenty-fourth lesson."

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 25-27, 34-35) and from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 17-19).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 48 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's learn interrogative sentences using various forms of the verbal name of the action "ყოფა" ("qkopa") in all grammatical tenses. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent interrogative sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one".

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №48

Ordinal №		Interrogative sentences using different forms of verbal action name «ყოფა» ("qkopa") in all grammatical tenses					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	ვინ	არის	ის	მხიარული	კაცი?	
	**	vin	aris	is	mkhiaruli	katsi?	
	***	Who	is	that	funny	man?	
2	*	რა	ღვინო	არის	თქვენს	მაგიდაზე?	
	**	ra	grvino	aris	thqvens	magidaze?	
	***	What kind of	wine	is	on your	table?	

3	*	როგორი	მინისტრები	არიან	ჩვენს	მთავრობაში?	
	**	rogori	ministrebi	arian	chvens	mthavrobashi?	
	***	What	ministers	are	in our	government?	
4	*	შენი	რომელი	სტუმარი	არის	ამერიკელი?	
	**	sheni	romeli	stumari	aris	amerikeli?	
	***	Your	which	guest	is	an American?	
5	*	რამდენი	მდინარე	არის	თქვენს	სახელმწიფოში?	
	**	ramdeni	mdinare	aris	thqvens	sakhelmtziposhi?	
	***	How many	ivers	are there	in your	state?	
6	*	სადაური	არის	შენი	რძალი?		
	**	sadauri	aris	sheni	rdzali?		
	***	Where	is	your	daughter-in-law from?		
7	*	ვისი	არის	ეგ	მძიმე	ბარგი?	
	**	visi	aris	eg	mdzime	bargi?	
	***	Whose	is	this	heavy	load?	
8	*	არის	შენი	ნაცნობი	ვაჭარი	ხარბი	ადამიანი?
	**	aris	sheni	natsnobi	vatchari	kharbi	adamiani?
	***	Is	your	familiar	trader	a greedy	man?
9	*	არიან	თქვენი	მშობლები	თავისთან ¹	სოფელში?	
	**	arian	thqveni	mshoblebi	thavisthan	sopelshi?	
	***	Are	your	parents	in their own	village?	
10	*	რომელ ¹	საქალაქო	საავადმყოფოში	არის	შენი	ბებია?
	**	romel	saqalaqo	saavadmqkoposhi	aris	sheni	bebia?
	***	In which	city	hospital	is	your	grandmother?
11	*	რამდენი	ლექსი	არის	შენს	წიგნში?	
	**	ramdeni	leqsi	aris	shens	tzignshi?	

	***	How many	poems	are	in your	book?	
12	*	როგორ	არის	შენი	ავადმყოფი	მამა?	
	**	rogor	aris	sheni	avadmqkopi	mama?	
	***	How	is	your	sick	father?	
13	*	ვინ	იყო	შენს	ბინაში	გუშინ?	
	**	vin	iqko	shens	binashi	gushin?	
	***	Who	was	at your	apartment	yesterday?	
14	*	რა	სამუშაო	იყო	თქვენს ¹	საავადმყოფოში	გუშინ?
	**	ra	samushao	iqko	thqvens	saavadmqkoposhi	gushin?
	***	What kind of	work	was	in your	hospital	yesterday?
15	*	როგორი	ქორწილი	იყო	გუშინ	იმათ ¹	სოფელში?
	**	rogori	qortzili	iqko	gushin	imath	sopelshi?
	***	What	wedding	was	yesterday	in their	village?
16	*	გუშინ	რომელი	ნათესავი	იყო	ცუდად?	
	**	gushin	romeli	nathesavi	iqko	tsudad?	
	***	Yesterday,	which	relative	was	ill?	
17	*	რამდენი	მგზავრი	იყო	იმათ ¹	მანქანაში?	
	**	ramdeni	mgzavri	iqko	imath	manqanashi?	
	***	How many	passengers	were	in their	car?	
18	*	სადაური	იყო	თქვენი	მხიარული	სტუმარი?	
	**	sadauri	iqko	thqveni	mkhiaruli	stumari?	
	***	Where	was	your	gay	guest from?	
19	*	ვისი	იყო	ის	კობტა	ტანსაცმელი?	
	**	visi	iqko	is	kokhta	tansatsmeli?	
	***	Whose	was	that	elegant	clothes?	
	*	რა	ხანძარი	იყო	ჩვენს ¹	ტყეში?	

20	**	ra	khandzari	iqko	chvens	tqkeshi?	
	***	What kind of	fire	was	in our	forest?	
21	*	გუშინ	იყვნენ	თქვენი	ბავშვები	საბავშვო	ბაღში?
	**	gushin	iqvnen	thqveni	bavshvebi	sabavshvo	bagrshi?
	***	Yesterday,	were	your	children	in kindergarten?	
22	*	რამდენი	მანქანა	იყო	იმ ვიწრო	გზაზე?	
	**	ramdeni	manqana	iqko	im vitzro	gzaze?	
	***	How many	cars	were	on that narrow	road?	
23	*	რომელ ¹	სასტუმროში	იყვნენ	ჩვენი	ამერიკელი	სტუმრები?
	**	romel	sastumroshi	iqvnen	chveni	amerikeli	stumrebi?
	***	In which	hotel	were	our	American	guests?
24	*	ვისთან	იყვნენ	თქვენი	ექიმები	გუშინ	დილას?
	**	visthan	iqvnen	thqveni	eqimebi	gushin	dilas?
	***	With whom	were	your	doctors	yesterday	morning?
25	*	ვინ	იქნება	მზარეული	იმათ ¹	სასტუმროში?	
	**	vin	iqneba	mzareuli	imath	sastumroshi?	
	***	Who	will be	cook	in their	hotel?	
26	*	რა	სტუმრები	იქნებიან	შენთან	ხვალ	სადამოს?
	**	ra	stumrebi	iqnebian	shenthan	khval	sagramos?
	***	What kind of	guests	will be	with you	tomorrow	night?
27	*	როგორი	დურგალი	იქნება	შენი	ამხანაგი?	
	**	rogori	durgali	iqneba	sheni	amkhanagi?	
	***	What	carpenter	will	your	friend be?	
28	*	რომელ ¹	საავადმყოფოში	იქნება	მისი	დედა?	
	**	romel	saavadmqkoposhi	iqneba	misi	deda?	
	***	In what	hospital	will	her	mother be?	

29	*	რამდენი	სტუმარი	იქნება	შენთან	ბინაში?	
	**	ramdeni	stumari	iqneba	shenthan	binashi?	
	***	How many	guests	will be	in your	apartment?	
30	*	იქნება	ეს	ამხანაგი	ჩვენი	მინისტრი?	
	**	iqneba	es	amkhanagi	chveni	ministri?	
	***	Will	this	comrade be	our	minister?	
31	*	ვისი	იქნება	ის	სწრაფი	ცხენი?	
	**	visi	iqneba	is	stzrapi	tskheni?	
	***	Whose	will be	that	fast	horse?	
32	*	იქნებით	თქვენ	სასოფლო	ბაზარში	ხვალ?	
	**	iqnebith	thqven	sasoplo	bazarshi	khval?	
	***	Will	you be	in the rural	market	tomorrow?	
33	*	იქნებიან	ის და	მისი	მეგობრები	ზღვაზე	ზაფხულში?
	**	iqnebian	is da	misi	megobrebi	zgrvaze	zapkhulshi?
	***	Will	he and	his	friends be	at sea	in the summer?
34	*	იქნები	შენ	ჩვენთან	სოფელში	შემოდგომაზე?	
	**	iqnebi	shen	chventhan	sopelshi	shemodgomaze?	
	***	Will	you be	with us	in village	in the fall?	
35	*	ვისთან	იქნებიან	თქვენი	ბავშვები	კვირას?	
	**	visthan	iqnebian	thqveni	bavshvebi	kviras?	
	***	With whom	will	your	children be	on Sunday?	
36	*	რომელ ¹	ექიმთან	იქნება	შენი	ცოლი	ხვალ?
	**	romel	eqimthan	iqneba	sheni	tsoli	khval?
	***	With which	doctor	will	your	wife be	tomorrow?
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							

¹ The possessive pronoun in the same case as the noun following it - that is, in the dative case.

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 185-190, "Supplement to Lesson No. 44" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 44
1. ვინ არის ის მხიარული კაცი? 2. რა ღვინო არის თქვენს მაგიდაზე? 3. როგორი მინისტრები არიან ჩვენს მთავრობაში?	

Group # 1	Lesson # 44
4. შენი რომელი სტუმარი არის ამერიკელი? 5. რამდენი მდინარე არის თქვენს სახელმწიფოში? 6. სადაური არის შენი რძალი?	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-fourth lesson.

Lesson forty five

The Georgian verbs in present tense

The content of the forty-fifth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “We have already completed our acquaintance with the different forms of the verbal name of the action “ყოფა” (“qkopa”) in affirmative, interrogative and negative sentences. In exactly the same way, today we must begin the study of all forms of the verbal name of the action “ყოლა” (“qkola”), whose synonym in English is the word “to have someone.” This verbal name of action is applicable to words that designate animate persons”.

2. “We remind you that the Georgian language expresses the belonging of an animate or inanimate “object” with different verbs. From the point of view of Georgian grammar, an “animate” is an “object” that has a soul and moves with the help of its own power. Such objects include a person, an animal, a bird, a fish, an insect. From the point of view of Georgian grammar, inanimate is an “object” that has no soul. Such objects include a tree, a stone, a river, the moon, a house, a garden, a field”.

3. “We already know that there is no infinitive (an indefinite form of a verb) in the Georgian language. Its place is replaced by the Georgian verbal name of the action, and its main (original) form is the verb in the third person of the singular number of the present tense”.

4. “As the main (initial) form of the word “ყოლა” (“qkola” or “to have an animate object”), the linking verb “ჰყავს” (“hqkavs”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “Has someone”.

5. “During the study of the main (original) form of the Georgian verbal action name “ყოფა” (“Being”), we used the familiar word “ის” (“is”), a personal pronoun in the third person singular in the nominative case, the English synonym of which are “he”, “she” or “it”. In the case of the verb “ჰყავს” (“He/she/it has someone”), the word “მას” (“mas”) should be used, which replaces the personal pronoun ის (is) in the dative case. If we put the word “მას” (“mas”) before the verb “ჰყავს” (“hqkavs”), then we get the affirmative phrase “მას ჰყავს” (“mas hqkavs”), the English synonym for which is the affirmative phrase “he (she, it) has someone.” It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word “მას” (“mas”), a personal pronoun of the third person in the singular, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case.”

6. “In the third person plural of the present tense, the linking verb “ჰყავთ” (“hqkavth”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “They have someone”. If we put the word “მათ” (“math”) before the verb “ჰყავთ” (“hqkavth”), which replaces the personal pronoun ისინი (isini) in the dative case, then we get the affirmative phrase “მათ ჰყავთ” (“math hqkavth”), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase “They have someone”. It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word “მათ” (“math”), a personal pronoun of the third person in the plural, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case.”

7. “In the second person singular of the present tense, the linking verb “გყავს” (“gqkavs”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “You have someone”. If we put the word “შენ” (“shen”), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person singular, before the verb “გყავს” (“gqkavs”), then we get the affirmative phrase “შენ გყავს” (“shen gqkavs”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase “you have someone.”

8. “In the second person plural of the present tense, the linking verb “გყავთ” (“gqkavth”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “You have someone”. If before the verb “გყავთ” (“gqkavth”) we put the word “თქვენ” (“thqven”), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase “თქვენ გყავთ” (“thqven gqkavth”), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "you have someone."

9. “In the first person singular of the present tense, the linking verb “მყავს” (“mqkavs”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “I have someone”. If we put the word “მე” (“me”) before the verb “მყავს” (“mqkavs”), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, then we get the affirmative phrase “მე მყავს” (“me mqkavs”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "I have someone."

10. “In the first person plural of the present tense, the linking verb “გვყავს” (“gvqkavs”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb “We have someone”. If before the verb “გვყავს” (“gvqkavs”) we put the word “ჩვენ” (“chven”), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get the affirmative phrase “ჩვენ გვყავს” (“chven gvqkavs”), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "we have someone."

11. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, "მას ჰყავს" ("mas hqkavs") → "ჰყავს მას?" ("hqkavs mas?") and so on.”

12. “Negative phrases are formed by inserting in affirmative phrases the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the above-mentioned linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “მას ჰყავს” (“mas hqkavs”) → “მას არ ჰყავს” (“mas ar hqkavs”) and so on.”

Note: this lesson is compiled on the basis of materials from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Georgian language" (author G.I. Tsibakhashvili, pages 33-35) and from the "Self-tutoring manual of the Russian and Georgian languages" (author S. Mdivanov, pages 17-19).

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 49 on the big screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted and learn the above forms of the verbal name of the action ყოლა (qkola) in the present tense using already familiar personal pronouns."

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №49

The basic structure of the verb ყოლა (have someone) in the present tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		3	4		5	6		7	8	
		Affirmative collocations								
	*	მას	ჰყავს	*	მე	გყავს	*	მე	მყავს	

Singular	**	mas	hqvavs	**	shen	gqvavs	**	me	mqqvavs
	***	He, she	has	***	You	have	***	I	have
Plural	*	მათ	ჰყავთ	*	თქვენ	გყავთ	*	ჩვენ	გვყავს
	**	math	hqqvavth	**	thqven	gqvavth	**	chven	gvqvavs
	***	They	have	***	You	have	***	We	have
* Words in Georgian language									
** English transliteration of Georgian words									
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)									
Singular		ჰყავს	მას?		გყავს	შენ?		მყავს	მე?
Plural		ჰყავთ	მათ?		გყავთ	თქვენ?		გვყავს	ჩვენ?
Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]									
Singular		მას	არ ჰყავს		შენ	არ გყავს		მე	არ მყავს
Plural		მათ	არ ჰყავთ		თქვენ	არ გყავთ		ჩვენ	არ გვყავს

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb ყოლა (have someone) in the present tense, the trainers address the audience with the following words: “Now we will be able to construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the present tense using the above verbs. These sentences will also use many of the Georgian words we have already learned in previous lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 50 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №50

Ordinal №	Georgian affirmative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action ყოლა (have someone)						
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	მე	ვარ	ოცდახუთი	წლის ¹	ახალგაზრდა	კაცი.
	**	me	var	otsdakhuthi	tzlis	akhalgazrda	katsi.

	***	I	am	twenty five	year-old	young	man.
2	*	მე	მყავს	ცოლი,	რომელიც	არის ოცდაორი	წლის ¹ .
	**	me	mqkavs	tsoli,	romelits	aris otsdaori	tzlis.
	***	I	have	a wife	who	is twenty two	years old.
3	*	ჩვენ	გვყავს	ბავშვი,	რომელიც	არის ოთხი	წლის ¹ .
	**	chven	gvqkavs	bavshvi,	romelits	aris othkhi	tzlis.
	***	We	have	a child	who	is four	years old.
4	*	სოფელში	მე მყავს	მამა,	რომელიც არის	ორმოცდაათი	წლის ¹ .
	**	sopelshi	me mqkavs	mama,	romelits aris	ormotsdaathi	tzlis.
	***	In the village	I have	a father	who	is fifty	years old.
5	*	ჩემი	დედა	არის	ორმოცდაოთხი	წლის ¹	ქალი.
	**	chemi	deda	aris	ormotsdaothkhi	tzlis	qali.
	***	My	mother	is	forty-four years old		woman.
6	*	სოფელში	ჩემს ²	მშობლებს	ჰყავთ	საქონელი და	ფრინველი.
	**	sopelshi	chems	mshoblebs	hqkavth	saqoneli da	prinveli.
	***	In the village,	my	parents	have	cattle and	poultry.
7	*	ჩემი	მამა	არის კარგი	მეცხენე	და	მეცხოველე.
	**	chemi	mama	aris kargi	metskhene	da	metskhovele.
	***	My	father	is a good	horse breeder	and	cattle breeder.
8	*	მას	ჰყავს	ორი ცხენი,	სამი ხარი	და ათი	ძროხა.
	**	mas	hqkavs	ori tskheni,	sami khari	da athi	dzrokha.
	***	He	has	two horses,	three bulls	and ten	cows.
9	*	ჩემი	დედა	არის კარგი	მეღორე	და	მეფრინველე.
	**	chemi	deda	aris kargi	megrone	da	meprinvele.
	***	My	mother	is a good	pig breeder	and	poultry breeder.
	*	მას	ჰყავს	ათი	ღორი და	ოცდახუთი	ქათამი.

10	**	mas	hqkavs	athi	gori da	otsdakhuthi	qathami.
	***	She	has	ten	pigs and	twenty five	hens.
11	*	სოფელში	ჩემს ²	მშობლებს	ჰყავთ	ნათესავეები და	ნაცნობები.
	**	sopelshi	chems	mshoblebs	hqkavth	nathesavebi da	natsnobei.
	***	In the village,	my	parents	have	relatives and	acquaintances.
12	*	ჩემს ²	ცოლს	ჰყავს	ორმოცი	წლის	მამა.
	**	chems	tsols	hqkavs	ormotsi	tzlis	mama.
	***	My	wife	has	a forty-year-old		father.
13	*	ჩემს ²	სიმამრს	ჰყავს	ოცდაწვიდმეტი	წლის	ცოლი.
	**	chems	simamrs	hqkavs	otsdachvidmeti	tzlis	tsoli.
	***	My	father-in-law	has	a thirty-seven year old		wife.
14	*	ჩემს ²	ერთ	მეგობარს	ჰყავს	ერთი ბიჭი და	ორი გოგო.
	**	chems	erth	megobars	hqkavs	erthi bitchi da	ori gogo.
	***	My	one	friend	has	one boy and	two girls.
15	*	ჩემს ²	სიმამრს	უხვად	ჰყავს	საინტერესო	მეგობრები.
	**	chems	simamrs	ukhvad	hqkavs	saintereso	megobrebi.
	***	My	father-in-law	has an abundance of		interesting	friends.
16	*	ისინი	არიან	კარგი	მხატვრები	და	მელექსეები.
	**	isini	arian	kargi	mkhatvrebi	da	meleqseebi.
	***	They	are	good	artists	and	poets.
17	*	თავის ²	საავადმყოფოში	ჩემს ²	ცოლს	ჰყავს მძიმე	ავადმყოფები.
	**	thavis	saavadmqkoposhi	chems	tsols	hqkavs mdzime	avadmqkopebi.
	***	In her	hospital,	my	wife	has seriously ill	patients.
18	*	საავადმყოფოში	თითოეულ	ავადმყოფს	ჰყავს	თავისი	მოახლე.
	**	saavadmqkoposhi	thithoeul	avadmqkops	hqkavs	thavisi	moakhle.
	***	In the hospital,	every	patient	has	own	maid.

19	*	ზოგიერთ	ავადმყოფს	არ ჰყავს	რომელიმე	ახლობელი	ადამიანი.
	**	zogierth	avadmqkops	ar hqkavs	romelime	akhlobeli	adamiani.
	***	Some	patients	do not have	someone	close to them	person.
20	*	მე	უხვად	მყავს	მეგობარი	ჩემს	ქალაქში.
	**	me	ukhvad	mqkavs	megobari	chems	qalaqshi.
	***	I	have an abundance of	friends	in my	city.	
21	*	თითოეულ	ჩემს ²	მეგობარს	ჰყავს	ლამაზი	ოჯახი.
	**	thithoeul	chems	megobars	hqkavs	lamazi	ojakhi.
	***	Each	my	friend	has	a beautiful	family.
22	*	მე	მყავს	მრავალი	მეგობარი	ზოგიერთ	სამინისტროში.
	**	me	Mqkavs	mravali	megobari	zogierth	saministroshi.
	***	I	Have	many	friends	in the some	ministries.
23	*	მე და	ჩემს ²	ცოლს	გვყვავს	კარგი	მეზობლები.
	**	me da	chems	tsols	gvqkvavas	kargi	mezoblebi.
	***	I and	my	wife	have	good	neighbors.
24	*	შენს ²	ბიჭს	ჰყავს	კობტა	საცოლო.	
	**	shens	bitchs	hqkavs	kokhta	satsolo.	
	***	Your	son	has	an elegant	bride.	
25	*	ჩვენს ²	სამინისტროს	არ ჰყავს	ცუდი	მინისტრი.	
	**	chvens	saministros	ar hqkavs	tsudi	ministri.	
	***	Our	ministry	does not have	a bad	minister.	
26	*	ჩემს ²	სოფელში	მე	მყავს	სწრაფი	ცხენები.
	**	chems	sopelshi	me	mqkavs	stzrapi	tskhenebi.
	***	In my	village	I	have	fast	horses.
27	*	თავის ²	ბინაში	მას	ჰყავს	საშინელი	კატა.
	**	thavis	binashi	mas	hqkavs	sashineli	kata.

	***	In her	apartment	she	has	a terrible	cat.
28	*	მე და	ჩემს ²	ცოლს	გვყავს	ამაყი	მშობლები.
	**	me da	chems	tsols	gvqkvavs	amaqki	mshoblebi.
	***	I and	my	wife	have	proud	parents.
29	*	შენს ²	დას	ჰყავს	ზანტი	და ჯიუტი	ბავშვი.
	**	shens	das	hqkavs	zanti	da jiuti	bavshvi.
	***	Your	sister	has	a lazy	and stubborn	child.
30	*	თქვენს ²	სავაჭრო	სააგენტოს	არ ჰყავს	ხარბი	მმართველი.
	**	thqvens	savatchro	saagentos	ar hqkavs	kharbi	mmarthveli.
	***	Your	sales	agency	does not have	a greedy	manager.
31	*	სახელმწიფოს	თავის ²	საზღვრებზე	ჰყავს	ფრთხილი	მესაზღვრეები.
	**	sakhelmtzipos	thavis	sazgrvrebze	hqkavs	prthkhili	mesazgrvreebi.
	***	The state	on its	borders	has	vigilant	border guards
32	*	ჩვენს ²	ზოგიერთ	მეზობელს	ჰყავს	იშვიათი	ცხოველი.
	**	chvens	zogiერთ	mezobels	hqkavs	ishviathi	tskhoveli.
	***	Our	some	neighbors	have	rare	animals.
33	*	ინდოეთში	ჩემს ²	ნაცნობებს	ჰყავთ	გველები და	ნიანგები.
	**	indoethshi	chems	natsnobebs	hqkavth	gvelebi da	niangebi.
	***	In India,	my	acquaintances	have	snakes and	crocodiles.
34	*	საქართველოში	თითოეულ	რაიონს	ჰყავს	თავისი	მმართველი.
	**	saqarthveloshi	thithoeul	raions	hqkavs	thavisi	mmarthveli.
	***	In Georgia,	each	district	has	its own	manager.
35	*	კავკასიაში	ყოველ	ხალხს	ჰყავს	თავისი	გმირები.
	**	kavkasiashi	qkovel	khalkhs	hqkavs	thavisi	gmirebi.
	***	In the Caucasus,	every	nation	has	its own	heroes.
	*	ჩვენს	ეკლესიას	ჰყავს	მტკიცე	და ამაყი	ადამიანები.

36	**	chvens	eklesias	hqkavs	mtkitse	da amaqki	adamianebi.
	***	Our	church	has	solid	and proud	people.
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

¹ The noun in the genitive case.

² The possessive pronoun in the same case as the noun following it - that is, in the dative case.

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 191-196, "Supplement to Lesson No. 45" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 45
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. მე ვარ ოცდახუთი წლის ახალგაზრდა კაცი. 2. მე მყავს ცოლი, რომელიც არის ოცდაორი წლის. 3. ჩვენ გყავს ბავშვი, რომელიც არის ოთხი წლის. 	

Group # 1	Lesson # 45
-----------	-------------

4. სოფელში მე მყავს მამა, რომელიც არის ორმოცდაათი წლის.

5. ჩემი დედა არის ორმოცდაოთხი წლის ქალი.

6. სოფელში ჩემს მშობლებს ჰყავთ საქონელი და ფრინველი.

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-fifth lesson.

Lesson forty six

The Georgian verbs in the past tense

The content of the forty-sixth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator reminds the audience of the following:

1. "Today we will continue our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action "ყოლა" ("qkola"), which is synonymous in English with the word "Have someone". This time we will study the use of the word "ყოლა" ("qkola") in the past tense."

2. "We already know that the main (initial) form of the word "ყოლა" ("qkola") is a verb in the third person of the singular present tense - "ჰყავს" ("hqkavs"), the synonym of which in English is the verb "Has someone." In the third person of the singular past tense, instead of the word "ჰყავს" ("hqkavs"), the linking verb "ჰყავდა" ("hqkavda") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "had someone". If we put the word "მას" ("mas"), which replaces the personal pronoun ის (is) in the dative case, before the verb "ჰყავდა" ("hqkavda"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მას ჰყავდა" ("mas hqkavda"). Its English synonym is the affirmative phrase "he (she, it) had someone." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მას" ("mas"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the singular, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case."

3. "In the third person plural of the past tense, the linking verb "ჰყავდათ" ("hqkavdath") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Had someone". If we put the word "მათ" ("math"), which replaces the personal pronoun ისინი (isini) in the dative case, before the verb "ჰყავდათ" ("hqkavdath"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მათ ჰყავდათ" ("math hqkavdath"), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "they had someone." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მათ" ("math"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the plural, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case of the plural."

4. "In the second person of the singular past tense, the linking verb "გყავდა" ("gqkavda") is used. If we put the word "შენ" ("shen"), the familiar personal pronoun in the second person singular, before the verb "გყავდა" ("gqkavda"), then we get the affirmative phrase "შენ გყავდა" ("shen gqkavda"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "you had someone."

5. "In the second person of the plural past tense, the linking verb "გყავდათ" ("gqkavdath") is used. If before the verb "გყავდათ" ("gqkavdath") we put the word "თქვენ" ("thqven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "თქვენ გყავდათ" ("thqven gqkavdath"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "you had someone."

6. "In the first person of the singular past tense, the linking verb "მყავდა" ("mqkavda") is used. If we put the word "მე" ("me"), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, before the verb "მყავდა" ("mqkavda"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მე მყავდა" ("me mqkavda"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "I had someone."

7. "In the first person of the plural past tense, the linking verb "გვყავდა" ("gvqkavda") is used. If before the verb "გვყავდა" ("gvqkavda") we put the word "ჩვენ" ("chven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get

the affirmative phrase “ჩვენ გყავდა” (“chven gvqkavda”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "we had someone."

8. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, "მას ჰყავდა" ("mas hqkavda") → "ჰყავდა მას?" ("hqkavda mas?") and so on.”

9. “Negative phrases are formed by inserting in affirmative phrases the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the above-mentioned linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “მას ჰყავდა” (“mas hqkavda”) → “მას არ ჰყავდა” (“mas ar hqkavda”) and so on.”

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 51 on the big screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted and learn the above forms of the verbal name of the action ყოლა (qkola) in the past tense using already familiar personal pronouns."

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №51

The basic structure of the verb ყოლა (Has someone) in the past tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Affirmative collocations										
Singular	*	მას	ჰყავდა	*	შენ	გყავდა	*	მე	მყავდა	
	**	mas	hqkavda	**	shen	gvqkavda	**	me	mqkavda	
Plural	*	მათ	ჰყავდათ	*	თქვენ	გყავდათ	*	ჩვენ	გვყავდა	
	**	math	hqkavdath	**	thqven	gvqkavdath	**	chven	gvqkavda	
* Words in Georgian language										
** English transliteration of Georgian words										
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)										
Singular		ჰყავდა	მას?		გყავდა	შენ?		მყავდა	მე?	
Plural		ჰყავდათ	მათ?		გყავდათ	თქვენ?		გვყავდა	ჩვენ?	
Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal										

pronouns and link-verbs]										
Singular		მას	არ ჰყავდა		შენ	არ გყავდა		მე	არ მყავდა	
Plural		მათ	არ ჰყავდათ		თქვენ	არ გყავდათ		ჩვენ	არ გვყავდა	

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb ყოლა (Have someone) in the past tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the past tense using the above verbs. These sentences will also use many of the Georgian words we have already learned in previous lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

4) Next, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 52 on the big screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №52

Ordinal №		Georgian affirmative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action ყოლა (Have someone)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	სამი	დღის	წინ	მე მყავდა	ბრიტანელი	სტუმარი.
	**	sami	dgris	tzin	me mqkavda	britaneli	stumari.
	***	Three	days	ago	I had	the British	guest.
2	*	შაბათს	შენ გყავდა	კარგი	ადამიანები	შენს	ბინაში.
	**	shabaths	shen gqkavda	kargi	adamianebi	shens	binashi.
	***	On Saturday,	you had	good	people	in your	apartment.
3	*	გუშინ	მას	ჰყავდა	დურგალი	და	მჭედელი.
	**	gushin	mas	hqkavda	durgali	da	mtchedeli.
	***	Yesterday	he	had	a carpenter	and	a blacksmith.
4	*	თავის	საავადმყოფოში	ჩემს	ცოლს	ჰყავდა	სტუმრები.
	**	thavis	saavadmqkoposhi	chems	tsols	hqkavda	stumrebi.
	***	In her	hospital,	my	wife	had	guests.
	*	ხუთი წლის	წინ ჩვენ	გვყავდა	ბებია,	რომელიც იყო	ასი წლის.

5	**	khuthi tzlis	tzin chven	gvqkvavda	bebia,	romelits iqko	asi tzlis.
	***	Five years	ago we	had	a grandmother	who was	hundred years old
6	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	მშობლებს	ჰყავდათ	მხიარული	მეზობლები.
	**	sopelshi	chems	mshoblebs	hqkavdath	mkhiaruli	mezoblebi.
	***	In the village	my	parents	had	merry	neighbors.
7	*	ადრე	ჩემს	მეზობელს	ჰყავდა	საშინელი	ცოლი.
	**	adre	chems	mezobels	hqkavda	sashineli	tsoli.
	***	Previously,	my	neighbor	had	a terrible	wife.
8	*	ათი წლის	წინ ჩემს	სოფელს	ნაცნობებს	ჰყავდათ	ასი ძროხა.
	**	athi tzlis	tzin chems	soplel	natsnobeb	hqkavdath	asi dzrokha.
	***	Ten years	ago, my	rural	acquaintances	had	a hundred cows.
9	*	მათ	არ ჰყავდათ	ზანტი	მსახურები	თავიანთ	სასტუმროში.
	**	math	ar hqkavdath	zanti	msakhurebi	thavianth	sastumroshi.
	***	They	did not have	lazy	servants	in their	hotel.
10	*	რუსეთის	მეფეებს	ჰყავდათ	მტკიცე	და მარდი	მეომრები.
	**	rusethis	mepeebs	hqkavdath	mtkitse	da mardi	meomrebi.
	***	Russian	tsars	had	strong	and agile	warriors.
11	*	მონღოლეთის	ხელმწიფეებს	ჰყავდათ	სწრაფი	მეისრეები.	
	**	mongolethis	khelmtzipeeb	hqkavdath	stzrapi	meisreebi.	
	***	The Mongolian	sovereigns	had	quick	archers.	
12	*	არაბეთის	მთავრებს	ჰყავდათ	სწრაფი	ცხენები.	
	**	arabethis	mthavrebs	hqkavdath	stzrapi	tskhenebi.	
	***	The Arab	princes	had	fast	horses.	
13	*	მეცხრამეტე	საუკუნეში	რუსეთს	ჰყავდა	კარგი	მელექსეები.
	**	metskhramete	saukuneshi	ruseths	hqkavda	kargi	meleqseebi.
	***	In nineteenth	century,	Russia	had	good	poets.

14	*	თითოეულ	ჩვენგანს	ჰყავდა	თავისი	მკურნალი	ექიმი.
	**	thithoeul	chvengans	hqkavda	thavisi	mkurnali	eqimi.
	***	Each	of us	had	It's own	curing	physician.
15	*	მის	მანქანაში	მგზავრებს	ჰყავდათ	თავიანთი	ბავშვები.
	**	mis	manqanashi	mgzavrebs	hqkavdath	thavianthi	bavshvebi.
	***	In his	car,	passengers	had	their	children.
16	*	ჩემს	სიმამრს	ჰყავდა	მუშები	თავის	ბინაში.
	**	chems	simamrs	hqkavda	mushebi	thavis	binashi.
	***	My	father-in-law	had	workers	in his	apartment.
17	*	საზაფხულო	ბანაკს	ჰყავდა	ორასი	ბავშვი	კიევიდან.
	**	sazapkhulo	banaks	hqkavda	orasi	bavshvi	kievidan.
	***	The summer	camp	had	two hundred	children	from Kiev.
18	*	ჩვენს	თემს	ჰყავდა	კარგი	დურგლები.	
	**	chvens	thems	hqkavda	kargi	durplebi.	
	***	Our	community	had	good	carpenters.	
19	*	არაბებს	უხვად	ჰყავდათ	ცხენები	და	ცხვრები.
	**	arabebs	ukhvad	hqkavdath	tskhenebi	da	tskhvrebi.
	***	The Arabs	had	plenty of	horses	and	sheep.
20	*	შემოდგომაზე	მე	მყავდა	ებრაელი	ვაჭრები	ჩემთან.
	**	shemodgomaze	me	mqkavda	ebraeli	vatchrebi	chemthan.
	***	In the autumn	I	had	Jewish	traders	at my home.
21	*	გუშინ	სადამოს	შენ	გყავდა	ჩუმი	სტუმარი.
	**	gushin	sagramos	shen	gqkavda	chumi	stumari.
	***	Last	night	you	had	a silent	guest.
22	*	ერთი წლის	წინ ჩვენს	სააგენტოს	ჰყავდა	მარდი	მდივანი.
	**	erthi tzlis	tzin chvens	saagentos	hqkavda	mardi	mdivani.

	***	A year	ago our	agency	had	a nimble	secretary.
23	*	ჩვენს	სასადილოს	არ	ჰყავდა	ცუდი	მზარეულები.
	**	chvens	sasadilos	ar	hqkavda	tsudi	mzareulebi.
	***	Our	dining room	did not	have	bad	cooks.
24	*	საქალაქო	საპატიმროს	ჰყავდა	საშინელი	პატიმრები.	
	**	saqalaqo	sarratimros	hqkavda	sashineli	patimrebi.	
	***	The city	prison	had	terrible	prisoners.	
25	*	მათ	ბავშვებს	ჰყავდათ	ფრთხილი	მოახლეები.	
	**	math	bavshvebs	hqkavdath	prthkhili	moakhleebi.	
	***	Their	children	had	cautious	maids.	
26	*	ჩვენს	სამმართველოს	ჰყავდა	ხარბი	მეერთამეები.	
	**	chvens	sammarthvelos	hqkavda	kharbi	meqrthameebi.	
	***	Our	management	had	greedy	bribe takers.	
27	*	მას	ჰყავდა	ხუთასი	სტუმარი	თავის	ქორწილში.
	**	mas	hqkavda	khuthasi	stumari	thavis	qortzilshi.
	***	He	had	five hundred	guests	at his	wedding.
28	*	ამერიკელ	ელჩს	ჰყავდა	ლამაზი და	კობტა	ცოლი.
	**	amerikel	elchs	hqkavda	lamazi da	kokhta	tsoli.
	***	The American	ambassador	had	a beautiful and	elegant	wife.
29	*	შენ	გყავდა	საშინლად	ცუდი	სიდედრი.	
	**	shen	gqkavda	sashinlad	tsudi	sidedri.	
	***	You	had	an awfully	bad	mother-in-law.	
30	*	პოლონეთში	მათ	ჰყავდათ	ნაცნობები	და	ნათესავები.
	**	polonethshi	math	hqkavdath	natsnobebe	da	nathesavebi.
	***	In Poland	they	had	acquaintances	and	relatives.
	*	მე	არ	მყავდა	მტრები	ჩვენს	მზარეუბი.

31	**	me	ar	mqkavda	mtrebi	chvens	mkhreshi.
	***	I	did not	have	enemies	in our	region.
32	*	ჩვენს	სასკოლო	მასწავლებელს	ჰყავდა	ჯიუტი	ბავშვები.
	**	chvens	saskolo	mastzavlebel	hqkavda	jiuti	bavshvebi.
	***	Our	schoolteacher		had	stubborn	children.
33	*	საქალაქო	სასტუმროს	უხვად	ჰყავდა	მსახურები და	მოახლეები.
	**	saqalaqo	sastumros	ukhvd	hqkavda	msakhurebi da	moakhleebi.
	***	The city	hotel	abundantly	had	servants and	maids.
34	*	კახეთს	უხვად	ჰყავდა	ნაყოფიერი	მევენახეები.	
	**	kakheths	ukhvd	hqkavda	naqkopieri	mevenakheebi.	
	***	Kakhetia	abundantly	had	productive	winegrowers.	
35	*	ბაზარში	ვაჭრებს	ჰყავდათ	სწრაფი	მუშები.	
	**	bazarshi	vatchrebs	hqkavdath	stzrapi	mushebi.	
	***	In the market,	traders	had	fast	workers.	
36	*	ორი	წლის	წინ	მე არ	მყავდა	კატა.
	**	ori	tzlis	tzin	me ar	mqkavda	kata.
	***	Two	years	ago	I did not	have	a cat.
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

5) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

6) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 197-202,

"Supplement to Lesson No. 46" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

7) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 46
1. სამი დღის წინ მე მყავდა ბრიტანელი სტუმარი.	
2. შაბათს შენ შენს ბინაში გყავდა კარგი ადამიანები.	
3. გუშინ მას ჰყავდა ღურგალი და მჭედელი.	

Group # 1	Lesson # 46
4. თავის საავადმყოფოში ჩემს ცოლს ჰყავდა სტუმრები.	
5. ხუთი წლის წინ ჩვენ გვყავდა ბებია, რომელიც იყო ასი წლის.	
6. სოფელში ჩემს მშობლებს ჰყავდათ მხიარული მეზობლები.	

8) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-sixth lesson.

Lesson forty seven

The Georgian verbs in the future tense

The content of the forty-seventh lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator reminds the audience of the following:

1. "Today we will continue our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action "ყოლა" ("qkola"), which is synonymous in English with the word "Have someone". This time we will study the use of the word "ყოლა" ("qkola") in the future tense."

2. "We already know that the main (initial) form of the word "ყოლა" ("Have someone") is a verb in the third person singular of the singular present tense - "ჰყავს" ("hqkavs"), the synonym of which in English is the verb "Has someone." In the third person singular of the future tense, instead of the word "ჰყავს" ("hqkavs"), the linking verb "ეყოლება" ("eqkoleba") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Will have someone". If we put the word "მას" ("mas"), which replaces the personal pronoun ის (is) in the dative case, before the verb "ეყოლება" ("eqkoleba"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მას ეყოლება" ("mas eqkoleba"), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "he (she, it) will have someone." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მას" ("mas"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the singular, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case."

3. "In the third person of the plural future tense, the linking verb "ეყოლებათ" ("eqkolebath") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Will have someone". If we put the word "მათ" ("math"), which replaces the personal pronoun ისინი (isini) in the dative case, before the verb "ეყოლებათ" ("eqkolebath"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მათ ეყოლებათ" ("math eqkolebath"), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "They will have someone." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მათ" ("math"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the plural, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case of the plural."

4. "In the second person of the singular future tense, the linking verb "გეყოლება" ("geqkoleba") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Will have someone". If before the verb "გეყოლება" ("geqkoleba") we put the word "შენ" ("shen"), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person singular, then we get the affirmative phrase "შენ გეყოლება" ("shen geqkoleba"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "You will have someone."

5. "In the second person of the plural future tense, the linking verb "გეყოლებათ" ("geqkolebath") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Will have someone". If before the verb "გეყოლებათ" ("geqkolebath") we put the word "თქვენ" ("thqven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "თქვენ გეყოლებათ" ("thqven geqkolebath"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "You will have someone".

6. "In the first person singular of the future tense, the linking verb "მეყოლება" ("meqkoleba") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Will have someone". If we put the word "მე" ("me"), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, before the verb "მეყოლება" ("meqkoleba"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მე მეყოლება" ("me meqkoleba"), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "I will have someone."

7. “In the first person of the plural future tense, the linking verb “გვეყოლება” (“gveqkoleba”) is used, the synonym of which in English is the word “Will have someone”. If before the verb “გვეყოლება” (“gveqkoleba”) we put the word “ჩვენ” (“chven”), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get the affirmative phrase “ჩვენ გვეყოლება” (“chven gveqkoleba”), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase “we will have someone”.

8. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, “მას ეყოლება” (“mas eqkoleba”) → “ეყოლება მას?” (“eqkoleba mas?”) and so on.”

9. “Negative phrases are formed by inserting in affirmative phrases the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the above-mentioned linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “მას ეყოლება” (“mas eqkoleba”) → “მას არ ეყოლება” (“mas ar eqkoleba”) and so on.”

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 53 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted and learn the above forms of the verbal name of the action ყოლა (qkola) in the future tense using already familiar personal pronouns."

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №53

The basic structure of the verb ყოლა (Have someone) in the future tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
		Affirmative collocations								
Singular	*	მას	ეყოლება	*	შენ	გეყოლება	*	მე	მეყოლება	
	**	mas	eqkoleba	**	shen	geqkoleba	**	me	meqkoleba	
Plural	*	მათ	ეყოლებათ	*	თქვენ	გეყოლებათ	*	ჩვენ	გვეყოლება	
	**	math	eqkolebath	**	thqven	geqkolebath	**	chven	gveqkoleba	
	* Words in Georgian language									
	** English transliteration of Georgian words									
	Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)									
Singular		ეყოლება	მას?		გეყოლება	შენ?		მეყოლება	მე?	

Plural	ეყოლებათ	მათ?		გეყოლებათ	თქვენ?		გვეყოლება	ჩვენ?	
Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]									
Singular	მას	არ ეყოლება		შენ	არ გეყოლება		მე	არ მეყოლება	
Plural	მათ	არ ეყოლებათ		თქვენ	არ გეყოლებათ		ჩვენ	არ გვეყოლება	

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb *ყოლა* (Have someone) in the future tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the future tense using the above mentioned verbs. These sentences will also use many of the Georgian words we have already learned in previous lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

4) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 54 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №54

Ordinal №		Georgian affirmative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action <i>ყოლა</i> (Have someone)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	მალე	ჩემს	ცოლს	ეყოლება	პირველი	ბავშვი.
	**	male	chems	tsols	eqkoleba	pirveli	bavshvi.
	***	Soon	my	wife	will have	the first	child.
2	*	ხვალ	შენ	გეყოლება	ორი მოახლე	შენს	ბინაში.
	**	khval	shen	geqkoleba	ori moakhle	shens	binashi.
	***	Tomorrow	you	will have	two maidservants	in your	apartment.
3	*	პირველ	იანვარს	მე	მეყოლება	ათი სტუმარი	ჩემთან.
	**	pirvel	ianvars	me	meqkoleba	athi stumari	chemthan.
	***	On the first of	January	I	will have	ten guests	at home.
	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	მშობლებს	ეყოლებათ	ქათმები და	ღორები.

4	**	sopelshi	chems	mshoblebs	eqkolebath	qathmebi da	grorebi.
	***	In the village,	my	parents	will have	hens and	pigs.
5	*	მის	ძმას	ეყოლება	ლამაზი	საცოლო.	
	**	mis	dzmas	eqkoleba	lamazi	satsolo.	
	***	His	brother	will have	a beautiful	bride.	
6	*	ორშაბათს	ჩვენ	გვეყოლება	ეკლესიის	მსახური.	
	**	orshabaths	chven	gveqkoleba	eklesiis	msakhuri.	
	***	On Monday	we	will have	a church	employee.	
7	*	კვირას	მას ეყოლება	მხიარული	მეგობრები	და მეზობლები	თავისთან.
	**	kviras	mas eqkoleba	mkhiaruli	megobrebi	da mezoblebi	thavisthan.
	***	On Sunday,	he will have	joyful	friends	and neighbors	at his home.
8	*	დღეს	მე მეყოლება	ინდოელი	ექიმები	ჩემს	საავადმყოფოში.
	**	dgres	me meqkoleba	indoeli	eqimebi	chems	saavadmqkoposhi
	***	Today	I will have	Indian	doctors	in my	hospital.
9	*	ჩვენ	გვეყოლება	იმერელი	რძალი	და კახელი	სიძე.
	**	chven	gveqkoleba	imereli	rdzali	da kakheli	sidze.
	***	We	will have	an Imeretian	daughter-in-law	and a Kakhetian	son-in-law.
10	*	წელს	მათ	სამმართველოს	ეყოლება	ჩინელი	მუშები.
	**	tzels	math	sammarthvelos	eqkoleba	chineli	mushebi.
	***	This year	their	department	will have	Chinese	workers.
11	*	თქვენ	მალე	გეყოლებათ	მტკიცე	მასწავლებელი.	
	**	thqven	male	geqkolebath	mtkitse	mastzavlebeli.	
	***	You	will soon	have	solid	teacher.	
12	*	ყოველ	მძიმე	ავადმყოფს	ეყოლება	თავისი	მოახლე.
	**	qkovel	mdzime	avadmqkops	eqkoleba	thavisi	moakhle.
	***	Every	seriously ill	patient	will have	his own	servant.

13	*	ყველა	სააგენტოს	ეყოლება	თავისი	მორიგე	მდივანი.
	**	qkvela	saagentos	eqkoleba	thavisi	morige	mdivani.
	***	Each	agency	will have	its own	duty	secretary.
14	*	ზაფხულში	მე	მეყოლება	ჩემი	ოჯახი	ზღვაზე.
	**	zapkhulshi	me	meqkoleba	chemi	ojakhi	zgrvaze.
	***	In the summer,	I	will have	my	family	at sea.
15	*	შემოდგომაზე	კახელებს	ეყოლებათ	იტალიელი	მეღვინეები	თავისთან.
	**	shemodgomaze	kakhelebs	eqkolebath	italieli	megrvineebi	thavisthan.
	***	In the autumn,	the Kakhethians	will have	Italian	winemakers	at their home.
16	*	ჩვენს	თემში	ზოგიერთ	ბავშვს	ეყოლება	ძიძა.
	**	chvens	themshi	zogiერთ	bavshvs	eqkoleba	dzidza.
	***	In our	community,	some	children	will have	nurses.
17	*	სოფელში	დედას	ეყოლება	ჰოლანდიელი	მეყვავილეები	თავისთან.
	**	sopelshi	dedas	eqkoleba	holandieli	meqkvavileebi	thavisthan.
	***	In the village,	the mother	will have	Dutch	flower growers	at her place.
18	*	მალე	ჩვენს	სასადილოს	ეყოლება	იმერელი	მზარეული.
	**	male	chvens	sasadilos	eqkoleba	imereli	mzareuli.
	***	Soon	our	canteen	will have	an Imeretian	cook.
19	*	ხვალ	ჩვენ	გვეყოლება	ამერიკელი	სტუდენტები.	
	**	khval	chven	gveqkoleba	amerikeli	studentebi.	
	***	Tomorrow	we	will have	the American	students.	
20	*	შენ	არ	გეყოლება	ჯიუტი	დედამთილი.	
	**	shen	ar	geqkoleba	jiuti	dedamthili.	
	***	You	will not	have	a stubborn	mother-in-law.	
21	*	შენ	დას	ეყოლება	მხიარული	მამამთილი.	
	**	shen	das	eqkoleba	mkhiaruli	mamamthili.	

	***	Your	sister	will have	a merry	father-in-law.	
22	*	ერთი წლის	შემდეგ	მას	ეყოლება	თავისი	მსახური.
	**	erthi tzlis	shemdeg	mas	eqkoleba	thavisi	msakhuri.
	***	A year	later	he	will have	his	servant.
23	*	სოფელში	ჩვენებს	მალე	ეყოლებათ	ათი	ძროხა.
	**	sopelshi	chvenebs	male	eqkolebath	athi	dzrokha.
	***	In the village,	the ours	will soon	have	ten	cows.
24	*	საღამოს	მათ	ეყოლებათ	პარიზელი	მხატვრები	თავისთან.
	**	sagramos	math	eqkolebath	parizeli	mkhatvrebi	thavisthan.
	***	In the evening	they	will have	the Parisian	artists	at their home.
25	*	ჩვენს	თემს	ეყოლება	თავისი	პარიკმახერი.	
	**	chvens	thems	eqkoleba	thavisi	parikmakheri.	
	***	Our	community	will have	its own	hairdresser.	
26	*	სოფლის	ბაზარში	ჩვენ არ	გვეყოლება	ხარბი	ვაჭრები.
	**	soplis	bazarshi	chven ar	gveqkoleba	kharbi	vatchrebi.
	***	In the rural	market,	we will not	have	greedy	traders.
27	*	ზაფხულში	ჩვენ გვეყოლება	სტუმრები	ბაკოდან	და	ერევნიდან.
	**	zapkhulshi	chven gveqkoleba	stumrebi	baqodan	da	erevnidan.
	***	In summer	we will have	guests	from Baku	and	from Yerevan.
28	*	ჩემს	დედას	ეყოლება	თავისი	მკურნალი	ექიმი.
	**	chems	dedas	eqkoleba	thavisi	mkurnali	eqimi.
	***	My	mother	will have	her own	curing	doctor.
29	*	იმათ	სააგენტოს	ეყოლება	ფრთხილი	მოლარე.	
	**	imath	saagentos	eqkoleba	prthkhili	molare.	
	***	Their	agency	will have	a cautious	cashier.	
	*	ჩვენს	სამინისტროს	ეყოლება	აფრიკელი	სტუმრები.	

30	**	chvens	saministros	eqkoleba	aprikeli	stumrebi.	
	***	Our	ministry	will have	the African	guests.	
31	*	მალე	ჩვენ	გვეყოლება	აზიელი	მზარეულები	სასტუმროში.
	**	male	chven	gveqkoleba	azieli	mzareulebi	sastumroshi.
	***	Soon	we	will have	the Asian	chefs	in the hotel.
32	*	შენს	ავადყოფ	ბავშვს	არ ეყოლება	ცუდი	ექიმი.
	**	shens	avadmqkop	bavshvs	ar eqkoleba	tsudi	eqimi.
	***	Your	sick	child	will not have	a bad	doctor.
33	*	მალე	ჩვენს	სოფელს	ეყოლება	ოთხი	მეცხვარე.
	**	male	chvens	sopels	eqkoleba	othkhi	metskhvare.
	***	Soon	our	village	will have	four	shepherds.
34	*	მათ	ქალაქს	ეყოლება	სპარსელი	მელექსე	სტუმრები.
	**	math	qalaqs	eqkoleba	sparseli	meleqse	stumrebi.
	***	Their	city	will have	the Persian	guest	poets.
35	*	ზამთარში	ჩვენს	ოჯახს	ეყოლება	სამი	მსახური.
	**	zamtharshi	chvens	ojakhs	eqkoleba	sami	msakhuri.
	***	In the winter	our	family	will have	three	servants.
36	*	ჩვენს	სახელმწიფოს	ეყოლება	ელჩები	ჩინეთში	და რუსეთში.
	**	chvens	sakhelmtzipos	eqkoleba	elchebi	chinethshi	da rusethshi.
	***	Our	state	will have	ambassadors	in China	and in Russia.
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

5) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

6) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 203-208, "Supplement to Lesson No. 47" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

7) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 47
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. მალე ჩემს ცოლს ეყოლება პირველი ბავშვი. 2. ხვალ შენ გეყოლება ორი მოახლე შენს ბინაში. 3. პირველ იანვარს მე მეყოლება ათი სტუმარი ჩემთან. 	

Group # 1	Lesson # 47
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. სოფელში ჩემს მშობლებს ეყოლებათ ქათმები და ღორები. 5. მის ძმას ეყოლება ლამაზი საცოლო. 6. ორშაბათს ჩვენ გვეყოლება ეკლესიის მსახური. 	

8) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-seventh lesson.

Lesson forty eight

The Georgian verbs in interrogative sentences

The content of the forty-eighth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we must complete the lessons with different forms of the verbal name of the action "ყოლა" ("qkola"). In the previous three lessons, we got acquainted with these forms in affirmative and, occasionally, in negative sentences. This time we should pay attention to interrogative sentences in all grammatical tenses".

2. "In interrogative sentences, we use part of those interrogative pronouns that we learned during the twenty-fourth lesson."

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 55 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's learn interrogative sentences using various forms of the verbal name of the action "ყოლა" ("qkola") in all grammatical tenses. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent interrogative sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one".

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №55

Ordinal №		Interrogative sentences using different forms of verbal action name «ყოლა» ("qkola") in all grammatical tenses					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	ვინ	ჰყავს	მას	თავის	ბინაში?	
	**	vin	hqkavs	mas	thavis	binashi?	
	***	Who	does he have		in his	apartment?	
2	*	რამდენი	ნათესავი	გყავს	შენ	შენს	სოფელში?
	**	ramdeni	nathesavi	gqkavs	shen	shens	sopelshi?
	***	How many	relatives	do you have		in your	village?
3	*	რანაირი	მუშები	გყავთ	თქვენ	თქვენს	სააგენტოში?
	**	ranairi	mushebi	gqkavth	thqven	thqvens	saagentoshi?
	***	What kind	of workers	do you have		in your	agency?

4	*	ჰყავთ	მათ	მძიმე	ავადმყოფები	თავიანთ	საავადმყოფოში?
	**	hqkavth	math	mdzime	avadmqkopebi	thavianth	saavadmqkoposhi?
	***	Do they have		hard	patients	in their	hospital?
5	*	რამდენი	ბავშვი	ჰყავთ	მას	და მის	ცოლს?
	**	ramdeni	bavshvi	hqkavth	mas	da mis	tsols?
	***	How many	children	does	he	and his	wife have?
6	*	როგორი	დურგლები	გყავთ	თქვენ	თქვენს	მხარეში?
	**	rogori	durplebi	gqkavth	thqven	thqvens	mkhareshi?
	***	What	carpenters	do you have		in your	region?
7	*	ვინ	გყავს	შენ	შენს	სახელოსნოში?	
	**	vin	gqkavs	shen	shens	sakhelosnoshi?	
	***	Who	do you have		in your	workshop?	
8	*	რანაირი	მსახურები	და	მოახლეები	ჰყავთ იმ	სასტუმროში?
	**	ranairi	msakhurebi	da	moakhleebi	hqkavth im	sastumroshi?
	***	What kind	of servants	and	maids	do they have in that	hotel?
9	*	რა	ცხოველები	გყავს	შენ	შენს	ბინაში?
	**	ra	tskhovelebi	gqkavs	shen	shens	binashi?
	***	What kind	of animals	do you have		in your	apartment?
10	*	როგორი	კატები	ჰყავთ	თქვენს	მშობლებს	თავისთან?
	**	rogori	katebi	hqkavth	thqvens	mshoblebs	thavisthan?
	***	What kind	of cats	have	your	parents	at their home?
11	*	რამდენი	მგზავრი	გყავს	შენ	შენს	მანქანაში?
	**	ramdeni	mgzavri	gqkavs	shen	shens	manqanashi?
	***	How many	passengers	do you have		in your	car?
12	*	როგორი	მზარეულები	გყავთ	თქვენ	თქვენს	სამინისტროში?
	**	rogori	mzareulebi	gqkavth	thqven	thqvens	saministroshi?

	***	What kind	of cooks	do you have		in your	ministry?
13	*	რომელი	სტუმრები	ჰყავდა	მას	თავის	სოფელში?
	**	romeli	stumrebi	hqkavda	mas	thavis	sopelshi?
	***	Which	guests	did she have		in her	village?
14	*	როგორი	მეფეები	ჰყავდა	საქართველოს	მეთორმეტე	საუკუნეში?
	**	rogori	mepeebi	hqkavda	saqarthvelos	methormete	saukuneshi?
	***	What kind	of kings	did Georgia have		in the twelfth	century?
15	*	რამდენი	ავადმყოფი	ბავშვი	ჰყავდათ	ექიმებს	საავადმყოფოში?
	**	ramdeni	avadmqkopi	bavshvi	hqkavdath	eqimebs	saavadmqkoposhi?
	***	How many	sick	children	did the doctors have		in the hospital?
16	*	გყავდა	შენ	ნათესავეები	და	ნაცნობები	რუსეთში?
	**	gqkavda	shen	nathesavebi	da	natsnobebs	rusethshi?
	***	Did you have		relatives	and	acquaintances	in Russia?
17	*	რომელი	მეცნიერები	ჰყავდა	მას	თავის	სამინისტროში?
	**	romeli	metsnierebi	hqkavda	mas	thavis	saministroshi?
	***	Which	scholars	did he have		in his	ministry?
18	*	რამდენი	ვაჭარი	გყავდათ	თქვენ	სოფლის	ბაზარში?
	**	ramdeni	vatchari	gqkavdath	thqven	soplis	bazarshi?
	***	How many	traders	did you have		in the village	market?
19	*	როგორი	სიდედრი	ჰყავდა	შენს	ძმას?	
	**	rogori	sidedri	hqkavda	shens	dzmas?	
	***	What kind	of mother-in-law	did your brother have?			
20	*	რამდენი	ცხვარი	გყავდა შენ	შენს სოფელში	ორი წლის	წინ?
	**	ramdeni	tskhvari	gqkavda shen	shens sopelshi	ori tzlis	tzin?
	***	How many	sheep	did you have	in your village	two years	ago?
	*	გყავდათ	თქვენ	მძიმე	ავადმყოფი	თქვენს	ოჯახში?

21	**	gqkavdath	thqven	mdzime	avadmqkopi	thqvens	ojakhshi?
	***	did you have		seriously ill	patient	in your	family?
22	*	რა	ცხოველი	ჰყავდა	შენს	დედას	გუმინ?
	**	ra	tskhoveli	hqkavda	shens	dedas	gushin?
	***	What kind	of animal	did your mother have			yesterday?
23	*	რომელ	სასტუმროში	გყავდა	შენ	შენი	სტუმრები?
	**	romel	sastumroshi	gqkavda	shen	sheni	stumrebi?
	***	In which	hotel	did you have		your	guests?
24	*	რამდენი	ექიმი	გყავდათ	სოფელში	ხუთი	წლის წინ?
	**	ramdeni	eqimi	gqkavdath	sopelshi	khuthi	tzlis tzin?
	***	How many	doctors	did you have	in the village	five	years ago?
25	*	რამდენი	სტუმარი	ეყოლება	მას	თავის	ქორწილში?
	**	ramdeni	stumari	eqkoleba	mas	thavis	qortzilshi?
	***	How many	guests	will he have		at his	wedding?
26	*	რანაირი	ხელოსნები	გეყოლება	შენ	ხვალ	სალამოს?
	**	ranairi	khelosnebi	geqkoleba	shen	khval	sagramos?
	***	What kind	of artisans	will you have		tomorrow	evening?
27	*	როგორი	მმართველი	გეყოლებათ	თქვენ	თქვენს	სამინისტროში?
	**	rogori	mmarthveli	geqkolebath	thqven	thqvens	saministroshi?
	***	What kind	of manager	will you have		in your	ministry?
28	*	რამდენი	მასწავლებელი	ეყოლებათ	თქვენს	ბავშვებს	სოფელში?
	**	ramdeni	mastzavlebeli	eqkolebath	thqvens	bavshvebs	sopelshi?
	***	How many	teachers	will your children have			in the village?
29	*	როგორი	დედამთილი	ეყოლება	მის	დას?	
	**	rogori	dedamthili	eqkoleba	mis	das?	
	***	What kind	of mother-in-law	will his sister have?			

30	*	რამდენი	ძროხა	ეყოლებათ	მათ	სამი წლის	შემდეგ?
	**	ramdeni	dzrokha	eqkolebath	math	sami tzlis	shemdeg?
	***	How many	cows	will they have		three years	hence?
31	*	რომელი	ბავშვები	გეყოლებათ	თქვენ	საზაფხულო	ბანაკში?
	**	romeli	bavshvebi	geqkolebath	thqven	sazapkhulo	banakshi?
	***	Which	children	will you have		in the summer	camp?
32	*	ეყოლება	მას	თავისი	მანქანა	ორი თვის	შემდეგ?
	**	eqkoleba	mas	thavisi	manqana	ori thvis	shemdeg?
	***	Will he has		his own	car	two months	hence?
33	*	რომელი	ძიძა	ეყოლება	თქვენს	ბავშვს	ხვალ?
	**	romeli	dzidza	eqkoleba	thqvens	bavshvs	khval?
	***	Which	nurse	will your child have			tomorrow?
34	*	ვინ	გეყოლებათ	თქვენ	თქვენს	მხიარულ	სადამოზე?
	**	vin	geqkolebath	thqven	thqvens	mkhiarul	sagramoze?
	***	Who	will you have		on your	cheerful	party?
35	*	სად	ეყოლებათ	მათ	თავისი	ბავშვები	კვირას?
	**	sad	eqkolebath	math	thavisi	bavshvebi	kviras?
	***	Where	will they have		their	children	on Sunday?
36	*	რამდენი	მწყემსი	გეყოლებათ	თქვენ	თქვენს	სოფელში?
	**	ramdeni	mtzqkems	geqkolebath	thqven	thqvens	sopelshi?
	***	How many	shepherds	will you have		in your	village?
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 209-214, "Supplement to Lesson No. 48" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 48
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. ვინ ჰყავს მას თავის ბინაში? 2. რამდენი ნათესავი გყავს შენ შენს სოფელში? 3. სადაური მუშები გყავთ თქვენ თქვენს სააგენტოში? 	

Group # 1	Lesson # 48
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. ჰყავთ მათ მძიმე ავადმყოფები თავიანთ საავადმყოფოში? 5. რამდენი ბავშვი ჰყავთ მას და მის ცოლს? 6. როგორი დურგლები გყავთ თქვენ თქვენს მხარეში? 	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-eighth lesson.

Lesson forty nine

The Georgian verbs in present tense

The content of the forty-ninth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator repeatedly reminds the listeners of the following:

1. "When expressing the presence (or absence) of something or someone by somebody, the Georgian language expresses the belonging of an animate or inanimate object with different verbs."

2. "From the point of view of Georgian grammar, an animate object is an object that has a soul and moves with the help of its own power. Such objects include a person, an animal, a bird, a fish, an insect. An inanimate object is an object that does not have a soul. Such objects include a tree, a stone, a river, the moon, a house, a garden, a field".

2) Next, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Acquaintance with the Georgian verbs will be continued with the example of a widespread verbal action name as "ქონა" ("qona"), which in English means "Have something". This action name applies to inanimate objects".

2. "We already know that there is no infinitive (an indefinite form of a verb) in the Georgian language. It is replaced by the Georgian verbal name of the action, and its main (initial) form is the verb in the third person of singular present tense. Therefore, the main (original) form of the word "ქონა" ("qona ") is the linking verb "აქვს" ("aqvs"), which in English means "has something". If we put before the verb "აქვს" ("aqvs") the word already familiar to us - "მას" ("mas"), a personal pronoun that replaces the word *ის* (is) in the dative case of the singular, then we get the affirmative phrase "მას აქვს" ("mas aqvs"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "he (she, it) has something." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მას" ("mas"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the singular, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case."

3. "In the third person of the plural present tense, the linking verb "აქვთ" ("aqvth") is used, which in English means "have something." If we put before the verb "აქვთ" ("aqvth") the already familiar word "მათ" ("math"), a personal pronoun that replaces the word *ისინი* (isini) in the dative plural, then we get the affirmative phrase "მათ აქვთ" ("math aqvth"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "They have something". It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მათ" ("math"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the plural, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case of the plural number."

4. "In the second person of the singular present tense, the linking verb "გაქვს" ("gaqvs") is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb "Have something". If we put the word "შენ" ("shen") before the verb "გაქვს" ("gaqvs"), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person singular, then we get the affirmative phrase "შენ გაქვს" ("shen gaqvs"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "You have something."

5. "In the second person of the plural present tense, the linking verb "გაქვთ" ("gaqvth") is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb "Have something". If we put the word "თქვენ" ("thqven"), the personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person plural, before the verb "გაქვთ" ("gaqvth"), then we get the affirmative phrase "თქვენ გაქვთ" ("thqven gaqvth"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "You have something."

6. "In the first person singular of the present tense, the linking verb "მაქვს" ("maqvs") is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb "Have something". If we put the word "მე" ("me"), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, before the verb "მაქვს" ("maqvs"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მე მაქვს" ("me maqvs"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "I have something."

7. "In the first person of the plural present tense, the linking verb "გვაქვს" ("gvaqvs") is used, the synonym of which in English is the verb "Have something". If before the verb "გვაქვს" ("gvaqvs") we put the word "ჩვენ" ("chven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "ჩვენ გვაქვს" ("chven gvaqvs"), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "We have something."

8. "Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, "მას აქვს" ("mas aqvs") → "აქვს მას?" ("aqvs mas?") and so on."

9. "Negative phrases are formed by inserting in affirmative phrases the word "არ" (in English - "not") between the above-mentioned linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, "მას აქვს" ("mas aqvs") → "მას არ აქვს" ("mas ar aqvs") and so on."

3) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 56 on the big screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted and learn the above forms of the verbal name of the action ქონა (Have something) in the present tense using already familiar personal pronouns."

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №56

The basic structure of the verb «ქონა» («Have something») in the present tense											
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person			
		3	4		5	6		7	8		
1	2	3	4		5	6		7	8		
		Affirmative collocations									
Singular	*	მას	აქვს	*	შენ	გაქვს	*	მე	მაქვს		
	**	mas	aqvs	**	shen	gaqvs	**	me	maqvs		
Plural	*	მათ	აქვთ	*	თქვენ	გაქვთ	*	ჩვენ	გვაქვს		
	**	math	aqvth	**	thqven	gaqvth	**	chven	gvaqvs		

* Words in Georgian language									
** English transliteration of Georgian words									
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)									
Singular	აქვს	მას?		გაქვს	შენ?		მაქვს	მე?	
Plural	აქვთ	მათ?		გაქვთ	თქვენ?		გვაქვს	ჩვენ?	
Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]									
Singular	მას	არ აქვს		შენ	არ გაქვს		მე	არ მაქვს	
Plural	მათ	არ აქვთ		თქვენ	არ გაქვთ		ჩვენ	არ გვაქვს	

4) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb “ქონა” (“Have something”) in the present tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the present tense using the verbs discussed above. These sentences will also use many of the Georgian words we have already learned in previous lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 57 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №57

Ordinal №		Georgian affirmative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action «ქონა» («Have something»)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	ჩემს	ქალაქში	მე	მაქვს	სამი	ბინა.
	**	chems	qalaqshi	me	maqvs	sami	bina.
	***	In my	city,	I	have	three	apartments.
2	*	ჩვენს	მეომრებს	აქვთ	მძიმე	და მსუბუქი	იარაღი.
	**	chvens	meomrebs	aqvth	mdzime	da msubuqi	iaragri.
	***	Our	warriors	have	heavy	and light	weapons.

3	*	მთავრობაში	თითოეულ	მინისტრს	აქვს	თავისი	მანქანა.
	**	mthavrobashi	thithoeul	ministrs	aqvs	thavisi	manqana.
	***	In government,	every	minister	has	his own	car.
4	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	მშობლებს	აქვთ	ვენახი და	ბოსტანი.
	**	sopelshi	chems	mshoblebs	aqvth	venakhi da	bostani.
	***	In the village,	my	parents	have	a vineyard and	a vegetable garden.
5	*	მის	დას	აქვს	ლამაზი	და მოკლე	თმები.
	**	mis	das	aqvs	lamazi	da mokle	thmebi.
	***	His	sister	has	beautiful	and short	hair.
6	*	ჩვენს	სოფლებს	აქვთ	ფართო	გზები.	
	**	chvens	soplebs	aqvth	partho	gzebi.	
	***	Our	villages	have	wide	roads.	
7	*	შენს	ძმას	აქვს	მოკლე	ცხვირი.	
	**	shens	dzmas	aqvs	mokle	tskhviri.	
	***	Your	brother	has	a short	nose.	
8	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	მამას	აქვს	კარგი	ღვინო.
	**	sopelshi	chems	mamas	aqvs	kargi	grvino.
	***	In the village	my	father	has	a good	wine.
9	*	ყოველ	კვირას	ჩვენ	გვაქვს	მხიარული	საღამოები.
	**	qkovel	kviras	chven	gvaqvs	mkhiaruli	sagramoebi.
	***	Every	Sunday	we	have	merry	parties.
10	*	ყოველ	საღამოს	ჩემს პაპას	აქვს	მსუბუქი	სადილი.
	**	qkovel	sagramos	chems papas	aqvs	msubuqi	sadili.
	***	Every	evening	my grandfather	has	a light	lunch.
11	*	სოფელში	მე არ	მაქვს	იოლი	სამუშაო.	
	**	sopelshi	me ar	maqvs	ioli	samushao.	

	***	In the village	I do not	have	an easy	job.	
12	*	ყოველ	თქვენს	მეცნიერს	აქვს	როტული	სამუშაო.
	**	qkovel	thqvens	metsniers	aqvs	rthuli	samushao.
	***	Every	your	scientist	has	a complex	job.
13	*	სოფელში	ჩვენ	უხვად	გვაქვს	ხილი და	ბოსტნეული.
	**	sopelshi	chven	ukhvad	gvaqvs	khili da	bostneuli.
	***	In the village	we	have plenty of		fruits and	vegetables.
14	*	ჩემს	მეზობელს	აქვს	ასი	იშვიათი	წიგნი.
	**	chems	mezobels	aqvs	asi	ishviathi	tzigni.
	***	My	neighbor	has	a hundred	rare	books.
15	*	მის	ბიძას	აქვს	ორი	ამერიკული	მანქანა.
	**	mis	bidzas	aqvs	ori	amerikuli	manqana.
	***	His	uncle	has	two	American	cars.
16	*	ჩემს	სიმამრს	ბინაში	აქვს	არაბული	ავეჯი.
	**	chems	simamrs	binashi	aqvs	arabuli	aveji.
	***	My	father-in-law	in apartment	has	Arabic	furniture.
17	*	სოფლის	ბაზარში	ვაჭრებს	აქვთ	იაფი	ღვინო.
	**	soplis	bazarshi	vatchars	aqvth	iapi	grvino.
	***	In the rural	market,	merchants	have	a cheap	wine.
18	*	სასადილოში	ჩვენ	გვაქვს	ორი მაგიდა	და რვა	სკამი.
	**	sasadiloshi	chven	gvaqvs	ori magida	da rva	skami.
	***	In dining room	we	have	two tables	and eight	chairs.
19	*	მწყემსებს	და	მეფოლადეებს	არ აქვთ	იოლი	სამუშაო.
	**	mtzqkemsebs	da	mepoladeebs	ar aqvth	ioli	samushao.
	***	Shepherds	and	steelworkers	do not have	an easy	job.
	*	კავკასიის	ხალხებს	აქვთ	კავშირები	რუსეთთან და	თურქეთთან

20	**	kavkasiis	khalkhebs	aqvth	kavshirebi	ruseththan da	thurqeththan.
	***	The Caucasian	peoples	have	ties	with Russia and	Turkey.
21	*	საავადმყოფოში	მკურნალ	ექიმებს	აქვთ	რთული	სამუშაო.
	**	saavadmqkoposhi	mkurnal	eqimebs	aqvth	rthuli	samushao.
	***	In the hospital,	treating	physicians	have	a difficult	job.
22	*	შემოდგომაზე	მათ	ოჯახს	აქვს	კახური	ღვინო.
	**	shemodgomaze	math	ojakhs	aqvs	kakhuri	grvino.
	***	In the autumn,	their	family	has	the Kakhurian	wine.
23	*	ჩემს	ბებიას	აქვს	საშინლად	ცუდი	კბილები.
	**	chems	bebias	aqvs	sashinlad	tsudi	kbilebi.
	***	My	grandmother	has	terribly	bad	teeth.
24	*	ყველა	მეხანძრეს	აქვს	მძიმე	სამუშაო.	
	**	qkvela	mekhandzres	aqvs	mdzime	samushao.	
	***	All	firefighters	have	a hard	work.	
25	*	შენ	გაქვს	ლამაზი	სახე	და	ხელები.
	**	shen	gaqvs	lamazi	sakhe	da	khelebi.
	***	You	have	a beautiful	face	and	hands.
26	*	დღეს	ჩვენ	გვაქვს	ტკბილი	მანდარინი და	ფორთოხალი.
	**	dgres	chven	gvaqvs	tkbili	mandarini da	porthokhali.
	***	Today	we	have	sweet	mandarins and	oranges.
27	*	ჩვენს	მესაზღვრეებს	აქვთ	ცივი	გონება.	
	**	chvens	mesazgrvreebs	aqvth	tsivi	goneba.	
	***	Our	border guards	have	a cold	mind.	
28	*	ბაზარში	ზოგიერთ	ვაჭარს	აქვს	ძვარე	კიტრი.
	**	bazarshi	zogiერთ	vatchars	aqvs	mtzare	kitri.
	***	In the market,	some	traders	have	bitter	cucumbers.

29	*	ზაფხულში	ჩვენ	გვაქვს	რბილი	ლეღვი	და მსხალი.
	**	zapkhulshi	chven	gvaqvs	rbili	legrvi	da mskhali.
	***	In summer	we	have	soft	figs	and pears.
30	*	მთაში	ჩვენ	უხვად	გვაქვს	ცივი	წყალი.
	**	mthashi	chven	ukhvad	gvaqvs	tsivi	tzqkali.
	***	In mountains	we	have copious amounts of		cold	water.
31	*	ჩვენს	ფრთხილ	მეხანძრეებს	აქვთ	მაგარი	გული.
	**	chvens	prthkhil	mekhandzreebs	aqvth	magari	guli.
	***	Our	cautious	firefighters	have	a strong	heart.
32	*	სამინისტროში	ყველა	მმართველს	აქვს	თავისი	მანქანა.
	**	saministroshi	qkvela	mmarthvels	aqvs	thavisi	manqana.
	***	In ministry,	all	managers	have	their own	cars.
33	*	ამ	ქალაქში	მე	არაფერი	მაქვს.	
	**	am	qalaqshi	me	araperi	maqvs.	
	***	In this	city,	I	have nothing		
34	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	ნაცნობებს	უხვად	აქვთ	სურსათი.
	**	sopelshi	chems	natsnobebs	ukhvad	aqvth	sursathi.
	***	In the village	my	acquaintances	have plenty of		food
35	*	თითოეულ	საგზაო	სააგენტოს	აქვს	თავისი	სადისპეტჩერო
	**	thithoeul	sagzao	saagentos	aqvs	thavisi	sadisπetchero.
	***	Each	road	agency	has	its own	control room
36	*	დღეს	მე	არ	მაქვს	თავისუფალი	დრო.
	**	dgres	me	ar	maqvs	thavisupali	dro.
	***	Today	I	do not	have	free	time.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 215-220, "Supplement to Lesson No. 49" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson # 49
1. ჩემს ქალაქში მე მაქვს სამი ბინა.	
2. ჩვენს მეომრებს აქვთ მძიმე და მსუბუქი იარაღი.	
3. მთავრობაში თითოეულ მინისტრს აქვს თავისი მანქანა.	

Group # 1	Lesson # 49
4. სოფელში ჩემს მშობლებს აქვთ ვენახი და ბოსტანი.	
5. მის დას აქვს ლამაზი და მოკლე თმები.	
6. ჩვენს სოფლებს აქვთ ვიწრო გზები.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the forty-ninth lesson.

Lesson fifty

The Georgian verbs in the past tense

The content of the fiftieth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we will continue our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action "ქონა" ("qona"), the synonym of which in English is the word "Have something". This time we will study the use of this word in the past tense".

2. "We already know that the main (original) form of the word "ქონა" ("qona") is a verb in the third person of the singular present tense - "აქვს" ("aqvs"), the synonym of which in English is the verb "Has anything." In the third person of the singular past tense, instead of the word "აქვს" ("aqvs"), the linking verb "ჰქონდა" ("hqonda") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Had something". If we put the word "მას" ("mas"), which replaces the personal pronoun ის (is) in the dative case, before the verb "ჰქონდა" ("hqonda"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მას ჰქონდა" ("mas hqonda"), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "he (she, it) had something." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მას" ("mas"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the singular, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case."

3. "In the third person of the plural past tense, the linking verb "ჰქონდათ" ("hqondath") is used, the synonym of which in English is the word "Had something". If we put the word "მათ" ("math"), which replaces the personal pronoun ისინი (isini) in the dative case, before the verb "ჰქონდათ" ("hqondath"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მათ ჰქონდათ" ("math hqondath"), synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "They had something." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მათ" ("math"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the plural, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case of the plural."

4. "In the second person of the singular past tense, the linking verb "გქონდა" ("gqonda") is used. If, before the verb "გქონდა" ("gqonda"), put the word "შენ" ("Shen"), a personal pronoun familiar to us in the second person, we will get the affirmative phrase "შენ გქონდა" ("Shen gqonda"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "You had something."

5. "In the second person of the plural past tense, the linking verb "გქონდათ" ("gqondath") is used. If before the verb "გქონდათ" ("gqondath") we put the word "თქვენ" ("thqven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, then we get the affirmative phrase "თქვენ გქონდათ" ("thqven gqondath"), the English synonym for which is an affirmative phrase "You had something."

6. "In the first person of the singular past tense, the linking verb "მქონდა" ("mqonda") is used. If we put the word "მე" ("me"), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, before the verb "მქონდა" ("mqonda"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მე მქონდა" ("me mqonda"), the English synonym of which is an affirmative phrase "I had something."

7. "In the first person of the plural past tense, the linking verb "გვქონდა" ("gvqonda") is used. If before the verb "გვქონდა" ("gvqonda") we put the word "ჩვენ" ("chven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get the

affirmative phrase “ჩვენ გვქონდა” (“chven gvqonda”), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase “We had something.”

8. “Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, “მას ჰქონდა” (“mas hqonda”) → “ჰქონდა მას?” (“hqonda mas?”) and so on.”

9. “Negative phrases are formed by inserting in affirmative phrases the word “არ” (in English - “not”) between the above-mentioned linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, “მას ჰქონდა” (“mas hqonda”) → “მას არ ჰქონდა” (“mas ar hqonda”) and so on.”

2) Next, using a projector, listeners watch table No. 58 on a large screen. The facilitator says: “Let's get acquainted and learn the above forms of the verbal name of the action “ქონა” (“qona”) in the past tense using already familiar personal pronouns.”

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №58

The basic structure of the verb «ქონა» («have something») in the past tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
Affirmative collocations										
Singular	*	მას	ჰქონდა	*	შენ	გქონდა	*	მე	მქონდა	
	**	mas	hqonda	**	shen	gqonda	**	me	mqonda	
Plural	*	მათ	ჰქონდათ	*	თქვენ	გქონდათ	*	ჩვენ	გვქონდა	
	**	math	hqondath	**	thqven	gqondath	**	chven	gvqonda	
* Words in Georgian language										
** English transliteration of Georgian words										
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)										
Singular		ჰქონდა	მას?		გქონდა	შენ?		მქონდა	მე?	
Plural		ჰქონდათ	მათ?		გქონდათ	თქვენ?		გვქონდა	ჩვენ?	

Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal pronouns and link-verbs]								
Singular	მას	არ ჰქონდა		შენ	არ გქონდა		მე	არ მქონდა
Plural	მათ	არ ჰქონდათ		თქვენ	არ გქონდათ		ჩვენ	არ გვქონდა

3) After getting acquainted with the basic structure of the verb “ქონა” (“Have something”) in the past tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the past tense using the above verbs. These sentences will also use many of the Georgian words we have already learned in previous lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 59 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №59

Ordinal №		Georgian affirmative and negative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action «ქონა» («Have something»)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	გუშინ	ჩემს	მამას	ჰქონდა	ამერიკული	გაზეთები.
	**	gushin	chems	mamas	hqonda	amerikuli	gazethebi.
	***	Yesterday	my	father	had	American	newspapers.
2	*	ზაფხულში	ჩვენს	ბავშვებს	ჰქონდათ	თხელი	ტანსაცმელი.
	**	zapkhulshi	chvens	bavshvebs	hqondath	thkheli	tansatsmeli.
	***	In the summer	our	children	had	thin	clothes.
3	*	ზოგიერთ	მის	ნაცნობს	ჰქონდა	გერმანული	მანქანა.
	**	zogiერთ	mis	natsnobs	hqonda	germanuli	manqana.
	***	Some of	his	acquaintances	had	German	cars.
4	*	სოფელში	მათ	ჰქონდათ	კარგი	სასოფლო	იარაღები.
	**	sopelshi	math	hqondath	kargi	sasoplo	iaragrebi.
	***	In the village	they	had	good	agricultural	implements.

5	*	იანვარში	მე	მქონდა	მხიარული	დღეები.	
	**	ianvarshi	me	mqonda	mkhiaruli	dgreebi.	
	***	In January,	I	had	fun	days.	
6	*	ზაფხულში	სოფელში	უხვად	გვქონდა	ბალი და	ალუბალი.
	**	zapkhulshi	sopelshi	ukhvad	gvqonda	bali da	alubali.
	***	In the summer,	in the village	we had	abundant	sweet cherries and	cherries.
7	*	ოქტომბერში	ჩვენს	მეცნიერებს	ჰქონდათ	ნაყოფიერი	თვე.
	**	oqtomershi	chvens	metsnierebs	hqondath	naqkopieri	thve.
	***	In October,	our	scientists	had	a fruitful	month.
8	*	ზამთარში	ვაჭრებს	ჰქონდათ	ძვირი	სურსათი	ბაზარში.
	**	zamtharshi	vatchrebs	hqondath	dzviri	sursathi	bazarshi.
	***	In the winter,	traders	had	expensive	food	in the market
9	*	აგვისტოში	ყველას	გვქონდა	ცივი	და ტკბილი	საზამთრო.
	**	agvistoshi	qkvelas	gvqonda	tsivi	da tkbili	sazamthro.
	***	In August,	everyone	had	cold	and sweet	watermelons.
10	*	მეცხრამეტე	საუკუნეში	რუსეთს	ჰქონდა	სამფლობელოები	ამერიკაში.
	**	metskhramete	saukuneshi	ruseths	hqonda	samplobeloebi	amerikashi.
	***	In the nineteenth	century,	Russia	had	possessions	in America.
11	*	ჩემს	პაპას და	ბებიას	ჰქონდათ	კარგი	ლექსები.
	**	chems	παπας da	bebias	hqondath	kargi	leqsebi.
	***	My	grandfather and	grandmother	had	good	poems
12	*	იმერეთში	ჩემს	ბებიას	უხვად	ჰქონდა	ყველი.
	**	imerethshi	chems	bebias	ukhvad	hqonda	qkveli.
	***	In Imeretia	my	grandmother	had	plenty of	cheese.
13	*	გუშინ	მე	მქონდა	მძიმე	ბარგი	მანქანაში.
	**	gushin	me	mqonda	mdzime	bargi	manqanashi.

	***	Yesterday	I	had	a heavy	load	in the car.
14	*	სადილზე	ჩვენ	გვქონდა	ძეხვი,	თევზი და	კარტოფილი.
	**	sadilze	chven	gvqonda	dzekhvi,	thevzi da	kartopili.
	***	For dinner	we	had	sausages,	fish and	potatoes.
15	*	ქორწილში	ჩემს	საცოლოს	ჰქონდა	მოკლე	თმები.
	**	qortzilshi	chems	satsolos	hqonda	mokle	thmebi.
	***	At the wedding	my	daughter-in-law	had	short	hair.
16	*	მძიმე	ავადმყოფ	პაპას	არ ჰქონდა	მაგარი	გული.
	**	mdzime	avadmqkop	παπας	ar hqonda	magari	guli.
	***	A seriously	ill	grandfather	did not have	a strong	heart.
17	*	ზოგიერთ	საკითხზე	მეცნიერებს	არ ჰქონდათ	სწრაფი	პასუხები.
	**	zogiერთ	sakithkhze	metsnierebs	ar hqondath	stzrapi	pasukhebi.
	***	On some	questions	scientists	did not have	quick	answers.
18	*	სასამართლოს	ჰქონდა	ეჭვები	ერთ	რთულ	საქმეში.
	**	sasamarthlos	hqonda	etchvebi	erth	rthul	saqmeshi.
	***	The court	had	doubts	in one	complicated	case.
19	*	ერთი	დღე	ჩვენ	არ გვქონდა	წყალი	ბინაში.
	**	erthi	dgre	chven	ar gvqonda	tzqkali	binashi.
	***	One	day	we	did not have	water	in the apartment.
20	*	ერთ	მესაზღვრეს	ჰქონდა	ფარული	კავშირები	მტრებთან.
	**	erth	mesazgrvres	hqonda	paruli	kavshirebi	mtrebthan.
	***	One	border guard	had	secret	connections	with enemies.
21	*	ზაფხულში	ვაჭრებს	ჰქონდათ	იაფი	ხილი	ბაზარში.
	**	zapkhulshi	vatchrebs	hqondath	iapi	khili	bazarshi.
	***	In summer,	traders	had	cheap	fruits	in the market.
	*	ასი წლის	წინ	გლეხებს	უხვად	ჰქონდათ	გუთნები.

22	**	asi tzlis	tzin	glekhebs	ukh vad	hqondath	guthnebi.
	***	A hundred years	ago	the peasants	had	plenty of	plows.
23	*	ორი წლის	წინ	ჩემს ბიძას	ჰქონდა	სახელოსნო და	სამხერხაო.
	**	ori tzlis	tzin	chems bidzas	hqonda	sakhelosno da	samkherkhao.
	***	Two years	ago	my uncle	had	a workshop and	a sawmill.
24	*	მის	მეცნიერ	პაპას	ჰქონდა	ძვირი	წიგნები.
	**	mis	metsnier	πapas	hqonda	dzviri	tzignebi.
	***	His	scientist	grandfather	had	expensive	books.
25	*	ჩვენს	სოფლელ	მასწავლებლებს	არ ჰქონდათ	ადვილი	სამუშაო.
	**	chvens	soplel	mastzavleblebs	ar hqondath	advili	samushao.
	***	Our	rural	teachers	did not have	an easy	job.
26	*	ზოგიერთ	სასადილოს	ჰქონდა	ჩინური	და ინდური	სამზარეულო
	**	zogierth	sasadilos	hqonda	chinuri	da induri	samzareulo.
	***	Some	dining rooms	had	Chinese	and Indian	cuisine.
27	*	ჩვენს	მხარეს	ჰქონდა	ლამაზი	მთები და	მინდვრები.
	**	chvens	mkhares	hqonda	lamazi	mthebi da	mindvrebi.
	***	Our	region	had	beautiful	mountains and	fields.
28	*	ხუთი	დღის	წინ	მე მქონდა	კახური	ატამი.
	**	khuthi	dgris	tzin	me mqonda	kakhuri	atami.
	***	Five	days	ago	I had	Kakhetian	peaches.
29	*	სამასი წლის	წინ ჩვენს	ეკლესიას	ჰქონდა	მძიმე	დღეები.
	**	samasi tzlis	tzin chvens	eklesias	hqonda	mdzime	dgreebi.
	***	Three hundred years	ago our	church	had	hard	days.
30	*	აფხაზეთს	ჰქონდა	კარგი	თამბაქო	და	თხილი.
	**	apkhazeths	hqonda	kargi	thambaqo	da	thkhili.
	***	Abkhazia	had	good	tobacco	and	a small nut.

31	*	ჩვენს	ქალაქში	ვოგზალს	ჰქონდა	კარგი	სასტუმრო.
	**	chvens	qalaqshi	vogzals	hqonda	kargi	sastumro.
	***	In our	city,	terminal	had	a good	hotel.
32	*	შვიდ	ევროპულ	სახელმწიფოს	ჰქონდა	სამფლობელოები	აფრიკაში.
	**	shvid	evropul	sakhelmtzipos	hqonda	samplobeloebi	aprikashi.
	***	Seven	European	states	had	possessions	in Africa.
33	*	სამი წლის	წინ მე	მქონდა	ნაყოფიერი	სამუშაო	ბრიტანეთში.
	**	sami tzlis	tzin me	mqonda	naqkopieri	samushao	britanethshi.
	***	Three years	ago I	had	a fruitful	work	in Britain.
34	*	შენ	არ გქონდა	პასუხები	ჩემს	ზოგიერთ	კითხვებზე.
	**	shen	ar gqonda	pasukhebi	chems	zogieth	kithkhvebze.
	***	You	did not have	answers	to my	some	questions.
35	*	სოფელში	ჩემს პაპას	ჰქონდა	ლამაზი	და სწრაფი	ცხენი.
	**	sopelshi	chems papas	hqonda	lamazi	da stzrapi	tskheni.
	***	In the village,	my grandfather	had	a beautiful	and fast	horse.
36	*	გუშინ	ვაჭრებს	არ ჰქონდათ	ძვირი	ტანსაცმელი	ბაზარში.
	**	gushin	vatchrebs	ar hqondath	dzviri	tansatsmeli	bazarshi.
	***	Yesterday,	traders	did not have	expensive	clothes	in the market.
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms

of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 221-226, “Supplement to Lesson No. 50” on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words”.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson #50
1. გუშინ ჩემს მამას ჰქონდა ამერიკული გაზეთები. 2. ზაფხულში ჩვენს ბავშვებს ჰქონდათ თხელი ტანსაცმელი. 3. ზოგიერთ მის ნაცნობს ჰქონდა გერმანული მანქანა.	

Group # 1	Lesson #50
4. სოფელში მათ ჰქონდათ კარგი სასოფლო იარაღები. 5. იანვარში მე მქონდა მხიარული დღეები. 6. ზაფხულში სოფელში უხვად გვქონდა ბალი და ალუბალი.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fiftieth lesson.

Lesson fifty one

The Georgian verbs in the future tense

Content of the fifty-first lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we will continue our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action "ქონა" ("qona"), the synonym of which in English is the word "Have something". This time we will study the use of the word in the future tense."

2. "In the third person of the singular future tense, the linking verb "ეყნება" ("eqneba") should be used, which in English means "Will have something." If we put the word "მას" ("mas"), which replaces the personal pronoun ის (is) in the dative case, before the verb "ეყნება" ("eqneba"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მას ეყნება" ("mas eqneba"), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "he (she, it) will have something." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მას" ("mas"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the singular, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case."

3. "In the third person of the plural future tense, the linking verb "ეყნებათ" ("eqnebath") is used, which in English means "Will have something." If we put the word "მათ" ("math"), which replaces the personal pronoun ისინი (isini) in the dative case, before the verb "ეყნებათ" ("eqnebath"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მათ ეყნებათ" ("math eqnebath"), which is synonymous with the English affirmative phrase "They will have something." It is necessary to remember the following grammatical rule - the word "მათ" ("math"), a personal pronoun of the third person in the plural, replaces the Georgian noun in the dative case of the plural."

4. "In the second person of the singular future tense, the linking verb "გეყნება" ("geqneba") is used, which in English means "Will have something." If before the verb "გეყნება" ("geqneba") we put the word "შენ" ("sheng"), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person singular, then we get the affirmative phrase "შენ გეყნება" ("shen geqneba"), whose English synonym is the affirmative phrase "You will have something."

5. "In the second person plural of the future tense, the linking verb "გეყნებათ" ("geqnebath") is used, which in English means "Will have something." If before the verb "გეყნებათ" ("geqnebath") we put the word "თქვენ" ("thqven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the second person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "თქვენ გეყნებათ" ("thqven geqnebath"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "You will have anything."

6. "In the first person of the singular future tense, the linking verb "მეყნება" ("meqneba") is used, which in English means "Will have something." If we put the word "მე" ("me"), the familiar personal pronoun in the first person singular, before the verb "მეყნება" ("meqneba"), then we get the affirmative phrase "მე მეყნება" ("me meqneba"), a English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "I will have something."

7. "In the first person of the plural future tense, the linking verb "გვეყნება" ("gveqneba") is used, which in English means "Will have something." If before the verb "გვეყნება" ("gveqneba") we put the word "ჩვენ" ("chven"), a familiar personal pronoun in the first person plural, we get the affirmative phrase "ჩვენ გვეყნება" ("chven gveqneba"), the English synonym of which is the affirmative phrase "We will have something."

8. "Interrogative phrases are formed by rearranging the above-mentioned verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns in affirmative phrases. For example, "მას ექნება" ("mas eqneba") → "ექნება მას?" ("eqneba mas?") and so on."

9. "Negative phrases are formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") in affirmative phrases between the above linking verbs and the corresponding personal pronouns. For example, "მას ექნება" ("mas eqneba") → "მას არ ექნება" ("mas ar eqneba") and so on."

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 60 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's get acquainted and learn the above forms of the verbal name of the action ყოლა (qkola) in the future tense using already familiar personal pronouns."

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №60

The basic structure of the verb «ქონა» («Have something») in the future tense										
Grammatical number	Note	Grammatical third person			Grammatical second person			Grammatical first person		
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
Affirmative collocations										
Singular	*	მას	ექნება	*	შენ	გექნება	*	მე	მექნება	
	**	mas	eqneba	**	shen	geqneba	**	me	meqneba	
Plural	*	მათ	ექნებათ	*	თქვენ	გექნებათ	*	ჩვენ	გვექნება	
	**	math	eqnebath	**	thqven	geqnebath	**	chven	gveqneba	
* Words in Georgian language										
** English transliteration of Georgian words										
Interrogative word combinations (formed by rearranging link-verbs and personal pronouns)										
Singular		ექნება	მას?		გექნება	შენ?		მექნება	მე?	
Plural		ექნებათ	მათ?		გექნებათ	თქვენ?		გვექნება	ჩვენ?	
Negative word combinations [formed by inserting the word "არ" (in English - "not") between personal										

		pronouns and link-verbs]							
Singular		მას	არ ექნება		შენ	არ გექნება		მე	არ მექნება
Plural		მათ	არ ექნებათ		თქვენ	არ გექნებათ		ჩვენ	არ გვექნება

3) After acquaintance with the basic structure of the verb “ქონა” (“Have something”) in the future tense, the facilitators address the audience with the following words: “Now we can construct the simplest affirmative and negative Georgian sentences in the future tense using the above verbs. These sentences will also use many of the Georgian words we have already learned in previous lessons. Also note the use of punctuation marks (period, comma, colon). It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 61 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №61

Ordinal №		Georgian affirmative and negative sentences using forms (link-verbs) of the verbal name of the action «ქონა» («Have something»)					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	ერთი წლის	შემდეგ	მე	მექნება	მეორე	ბინა.
	**	erthi tzlis	shemdeg	me	meqneba	meore	bina.
	***	A year	later	I	will have	a second	apartment.
2	*	ჩვენთან	სამინისტროში	შენ არ	გექნება	რთული	სამუშაო.
	**	chventhan	saministroshi	shen ar	geqneba	rthuli	samushao.
	***	In my	ministry	you will not	have	a difficult	job.
3	*	ხვალ	ჩვენ არ	გვექნება	წყალი	საპარიკმახეროში.	
	**	khval	chven ar	gveqneba	tzqkali	sapparikmakheroshi.	
	***	Tomorrow	we will not	have	water	in barbershop.	
4	*	იმერეთში	მათ	ექნებათ	კარგი და	მსუბუქი	ღვინო.
	**	imerethshi	math	eqnebath	kargi da	msubuqi	grvino.
	***	In Imeretia	they	will have	a good and	light	wine.
	*	ჩვენ	გვექნება	ნაყოფიერი	კავშირები	ამერიკულ	სააგენტოებთან

5	**	chven	gveqneba	naqkopieri	kavshirebi	amerikul	saagentoebthan.
	***	We	will have	fruitful	ties	with American	agencies.
6	*	პირველ	იანვარს	მე	მექნება	მხიარული	დღე.
	**	πirvel	ianvars	me	meqneba	mkhiaruli	dgre.
	***	On the first	of January	I	will have	a fun	day.
7	*	საზაფხულო	ბანაკს	ექნება	ორასი	ადგილი	ბავშვებისთვის
	**	sazapkhulo	banaks	eqneba	orasi	adgili	bavshvebisthvis
	***	The summer	camp	will have	two hundred	places	for children.
8	*	ჩვენს	მანქანაში	მგზავრებს არ	ექნებათ	მძიმე	ბარგი.
	**	chvens	manqanashi	mgzavrebs ar	eqnebath	mdzime	bargi.
	***	In our	car,	passengers will	not have	a heavy	load.
9	*	ჩვენს	სახელმწიფოს არ	ექნება	საელჩოები	ყველა	დედაქალაქში.
	**	chvens	sakhelmtzipos ar	eqneba	saelchoebi	qkvela	dedaqalaqshi.
	***	Our	state will not	have	embassies	in all	capitals.
10	*	ამ	სადამოს	გვექნება	იშვიათი	კახური	ღვინო.
	**	am	sagramos	gveqneba	ishviathi	kakhuri	grvino.
	***	This	evening	we will have	a rare	Kakhetian	wine.
11	*	თავის	მხარეში	მას	ექნება	ვენახი და	ბოსტანი.
	**	thavis	mkhareshi	mas	eqneba	venakhi da	bostani.
	***	In his	land	he	will have	a vineyard and	vegetable garden.
12	*	ქორწილისთვის	ჩემს	საცოლოს	ექნება	კობტა	ტანსაცმელი.
	**	qortzilisthvis	chems	satsolos	eqneba	kokhta	tansatsmeli.
	***	For wedding,	my	fiancee	will have	elegant	clothes.
13	*	ორჯერ	კვირაში	ბავშვებს	ექნებათ	თევზი	სადილზე.
	**	orjer	kvirashi	bavshvebs	eqnebath	thevzi	sadilze.
	***	Twice	a week	the children	will have	fish	for lunch.

14	*	საქართველოში	ჩვენს	ეკლესიას	ექნება	ახალი	სამფლობელოები.
	**	saqarthveloshi	chvens	eklesias	eqneba	akhali	samplobeloebi.
	***	In Georgia,	our	church	will have	new	possessions.
15	*	პარასკევს	ვაჭრებს	ექნებათ	იაფი	კარტოფილი	ბაზარში.
	**	paraskevs	vatchrebs	eqnebath	iapi	kartopili	bazarshi.
	***	On Friday,	traders	will have	cheap	potatoes	in the market.
16	*	თითოეულ	საპატიმროში	სამკითხველოებს	ექნებათ	გაზეთები და	წიგნები.
	**	thithoeul	sapatimroshi	samkithkhveloebis	eqnebath	gazethebi da	tzignebi.
	***	In each	prison,	reading rooms	will have	newspapers and	books.
17	*	ამ საკითხზე	მეცნიერებს	ექნებათ	კავშირები	ზოგიერთ	სააგენტოსთან.
	**	am sakithkhze	metsnierebs	eqnebath	kavshirebi	zogiorth	saagentosthan.
	***	On this issue,	scientists	will have	links	with some	agencies.
18	*	მასწავლებელს	ექნება	რთული	მაგალითები	სტუდენტებისთვის.	
	**	mastzavlebel	eqneba	rthuli	magalithebi	studentebisthvis.	
	***	The teacher	will have	complex	examples	for students.	
19	*	შენ	გექნება	მხიარული	დღეები	პარიზელ	სტუმრებთან.
	**	shen	geqneba	mkhiaruli	dgreebi	parizel	stumrebthan.
	***	You	will have	merry	days	with the Parisian	guests.
20	*	ხუთი	დღე	ავადმყოფს	ექნება	მძიმე	ღამეები.
	**	khuthi	dgre	avadmqkops	eqneba	mdzime	grameebi.
	***	Five	days	a patient	will have	hard	nights.
21	*	სოფელში	ჩემს	პაპას	ექნება	თავისი	წისქვილი.
	**	sopelshi	chems	pasas	eqneba	thavisi	tzisqvili.
	***	In the village	my	grandfather	will have	his own	mill.
22	*	თქვენ არ	გექნებათ	სწრაფი	პასუხები	ასეთ	საკითხებზე.
	**	thqven ar	geqnebath	stzrapi	pasukhebi	aseth	sakithkhebze.

	***	You will not	have	quick	answers	to such	questions.
23	*	ჩვენს	სახელმწიფოს	არ ექნება	ვიწრო	საგზაო	გვირაბები.
	**	chvens	sakhelmtzipos	ar eqneba	vitzro	sagzao	gvirabebi.
	***	Our	state	will not have	narrow	road	tunnels.
24	*	მე არ	მექნება	თავისუფალი	სამუშაო	ადგილები	სააგენტოში.
	**	me ar	meqneba	thavisupali	samushao	adgilebi	saagentoshi.
	***	I will not	have	vacant	jobs		in the agency.
25	*	თქვენს	საპატიმროში	პატიმრებს არ	ექნებათ	მძიმე	სამუშაო.
	**	thqvens	sapatimroshi	patimrebs ar	eqnebath	mdzime	samushao.
	***	In your	prison,	inmates will not	have	hard	work.
26	*	სამინისტროში	მე საერთო	არაფერი	მექნება	ზოგიერთ	მეკრთამესთან.
	**	saministroshi	me saertho	araperi	meqneba	zogierth	meqrthamesthan.
	***	In ministry,	I will not have anything to do			with some	bribe-takers.
27	*	ყველა	ჩვენს	მედესანტეს	ექნება	მძიმე	იარაღი.
	**	qkvela	chvens	medesantes	eqneba	mdzime	iaragri.
	***	All	our	paratroopers	will have	heavy	weapons.
28	*	ჩვენს	საავადმყოფოს	არ	ექნება	ვიწრო	კიბეები.
	**	chvens	saavadmqkopolos	ar	eqneba	vitzro	kibeebi.
	***	Our	hospital	will not	have	narrow	stairs.
29	*	ამ საკითხში	შენ	იშვიათად	გექნება	კავშირები	ჩემთან.
	**	am sakithkhshi	shen	ishviathad	geqneba	kavshirebi	chemthan.
	***	In this matter,	you	will rarely	have	a connection	with me.
30	*	ჩვენს	სასტუმროს	ექნება	ოცდაათი	ადგილი	სტუმრებისთვის
	**	chvens	sastumros	eqneba	otsdaathi	adgili	stumrebisthvis.
	***	Our	hotel	will have	thirty	seats	for guests.
	*	ამ შაბათს	ვაჭრებს	ექნებათ	იაფი	ღვინო	ბაზარში.

31	**	am shabaths	vatchrebs	eqnebath	iapi	grvino	bazarshi.
	***	This Saturday,	traders	will have	cheap	wine	in the market.
32	*	ქართველ	მოქალაქეებს	ექნებათ	ნაყოფიერი	კავშირები	თურქეთში.
	**	qarthvel	moqalaaqebs	eqnebath	naqkopieri	kavshirebi	thurqethshi.
	***	Georgian	citizens	will have	fruitful	ties	in Turkey.
33	*	ერთი წლის	შემდეგ მე	მექნება	კარგი და	იოლი	სამუშაო.
	**	erthi tzlis	shemdeg me	meqneba	kargi da	ioli	samushao.
	***	A year	later I	will have	a good and	easy	job.
34	*	ხვალ	დილით	ჩვენ	გვექნება	კარაქი	და პური.
	**	khval	dilith	chven	gveqneba	karaq	da puri.
	***	Tomorrow	morning	we	will have	butter	and bread.
35	*	დღეს	ბავშვებს	ექნებათ	ვაშლი,	მსხალი და	ატამი.
	**	dgres	bavshvebs	eqnebath	vashli,	mskhali da	atami.
	***	Today,	children	will have	apples,	pears and	peaches.
36	*	თითოეულ	ჩვენს	მხატვარს	ექნება	თავისი	სახელოსნო.
	**	thithoeul	chvens	mkhatvars	eqneba	thavisi	sakhelosno.
	***	Each of	our	artists	will have	their own	workshop.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 227-232,

"Supplement to Lesson No. 51" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson #51
1. ერთი წლის შემდეგ მე მექნება მეორე ბინა.	
2. ჩვენთან სამინისტროში შენ არ გექნება რთული სამუშაო.	
3. ხვალ საპარიკმახეროში ჩვენ არ გვექნება წყალი.	

Group # 1	Lesson #51
4. იმერეთში მათ ექნებათ კარგი და მსუბუქი ღვინო.	
5. ჩვენ გვექნება ნაყოფიერი კავშირები ამერიკულ სააგენტოებთან.	
6. პირველ იანვარს მე მექნება მხიარული დღე.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-first lesson.

Lesson fifty two

The Georgian verbs in interrogative sentences

The content of the fifty-second lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Today we must complete the lesson with different forms of the verbal name of the action "ქონა" ("qona"). In the previous three lessons, we got acquainted with these forms in affirmative and, occasionally, in negative sentences. This time we should pay attention to interrogative sentences in all grammatical tenses".

2. "In interrogative sentences, we use part of those interrogative pronouns that we learned during the twenty-fourth lesson."

2) Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 62 on a large screen. The facilitator says: "Let's learn interrogative sentences using various forms of the verbal name of the action "ქონა" ("qona") in all grammatical tenses. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent interrogative sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one".

The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №62

Ordinal №		Interrogative sentences using different forms of verbal action name «ქონა» («qona») in all grammatical tenses					
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	რომელ	სოფელში	გაქვს	შენ	ვენახი და	ბოსტანი?
	**	romel	sopelshi	gaqvs	shen	venakhi da	bostani?
	***	In which	village	do you have		a vineyard and	vegetable garden?
2	*	აქვს	შენ	დას	კარგი	ლექსები	ბავშვებისთვის?
	**	aqvs	shen	das	kargi	leqsebi	bavshvebishvis?
	***	Does your sister have			good	poems	for children?
3	*	რა	ეჭვი	აქვს	ჩვენს	მოსამართლეს	ამ საკითხში?
	**	ra	etchvi	aqvs	chvens	mosamarthles	am sakithkhshi?
	***	What	doubts	does our judge have			in this matter?

4	*	როგორი	იარაღი	აქვთ	ჩვენს	მესაზღვრეებს?	
	**	rogori	iaragri	aqvth	chvens	mesazgrvreebs?	
	***	What kind of	weapons	do our border guards have?			
5	*	რამდენად	რთული	სამუშაო	გაქვთ	თქვენ	სამინისტროში?
	**	ramdenad	rthuli	samushao	gaqvth	thqven	saministroshi?
	***	How	complicated	work	do you have		in the ministry?
6	*	რა	გაზეთები	აქვს	თქვენს	ბიბლიოთეკას	დღეს?
	**	ra	gazethebi	aqvs	thqvens	bibliothekas	dgres?
	***	What	newspaper	does your library have			today?
7	*	რა	ავეჯი	გაქვს	შენ	შენს	ბინაში?
	**	ra	aveji	gaqvs	shen	shens	binashi?
	***	What	furniture	do you have		in your	apartment?
8	*	რანაირი	წიგნები	აქვთ	შენს	ბიჭს და	გოგოს?
	**	ranairi	tzignebi	aqvth	shens	bitchs da	gogos?
	***	What kind of	books	do your son and daughter have?			
9	*	როგორი	ნაპირები	აქვს	მდინარეს	შენს	სოფელში?
	**	rogori	naπirebi	aqvs	mdinares	shens	sopelshi?
	***	What kind of	shores	does the river has		in your	village?
10	*	როგორი	გზები	აქვთ	ბრიტანეთს,	ესპანეთს და	ფინეთს?
	**	rogori	gzebi	aqvth	britaneths,	esπaneths da	pineths?
	***	What	roads	do Britain, Spain and Finland have?			
11	*	როგორი	სამუშაო	გაქვს	შენ	შენს	სასტუმროში?
	**	rogori	samushao	gaqvs	shen	shens	sastumroshi?
	***	What kind of	work	do you have		in your	hotel?
12	*	რა	საერთო	აქვს	მას	შენს	ძმასთან?
	**	ra	saertho	aqvs	mas	shens	dzmasthan?

	***	What	does she have in common			with your	brother?
13	*	რა	გქონდათ	თქვენ	გუშინ	სადილზე?	
	**	ra	gqondath	thqven	gushin	sadilze?	
	***	What	did you have		yesterday	for dinner?	
14	*	როგორი	სამუშაო	ჰქონდათ	თქვენს	ნათესაებს	რუსეთში?
	**	rogori	samushao	hqondath	thqvens	nathesavebs	rusethshi?
	***	What kind of	work	did your relatives have			in Russia?
15	*	რანაირი	კავშირები	გქონდა	შენ	მოსკოველ	ვაჭრებთან?
	**	ranairi	kavshirebi	gqonda	shen	moskovel	vatchrebthan?
	***	What kind of	connections	did you have		with Moscow	merchants?
16	*	რა	სამფლობელოები	ჰქონდა	რუსეთს	მეცხრამეტე	საუკუნეში?
	**	ra	samplobeloebi	hqonda	ruseths	metskhramete	saukuneshi?
	***	What kind of	possessions	did Russia have		in nineteenth	century?
17	*	რამდენად	ვიწრო	გზები	ჰქონდა	იმათ	ქალაქს?
	**	ramdenad	vitzro	gzebi	hqonda	imath	qalaqs?
	***	How	narrow	roads	did their city have?		
18	*	რა	პასუხები	ჰქონდათ	სტუდენტებს	ამ	კითხვებზე?
	**	ra	pasukhebi	hqondath	studentebs	am	kithkhvebze?
	***	What	answers	did the students have		for these	questions?
19	*	ვისი	წიგნები	ჰქონდა	ჩვენს	მასწავლებელს	გუშინ?
	**	visi	tzignebi	hqonda	chvens	mastzavlebs	gushin?
	***	Whose	books	did our teacher have			yesterday?
20	*	როგორი	კბილები	ჰქონდათ	თქვენს	ავადმყოფებს?	
	**	rogori	kbilebi	hqondath	thqvens	avadmqkopebs?	
	***	What kind of	teeth	did your patients have?			
	*	რა	საკითხები	ჰქონდათ	ექიმებს	თავიანთ	მმართველთან?

21	**	ra	sakithkhebi	hqondath	eqimebs	thavianth	mmarthvelthan?
	***	What	questions	did the	doctors have	with their	manager?
22	*	როგორი	ხორცი,	ძეხვი	და თევზი	ჰქონდა	მზარეულს?
	**	rogori	khortsi,	dzekhvi	da thevzi	hqonda	mzareuls?
	***	What kind of	meat,	sausages	and fish	did the	cook have?
23	*	როგორი	ღვინო	ჰქონდათ	შენს	პარიზელ	მასპინძლებს?
	**	rogori	grvino	hqondath	shens	parizel	maspindzlebs?
	***	What kind of	wine	did your	Paris	hosts	have?
24	*	რა	სამუშაო	ჰქონდა	სააგენტოს	თავისი	მუშებისთვის?
	**	ra	samushao	hqonda	saagentos	thavisi	mushebisthvis?
	***	What	work	did the	agency have	for its	workers?
25	*	რამდენი	ადგილი	ექნება	თქვენს	სასტუმროს	სტუმრებისთვის?
	**	ramdeni	adgili	eqneba	thqvens	sastumros	stumrebisthvis?
	***	How many	seats	will your	hotel	have	for guests?
26	*	როგორი	ღვინო	გექნება	შენ	ხვალ	სადამოს?
	**	rogori	grvino	geqneba	shen	khval	sagramos?
	***	What kind of	wine	will you	have	tomorrow	evening?
27	*	ექნებათ	ვაჭრებს	იაფი	ტანსაცმელი	ამ	სამშაბათს?
	**	eqnebath	vatchrebs	iapi	tansatsmeli	am	samshabaths?
	***	Will have	traders	cheap	clothing	this	Tuesday?
28	*	რამდენი	დრო	მექნება	მე	ჩემი	სამუშაოსთვის?
	**	ramdeni	dro	meqneba	me	chemi	samushaosthvis?
	***	How much	time	will I	have	for my	work?
29	*	ექნება	მას	ოცი	მაგიდა	სასადილოში	ხვალ?
	**	eqneba	mas	otsi	magida	sasadiloshi	khval?
	***	Will he	have	twenty	tables	in dining room	tomorrow?

30	*	რანაირი	ბარგი	ექნებათ	მგზავრებს	თქვენს	მანქანაში?
	**	ranairi	bargi	eqnebath	mgzavrebs	thqvens	manqanashi?
	***	What kind of	cargo	will passengers have		in your	car?
31	*	სადაური	მანქანები	გექნებათ	შენ და	შენს	ძმას?
	**	sadauri	manqanebi	geqnebath	shen da	shens	dzmas?
	***	What kind of	cars	will you and your brother have?			
32	*	რა	ხილი	ექნება	მას	ხვალ	სადამოსთვის?
	**	ra	khili	eqneba	mas	khval	sagramosthvis?
	***	What	fruit	will he have		for tomorrow	evening?
33	*	რამდენი	საზაფხულო	ბანაკი	ექნება	სამინისტროს	ბავშვებისთვის?
	**	ramdeni	sazapkhulo	banaki	eqneba	saministros	bavshvebisthvis?
	***	How many	summer	camps	will the ministry have		for children?
34	*	რომელი	სახელი	ექნება	შენს	ბავშვს?	
	**	romeli	sakheli	eqneba	shens	bavshvs?	
	***	What	name	will your child have?			
35	*	რა	სამუშაო	ექნება	მოახლეს	თქვენს	ბინაში?
	**	ra	samushao	eqneba	moakhles	thqvens	binashi?
	***	What kind of	work	will the servant have		in your	apartment?
36	*	რა	სურსათი	გვექნება	ჩვენ	სადილისთვის?	
	**	ra	sursathi	gveqneba	chven	sadilisthvis?	
	***	What kind of	food	will we have		for dinner?	
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 233-238, "Supplement to Lesson No. 52" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words".

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson #52
1. რომელ სოფელში გაქვს შენ ვენახი და ბოსტანი?	
2. აქვს შენ დას კარგი ლექსები ბავშვებისთვის?	
3. რა ეჭვი აქვს ჩვენს მოსამართლეს ამ საკითხში?	

Group # 1	Lesson #52
4. როგორი იარაღი აქვთ ჩვენს მესაზღვრეებს?	
5. რამდენად რთული სამუშაო გაქვთ თქვენ სამინისტროში?	
6. რა გაზეთები აქვს თქვენს ბიბლიოთეკას დღეს?	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out in exactly the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-second lesson.

Lesson fifty three

The Georgian prefixes

The content of the fifty-third lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "We have already familiarized ourselves with three Georgian verbal action names – "ყოფა" ("qopa"), "ყოლა" ("qola") and "ქონა" ("qona"), which respectively express "location of someone or something anywhere", "the availability of an animate object" and "the availability of an inanimate object".

2. "Before completing our initial course, we should get acquainted with the no less important Georgian verbal name of the action - "სვლა" ("svla"), the English synonyms of which are "Walking" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "Riding" (expresses non-pedestrian movement) ". I want to immediately note that we will study the semantic meanings of this Georgian name using Georgian prefixes".

3. "In the Georgian language, as in English, prefixes play a huge role in expressing the semantic diversity of words. With the help of prefixes, new words are formed or a new shade is introduced into the meaning of words. Prefixes are used in verbs or other words derived from verbs. Prefixes, like postpositions, are written together with words".

Note: With regard to Georgian prefixes, the comments of Professor Georgi Tsibakhashvili from his textbook "Self-tuition manual of the Georgian language" (Pages No. 43-45) will be used.

4. "Today we will not have written work in groups. This lesson will resemble the second and third lessons, when we limited ourselves to oral exercises".

2) Next, the facilitator moves on to the main part of the lesson:

1. "So, let's start our acquaintance with the Georgian verbal name of the action "სვლა" ("svla"). I repeat that the main English synonyms for this Georgian name are "Walking" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "Riding" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). Immediately, the facilitator writes the Georgian word "სვლა" and the English transliteration of this word ("svla") on the blackboard and pronounces them aloud (Note: instead of a blackboard and chalk, you can use a flip sheet and a marker). Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the Georgian word "სვლა" ("svla").

2. "If the word "სვლა" ("svla") is joined together with the prefix "მო-" ("mo-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "მო-სვლა" ("mo-svla"), which is synonymous with the English words "Coming" (expresses pedestrian traffic) and "Arrival" (expresses non-pedestrian traffic). It should be remembered that the prefix „მო-“ ("mo-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out towards the speaker (The one who moves approaches the speaker)". The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "მოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "mosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "მოსვლა" ("mosvla").

3. "If the word "სვლა" ("svla") is joined together with the prefix "მი-" ("mi-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "მი-სვლა" ("mi-svla"), which is also synonymous with the English words "Coming" (expresses

pedestrian traffic) and "Arrival" (expresses non-pedestrian traffic). However, it should be remembered that the prefix „მი-“ (“mi-”) emphasizes the fact that a movement is being made towards something (It is understood that the someone is moving away from the speaker). The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "მისვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "misvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word “მისვლა” (“misvla”).

4. “If the word “სვლა” (“svla”) is joined together with the prefix “ჩა-” (“cha-”), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - “ჩა-სვლა” (“cha-svla”), English synonym of which is the word "Descent". It should be remembered that the prefix "ჩა-" ("cha-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out from top to bottom and in depth (It is understood that the someone is moving away from the speaker). Immediately, the facilitator writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "ჩასვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "chasvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word “ჩასვლა” (“chasvla”).

5. “If in the word “ჩა-სვლა” (“cha-svla”), between the prefix “ჩა-” (“cha-”) and the word “-სვლა” (“-svla”), insert another prefix “- მო-” (“-mo-”), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - “ჩა-მო-სვლა” (“cha-mo-svla”), which has the same semantic meaning as the word “ჩა-სვლა” (“cha-svla”) with the only difference that the presence of the prefix "-მო-" ("-mo-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out towards the speaker. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "ჩამოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "chamosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word “ჩამოსვლა” (“chamosvla”).

6. “If the word “სვლა” (“svla”) is joined together with the prefix “ა-” (“a-”), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - “ა-სვლა” (“a-svla”), which is synonymous with the English words "Ascend" and "Rise". It should be remembered that the prefix "ა-" ("a-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out from the bottom up (It is understood that the someone is moving away from the speaker). Immediately, the leader writes on the board the Georgian word "ასვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "asvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word “ასვლა” (“asvla”).

7. “If in the word “ა-სვლა” (“a-svla”), between the prefix “ა-” (“a-”) and the word “-სვლა” (“-svla”), insert another prefix “- მო-” (“-mo-”), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - “ა-მო-სვლა” (“a-mo-svla”), which has the same semantic meaning as the word “ა-სვლა” (“a-svla”) with the only difference that the presence of the prefix "-მო-" ("-mo-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out towards the speaker. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "ამოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "amosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word “ამოსვლა” (“amosvla”).

8. “If the word “სვლა” (“svla”) is joined together with the prefix “შე-” (“she-”), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - “შე-სვლა” (“she-svla”), which is synonymous with the English words "Entrance" (expresses pedestrian and non-pedestrian traffic). It should be remembered that the prefix „შე-“ (“she-”) emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out into something (It is understood that the someone is moving away from the speaker)”. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "შესვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "shesvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word “შესვლა” (“shesvla”).

9. "If in the word "შე-სვლა" ("she-svla"), between the prefix "შე-" ("she-") and the word "-სვლა" ("-svla"), insert another prefix "- მო-" ("-mo-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "შე-მო-სვლა" ("she-mo-svla"), which has the same semantic meaning as the word "შე-სვლა" ("she-svla") with the only difference that the presence of the prefix "-მო-" ("-mo-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out towards the speaker. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "შემოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "shemosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "შემოსვლა" ("shemosvla").

10. "If the word "სვლა" ("svla") is combined with the prefix "გა-" ("ga-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "გა-სვლა" ("ga-svla"), which is synonymous with the English words "Exit" (expresses pedestrian traffic) and "Departure" (expresses non-pedestrian traffic). It should be remembered that the prefix „გა-“ ("ga-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out from something (It is understood that the someone is moving away from the speaker)". The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "გასვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "gasvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "გასვლა" ("gasvla").

11. "If in the word "გა-სვლა" ("ga-svla"), between the prefix "გა-" ("ga-") and the word "-სვლა" ("-svla"), insert another prefix "- მო-" ("-mo-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "გა-მო-სვლა" ("ga-mo-svla"), which has the same semantic meaning as the word "გა-სვლა" ("ga-svla") with the only difference that the presence of the prefix "-მო-" ("-mo-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out towards the speaker. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "გამოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "gamosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "გამოსვლა" ("gamosvla").

12. "If in the word "გა-სვლა" ("ga-svla"), between the prefix "გა-" ("ga-") and the word "-სვლა" ("-svla"), insert another prefix "- და-" ("-da-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "გა-და-სვლა" ("ga-da-svla"), the English synonyms of which are the words "Transition" (expresses pedestrian traffic) and "Moving" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). It should be remembered that the additional prefix "და-" ("yes-") emphasizes the fact that movement is carried out through something (It is understood that the someone is moving away from the speaker). The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "გადასვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "gadasvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "გადასვლა" ("gadasvla").

13. "If in the word "გა-და-სვლა" ("ga-da-svla"), between the prefix "და-" ("da -") and the word "-სვლა" ("-svla"), insert another prefix "-მო-" ("-mo-"), we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "გა-დ-მო-სვლა" ("ga-d-mo-svla"). It has the same semantic meaning as the word "გა-და-სვლა" ("ga-da-svla") with the only difference that the presence of the prefix "-მო-" ("-mo-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is carried out towards the speaker (the letter ა before the prefix "-მო-" is omitted)". The facilitator immediately writes on the board the Georgian word "გადმოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "gadmosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "გადმოსვლა" ("gadmosvla").

14. "If the word "სვლა" ("svla") is joined together with the prefix "წა-" ("tza-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "წა-სვლა" ("tza-svla"), which is synonymous with the English word "Departure" (expresses pedestrian or non-pedestrian traffic). It should be remembered that the prefix „წა-“ ("tza-") emphasizes the fact that the movement is generally carried out away from the speaker (He who moves away from the speaker)". Immediately, the facilitator writes

on the blackboard the Georgian word "წასვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "tzasvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "წასვლა" ("tzasvla").

15. "If in the word "წა-სვლა" ("tza-svla"), between the prefix "წა-" ("tza -") and the word "-სვლა" ("-svla"), insert another prefix "- მო-" ("-mo-"), then we get a new Georgian verbal name of the action - "წა-მო-სვლა" ("tza-mo-svla"), which, unlike the word "წა-სვლა" ("tza-svla"), emphasizes the fact that the movement is generally carried out towards the speaker. The facilitator immediately writes on the blackboard the Georgian word "წამოსვლა" and the English transliteration of this word - "tzamosvla" and pronounces them aloud. Following the leader, each of the 18 listeners, in turn and separately, pronounces aloud the word "წამოსვლა" ("tzamosvla").

3) At the end of the lesson, the facilitator summarizes the work done in the lesson: "Today we got acquainted with 15 new verbal names of action [სვლა (svla), მოსვლა (mosvla), მისვლა (misvla), ჩასვლა (chasvla), ჩამოსვლა (chamosvla), ასვლა (asvla), ამოსვლა (amosvla), შესვლა (shesvla), შემოსვლა (shemosvla), გასვლა (gasvla), გამოსვლა (gamosvla), გადასვლა (gadasvla), გადმოსვლა (gadmosvla), წასვლა (tzasvla), წამოსვლა (tzamosvla)] . In subsequent lessons, we will take a closer look at the personal forms of these verbal action names in all grammatical persons and numbers. In these sentences, we will be convinced that these words have broad semantic meanings".

This concludes the fifty-third lesson.

Lesson fifty four

The familiar wishes in Georgian

The content of the fifty-fourth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “In the previous lesson, we got acquainted with the 14 verbal names of the action, the basis of which is the word “სვლა” (“svla”). This circumstance provides an excellent opportunity to get acquainted with examples of the familiar expression of desire when referring to a second person or to second persons”.

2. “For clarity, let's take one of the familiar verbal names of the action - „მო-სვლა“ (“mo-svla”), the English synonyms of which are the words “Coming” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “Arrival” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express in Georgian a familiar wish in the singular - “Come!” or "Arrive!" - we need to do the following work: we take the word "მო-სვლა" ("mo-svla") and from this word we delete its main part - "-სვლა" ("-svla"). In its place, we must put the letter combination "-დი" ("-di"). We will get the Georgian word we need, expressing a familiar wish - "მო-დი!" ("Mo-di!").

3. “In order to express in Georgian the same familiar wish in the plural “Come!” or “Arrive!”, we need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar word - “მო-დი!” (“mo-di!”) and at the end, after the letter “ი” (“i”), add the letter “-თ” (“-th”). We will get the Georgian word we need, expressing a familiar wish - “მო-დი-თ!” (“Mo-di-th!”).

4. "Let's look at table #63, which shows all Georgian words expressing familiar wishes based on those verbal action names that we got acquainted with in the previous lesson (these words are presented in both singular and plural numbers)".

2) With the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 63 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice both the Georgian verbal names of the action (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian words expressing familiar wishes, based on these names (columns 4 and 5).

Table №63

Georgian words expressing familiar wishes				
Ordinal №		Verbal action names	Words expressing familiar wishes	
			Singular (wish is addressed to one person)	Plural (wish is addressed to two or more persons)
1	2	3	4	5
	*	მო-სვლა	მო-დი!	მო-დი-თ!

1	**	mo-svla	mo-di!	mo-di-th!
	***	Coming here	Come here!	Come here!
2	*	მი-სვლა	მი-დი!	მი-დი-თ!
	**	mi-svla	mi-di!	mi-di-th!
	***	Going there	Go there!	Go there!
3	*	ჩა-სვლა	ჩა-დი!	ჩა-დი-თ!
	**	cha-svla	cha-di!	cha-di-th!
	***	Going down!	Go down!	Go down!
4	*	ჩა-მო-სვლა	ჩა-მო-დი!	ჩა-მო-დი-თ!
	**	cha-mo-svla	cha-mo-di!	cha-mo-di-th!
	***	Coming down!	Come down!	Come down!
5	*	ა-სვლა	ა-დი!	ა-დი-თ!
	**	a-svla	a-di!	a-di-th!
	***	Going up	go up!	go up!
6	*	ა-მო-სვლა	ა-მო-დი!	ა-მო-დი-თ!
	**	a-mo-svla	a-mo-di!	a-mo-di-th!
	***	Coming up	Come up!	Come up!
7	*	შე-სვლა	შე-დი!	შე-დი-თ!
	**	she-svla	she-di!	she-di-th!
	***	Going into	Go into!	Go into!
8	*	შე-მო-სვლა	შე-მო-დი!	შე-მო-დი-თ!
	**	she-mo-svla	she-mo-di!	she-mo-di-th!
	***	Coming into	Come into!	Come into!
9	*	გა-სვლა	გა-დი!	გა-დი-თ!
	**	ga-svla	ga-di!	ga-di-th!
	***	Going out	Go out!	Go out!

10	*	გა-მო-სვლა	გა-მო-დი!	გა-მო-დი-თ!
	**	ga-mo-svla	ga-mo-di!	ga-mo-di-th!
	***	Coming out	Come out!	Come out!
11	*	გადა-სვლა	გადა-დი!	გადა-დი-თ!
	**	gada-svla	gada-di!	gada-di-th!
	***	Going over	Go over!	Go over!
12	*	გად-მო-სვლა	გად-მო-დი!	გად-მო-დი-თ!
	**	gad-mo-svla	gad-mo-di!	gad-mo-di-th!
	***	Coming over	Come over!	Come over!
13	*	წა-სვლა	წა-დი!	წა-დი-თ!
	**	tza-svla	tza-di!	tza-di-th!
	***	Going to	Go to!	Go to!
14	*	წა-მო-სვლა	წა-მო-დი!	წა-მო-დი-თ!
	**	tza-mo-svla	tza-mo-di!	tza-mo-di-th!
	***	Coming to	Come to!	Come to!
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

3) “Let's look at table No. 64, which shows the simplest Georgian sentences using Georgian words expressing familiar wishes, in the singular and in the plural numbers. With the help of these words, we can better understand the semantic meanings of the above verbal names of action. These sentences use both familiar Georgian words and new words. It should also take into account the fact that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

With the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 64 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5 and 6, so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №64

Ordinal №		Grammatical number	Georgian sentence using words expressing familiar wishes		
			4	5	6
1	2	3			
1	*	Singular	მოდი	ჩვენთან	სახლში!
	**		modi	chventhan	sakhlshi!
	***		Come	to our	home!
2	*	Plural	მოდით	თქვენ	აქ!
	**		modith	thqven	aq!
	***		Come		here!
3	*	Singular	მოდი	ჩვენთან	მანქანით!
	**		modi	chventhan	manqanith!
	***		Come	to us	by car!
4	*	Plural	მოდით	ხვალ	ავტობუსით!
	**		modith	khval	avtobusith!
	***		Come	tomorrow	by bus!
5	*	Singular	მიდი	იმ	ფანჯარასთან!
	**		midi	im	panjarasthan!
	***		Go	to that	window!
6	*	Plural	მიდით	იმათ	მაგიდასთან!
	**		midith	imath	magidasthan!
	***		Go	to their	table!
	*	Singular	ჩადი	იმ	სარდაფში!

7	**		chadi	im	sardapshi!
	***		Go down	in that	cellar!
8	*	Plural	ჩადით	ხეობაში	ცხენებით!
	**		chadith	kheobashi	tskhenebith!
	***		Go down	in the valley	on horseback!
9	*	Singular	ჩამოდი	შენი	ცხენიდან!
	**		chamodi	sheni	tskhenidan!
	***		Come down	from your	horse!
10	*	Plural	ჩამოდით	იმ	მთიდან!
	**		chamodith	im	mthidan!
	***		Come down	from that	mountain!
11	*	Singular	ადი	ტრიბუნაზე!	
	**		adi	tribunaze!	
	***		Go up	to the rostrum!	
12	*	Plural	ადით	იმ	სახურავზე!
	**		adith	im	sakhuravze!
	***		Go up	on that	roof!
13	*	Singular	ამოდი	მეორე	სართულზე!
	**		amodi	meore	sarthulze!
	***		Come up	to the second	floor!
14	*	Plural	ამოდით	ჩემთან	აგარაკზე!
	**		amodith	chemthan	agarakze!
	***		Come up	to me	at the cottage!
15	*	Singular	შედი	შენს	ოთახში!
	**		shedi	shens	othakhshi!

	***		Go into	your	room!
16	*	Plural	შედიით	ახალ	შენობაში!
	**		shedith	akhal	shenobashi!
	***		Go into	the new	building!
17	*	Singular	შედი	გვირაბში	მოტოციკლით!
	**		shedi	gvirabshi	mototsiklith!
	***		Go into	the tunnel	by a motorcycle!
18	*	Plural	შედიით	ნავსადგურში	მანქანით!
	**		shedith	navsadgurshi	manqanith!
	***		Go into	the port	by car!
19	*	Singular	შემოდი	ჩვენს ღამის	კლუბში!
	**		shemodi	chvens gramis	klubshi!
	***		Come into	our night	club!
20	*	Plural	შემოდით	ჩვენს	ბიბლიოთეკაში!
	**		shemodith	chvens	bibliothekashi!
	***		Come into	our	library!
21	*	Singular	გადი	მინდორში!	
	**		gadi	mindorshi!	
	***		Go out	into the field!	
22	*	Plural	გადით	ჩემი	ოთახიდან!
	**		gadith	chemi	othakhidan!
	***		Go out	of my	room!
23	*	Singular	გადი	ქალაქგარეთ	მანქანით!
	**		gadi	qalaqgareth	manqanith!
	***		Go out	of city	by car!

24	*	Plural	გადით	ქვეყნიდან	მატარებლით!
	**		gadith	qveqknidan	matareblith!
	***		Go out	of country	by train!
25	*	Singular	გამოდი	შენი	სამზარეულოდან!
	**		gamodi	sheni	samzareulodan!
	***		Come out	of your	kitchen!
26	*	Plural	გამოდით	მაგ	სასტუმროდან!
	**		gamodith	mag	sastumrodan!
	***		Come out	of that	hotel!
27	*	Singular	გადადი	იმ	ნაპირზე!
	**		gadadi	im	napirze!
	***		Go over	to the other	shore!
28	*	Plural	გადადით	ხიდზე	ცხენებით!
	**		gadadith	khidze	tskhenebith!
	***		Go over	the bridge	by horses!
29	*	Singular	გადმოდი	ჩვენს	სამინისტროში!
	**		gadmodi	chvens	saministroshi!
	***		Move	to our	ministry!
30	*	Plural	გადმოდით	ჩვენს	ბანაკში!
	**		gadmodith	chvens	banakshi!
	***		Move	to our	camp!
31	*	Singular	წადი	ჩემი	ბინიდან!
	**		tzadi	chemi	binidan!
	***		Go out	of my	apartment!
	*	Plural I	წადით	თქვენს	ნათესავებთან!

32	**		tzadith	thqvens	nathesavebthan!
	***		Go	to your	relatives!
33	*	Singular	წადი	საზღვრისკენ	მოტოციკლით!
	**		tzadi	sazgrvrisken	mototsiklith!
	***		Go to	the side of the border	by a motorcycle!
34	*	Plural	წადით	კუნძულისკენ	ნავით!
	**		tzadith	kundzulisken	navith!
	***		Go to	the side of the island	on a boat!
35	*	Singular	წამოდი	ჩემთან	სოფელში!
	**		tzamodi	chemthan	sopelshi!
	***		Come	to my	in the village!
36	*	Plural	წამოდით	ჩვენთან	ბაღში!
	**		tzamodith	chventhan	bagrshi!
	***		Come	to us	in the garden.
* Words in Georgian language					
** English transliteration of Georgian words					
*** English synonyms of Georgian words					

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 239-244, "Supplement to Lesson No. 54" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. The group's listeners use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson #54
1. მოდი ჩვენთან სახლში!	
2. მოდით თქვენ აქ!	
3. მოდი ჩვენთან მანქანით!	

Group # 1	Lesson #54
4. მოდით ხვალ ავტობუსით!	
5. მიდი იმ ფანჯარასთან!	
6. მიდით იმათ მაგიდასთან!	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-fourth lesson.

Lesson fifty five

The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences

Content of the fifty-fifth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator reminds the audience of the following:

1. "We already know that there is no infinitive (an indefinite form of a verb) in the Georgian language. It is replaced by the Georgian verbal name of the action, and its main (original) form is the verb in the third person of singular present tense".

2. "Today we should get acquainted with the basic (initial) forms of those verbal names of the action that we learned during the penultimate, 53rd, lesson. To simplify the perception of these basic (initial) forms, we will use those examples of familiar expression of desires that were studied in the previous, 54th, lesson".

2) Next, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "For clarity, let's take one of the familiar examples of a familiar expression of desire - " მო-დი!" ("Mo-di!"), The English synonyms of which are the words "Come!" or "Arrive!". This Georgian verb stems from the verbal name of the action - "მო-სვლა" ("mo-svla"), the English synonyms of which are the words "Come" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "Arrival" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express in Georgian the main (initial) form of the word „მო-სვლა“ (“mo-svla”) in the third person singular, we need to do the following work: we take the word „მო-დი!“ (“mo-di!”) and remove the exclamation point from this word - „!“ (“!”). After that, to the word "მო-დი" ("mo-di") we add the ending "-ს" ("-s"). We get the basic (initial) form of the word we need „მო-სვლა“ (“mo-svla”) > „მო-დი-ს“ (“mo-di-s”), the English synonyms of which are the words “comes” (expresses pedestrian movement) and "arrives" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). We already know that in the third person singular the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun "ის" ("is"). Therefore, in Georgian the words “He (she, it) is coming” or “He (she, it) is arriving” sound the same - “ის მო-დი-ს” (“is mo-di-s”).

2. "In order to say in Georgian “They are coming” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “They are arriving” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მო-დი-ს” (“mo-di-s”) and from this word we remove the ending „-ს“ (“-s”). After that, to the word „მო-დი“ (“mo-di”) we add the ending „-ან“ (“-an”). We get the Georgian verb we need in the third person plural - „მო-დი-ან“ (“mo-di-an”). We already know that in the third person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ისინი” (“isini”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “They are coming” and “They are arriving” sound the same - “ისინი მო-დი-ან“ (“isini mo-di-an”).

3. "Similarly, using the example of the verbs “მო-დი-ს” (“mo-di-s”) and “მო-დი-ან” (“mo-dian”), we can form other Georgian verbs in the third person of the present tense on the basis of other examples of the familiar expression of wishes”.

4. "Let's look at table No. 65, which shows the main (initial) forms of those verbal names of the action that we learned during the penultimate, 53rd, lesson. All these forms in the third person present tense are presented both in the singular and in the plural.

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 65 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice both the Georgian verbal names of the action (column 3) and the corresponding basic (initial) forms of these names (columns 4 and 5).

Table №65

Basic (initial) forms of 14 Georgian verbal action names with personal pronouns				
Ordinal №		Verbatim action names	Forms of the present time for a third person	
			Singular	Plural
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-სვლა ¹	ის მო-დი-ს	ისინი მო-დი-ან
	**	mo-svla	is mo-di-s	isini mo-di-an
	***	Coming here	He comes here	They come here
2	*	მი-სვლა ²	ის მი-დი-ს	ისინი მი-დი-ან
	**	mi-svla	is mi-di-s	isini mi-di-an
	***	Going there	He goes there	They go there
3	*	ჩა-სვლა	ის ჩა-დი-ს	ისინი ჩა-დი-ან
	**	cha-svla	is cha-di-s	isini cha-di-an
	***	Going down	He goes down there	They go down there
4	*	ჩა-მო-სვლა	ის ჩა-მო-დი-ს	ისინი ჩა-მო-დი-ან
	**	cha-mo-svla	is cha-mo-di-s	isini cha-mo-di-an
	***	Coming down!	He comes down here.	They come down here.
5	*	ა-სვლა	ის ა-დი-ს	ისინი ა-დი-ან
	**	a-svla	is a-di-s	isini a-di-an
	***	Going up	He goes up there	They go up there
6	*	ა-მო-სვლა	ის ა-მო-დი-ს	ისინი ა-მო-დი-ან
	**	a-mo-svla	is a-mo-di-s	isini a-mo-di-an

	***	Coming up	He comes up here.	They come up here.
7	*	შე-სვლა	ის შე-დი-ს	ისინი შე-დი-ან
	**	she-svla	is she-di-s	isini she-di-an
	***	Going into	He goes into there	They go into there
8	*	შე-მო-სვლა	ის შე-მო-დი-ს	ისინი შე-მო-დი-ან
	**	she-mo-svla	is she-mo-di-s	isini she-mo-di-an
	***	Coming into	He enters here	They enter here
9	*	გა-სვლა	ის გა-დი-ს	ისინი გა-დი-ან
	**	ga-svla	is ga-di-s	isini ga-di-an
	***	Going out	He goes out there	They go out there
10	*	გა-მო-სვლა	ის გა-მო-დი-ს	ისინი გა-მო-დი-ან
	**	ga-mo-svla	is ga-mo-di-s	isini ga-mo-di-an
	***	Coming out	He comes out here.	They come out here.
11	*	გადა-სვლა	ის გადა-დი-ს	ისინი გადა-დი-ან
	**	gada-svla	is gada-di-s	isini gada-di-an
	***	Going over	He crosses over there	They cross over there
12	*	გად-მო-სვლა	ის გად-მო-დი-ს	ისინი გად-მო-დი-ან
	**	gad-mo-svla	is gad-mo-di-s	isini gad-mo-di-an
	***	Coming over	He crosses over here	They cross over here
13	*	წა-სვლა ²	ის მი-დი-ს	ისინი მი-დი-ან
	**	tza-svla	is mi-di-s	isini mi-di-an
	***	Going to	He goes there	They go there
14	*	წა-მო-სვლა ¹	ის მო-დი-ს	ისინი მო-დი-ან
	**	tza-mo-svla	is mo-di-s	isini mo-di-an
	***	Coming to	He comes here	They come here
* Words in Georgian languages				

	** English transliteration of Georgian words
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words

¹The basic (original) forms of Georgian verbal names "მო-სვლა" and "წა-მო-სვლა" are the same

²The basic (original) forms of Georgian verbal names "მი-სვლა" and "წა-სვლა" are the same

5. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are reversed, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, "ის მო-დის" ("is mo-di-s") → "მო-დის ის?" ("mo-di-s is?") and so on”.

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), then we get a negative phrase. For example, “ის მო-დის” (“is mo-di-s”) → “ის არ მო-დის” (“is ar mo-di-s”) and so on.”

7. “The 3rd column of Table No. 65 does not mention such a Georgian verbal name of the action as “სვლა” (“svla”), the English synonyms of which are the words “Walking” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “Riding” (expresses non-pedestrian movement) . However, this name also has its main (original) form. In order to express this form in Georgian in the third person singular, we need to do the following work: we take the already familiar verb "მო-დის" ("mo-di-s") and remove the prefix "მო-" from this word ("mo-"). Instead of it, we insert the prefix "და-" ("da-") and get the basic (initial) form of the word we need "სვლა" ("svla") - "და-დის" ("da-di-s") , whose English synonyms are the words “walks” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “rides” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). We already know that in the third person singular the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun "ის" ("is"). Therefore, in Georgian the words “He (she, it) walks” and “He (she, it) rides” sound the same - “ის და-დის” (“is da-di-s”). We must also remember that the presence of the prefix "და-" ("da-") in the verb denotes a movement from above to the surface of something or an action without spatial significance”.

8. “In order to say in Georgian “They walk” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “They ride” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), we need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb “და-დის” (“da-di-s”) and from this word we remove the ending "-ის" ("-s"). After that, to the word "და-დი" ("da-di") we add the ending "-ან" ("-an"). We get the Georgian verb we need in the third person plural - "და-დი-ან" ("da-di-an"). Therefore, in Georgian the words “They walk” and “They ride” sound the same - “ისინი და-დი-ან” (“isini da-di-an”).

3) “Let’s look at table No. 66, where the verbs “მო-დის” (“mo-di-s”) and “მო-დი-ან” (“mo-di-an”) are used, “და-დის” ("da-di-s") and "და-დი-ან" ("da-di-an"), as well as all other basic (original) forms, both in the singular and in the plural. These affirmative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

Note: Georgian language has no phrases like “He comes” and “He is coming” – instead the meaning of one and the same verb is understood from the context.

Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 66 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Ordinal №		The grammatical number of the verb	Georgian proposals using the basic (original) forms of verbal action names				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	*	Singular	დღეს	თოვლი	მოდის	ჩვენთან.	
	**		dgres	thovli	modis	chventhan.	
	***		Today	the snow	is coming	here.	
2	*	Plural	ჩვენი	ნათესავები	მოდიან	მატარებლით.	
	**		chveni	nathesavebi	modian	matareblith.	
	***		Our	relatives	are coming	by train.	
3	*	Singular	ცხელი	ორთქლი	მიდის	ზევით.	
	**		tskheli	orthqli	midis	zevith.	
	***		Hot	steam	goes	up.	
4	*	Plural	ჩემი	ძმები	მიდიან	სანაპიროსკენ.	
	**		chemi	dzmebi	midian	sanaπirosken.	
	***		My	brothers	are going	towards the coast.	
5	*	Singular	ბოლი	ადის	მათი	მილიდან.	
	**		boli	adis	mathi	milidan.	
	***		Smoke	is going out	of their	pipe.	
6	*	Plural	ჩვენი	ბავშვები	ადიან	ხეზე.	
	**		chveni	bavshvebi	adian	kheze.	
	***		Our	children	are climbing	a tree.	

7	*	Singular	ზაფხულში	მზე	ამოდის	ადრე.	
	**		zapkhulshi	mze	amodis	adre.	
	***		In summer	the sun	rises	early.	
8	*	Plural	მისი	მშობლები	ამოდიან	აივანზე.	
	**		misi	mshoblebi	amodian	aivanze.	
	***		His	parents	are coming up	the balcony.	
9	*	Singular	ჩვენი	პაპა	ჩადის	კიბეზე.	
	**		chveni	παπα	chadis	kibeze.	
	***		Our	grandfather	is going down	the stairs.	
10	*	Plural	მგზავრები	ჩადიან	საქალაქო	ტრამვაიდან.	
	**		mgzavrebi	chadian	saqalaqo	tramvaidan.	
	***		Passengers	are leaving	the city	tram.	
11	*	Singular	წვიმა	ჩამოდის	ჩვენი	სახურავიდან.	
	**		tzvima	chamodis	chveni	sakhuravidan.	
	***		Rain	is leaking	from our	roof.	
12	*	Plural	ჩვენი	მეცხვარეები	ჩამოდიან	მთის	სამოვრებიდან.
	**		chveni	metskhvareebi	chamodian	mthis	sadzovrebidan.
	***		Our	shepherds	are coming down	from the mountain	pastures.
13	*	Singular	ძლიერი	ქარი	შედის	ჩემს	ოთახში.
	**		dzlieri	qari	shedis	chems	othakhshi.
	***		A strong	wind	penetrates	into my	room.
14	*	Plural	მეთევზეები	შედიან	ღრმა	წყალში.	
	**		methevzeebi	shedian	grma	tzqkalshi.	
	***		Fishermen	enter	into deep	water.	
	*	Singular	ჩვენი	სტუმარი	შემოდის	დიდ	ოთახში.

15	**		chveni	stumari	shemodis	did	othakhshi.
	***		Our	guest	is coming	into a large	room.
16	*	Plural	ეს	სოფლები	შემოდის	ჩვენს	რაიონში.
	**		es	soplebi	shemodian	chvens	raionshi.
	***		These	villages	are included	into our	district.
17	*	Singular	ჩვენი	ფანჯარა	გადის	დიდ	ბაღში.
	**		chveni	panjara	gadis	did	bagrshi.
	***		Our	window	overlooks	a large	garden.
18	*	Plural	სამგზავრო	ავტობუსები	გადიან	ქალაქიდან.	
	**		samgzavro	avtobusebi	gadian	qalaqidan.	
	***		Passenger	buses	are going out	of the city.	
19	*	Singular	ხვალ	ახალი	ფილმი	გამოდის	ეკრანზე.
	**		khval	akhali	pilmi	gamodis	ekranze.
	***		Tomorrow	the new	film	is coming out	on the screens.
20	*	Plural число вечное	თეატრში	მსახიობები	გამოდის	სცენაზე.	
	**		theatrshi	msakhio-bebi	gamodian	stsenaze.	
	***		In the theater,	artists	are entering	the stage.	
21	*	Singular	ღამით	ქურდი	გადადის	მაღალ	ღობეზე.
	**		gramith	qurdi	gadadis	magral	grobeze.
	***		At night,	the thief	is going	through the high	fence.
22	*	Plural	ჩემი	ნაცნობები	გადადის	სხვა	სამსახურში.
	**		chemi	natsnobe-bi	gadadian	skhva	samsakhurshi.
	***		My	acquaintances	are transferring	to another	job.
23	*	Singular	ჩვენს	სოფელში	მდინარე	გადმოდის	ნაპირებიდან.
	**		chvens	sopelshi	mdinare	gadmodis	napirebidan.

	***		In our	village	the river	comes out	of the banks.
24	*	Plural	მისი	ბავშვები	გადმოდიან	ფართო	ქუჩაზე.
	**		misi	bavshvebi	gadmodian	partho	quchaze.
	***		His	children	are crossing	through the wide	streets.
25	*	Singular	ჩვენი	პატარა	ბავშვი	უკვე	დადის.
	**		chveni	patara	bavshvi	ukve	dadis.
	***		Our	little	baby	is already	walking.
26	*	Plural	ავტობუსები	და ტრამვაები	დადიან	ვოგზლამდე.	
	**		avtobusebi	da tramvaebi	dadian	vogzlamde.	
	***		Buses	and trams	run	to the station..	
27	*	Singular	ჩემი	ვაჟი	დადის	ავტომობილით.	
	**		chemi	vazhi	dadis	avtomobilith.	
	***		My	son	goes	by car.	
28	*	Plural	ჩვენი	მეზობელი	ხშირად	დადის	ქალაქგარეთ.
	**		chveni	mezobeli	khshirad	dadis	qalaqgareth.
	***		Our	neighbor	often	goes	out of town.
29	*	Singular	მდინარე	რიონი	ჩადის	შავ	ზღვაში.
	**		mdinare	rioni	chadis	shav	zgrvashi.
	***		The Rioni river		flows	into the Black	Sea.
30	*	Plural	სასოფლო	გზები	ჩადიან	მდინარისკენ.	
	**		sasoplo	gzebi	chadian	mdinarisken.	
	***		Rural	roads	go down	to the river.	
31	*	Singular	თბილისში	ბათუმის	მატარებელი	ჩამოდის	დღისით.
	**		thbilisshi	bathumis	matarebeli	chamodis	dgrisith.
	***		In Tbilisi,	the Batum	train	arrives	in the afternoon.

32	*	Plural	სამხედრო	თვითმფრინავები	ჩამოდან	ღამე.	
	**		samkhedro	thvithmprinavebi	chamodian	grame.	
	***		Military	planes	arrive	at night.	
33	*	Singular	დიდი	ფული	შემოდის	საბანკო	სალაროში.
	**		didi	puli	shemodis	sabanko	salaroshi.
	***		Big	money	comes into	the bank	cashier.
34	*	Plural	სავაჭრო	გემები	შემოდან	ჩვენს	ნავსადგურში.
	**		savatchro	gemebi	shemodian	chvens	navsadgurshi.
	***		Merchant	ships	come into	our	port.
35	*	Singular	მანქანა	გადის	ას	კილომეტრს	საათში.
	**		manqana	gadis	as	kilometrs	saathshi.
	***		The machine	passes	a hundred	kilometers	per hour.
36	*	Plural	ვიწრო	ბილიკები	გადიან	ტყეში.	
	**		vitzro	bilikebi	gadian	tqkeshi.	
	***		Narrow	paths	run	through forest.	
* Words in Georgian languages							
** English transliteration of Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 245-250, "Supplement to Lesson No. 55" on six pages, where all 6 tables for each of the 6 groups are given, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words”.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group # 1	Lesson #55
1. დღეს თოვლი მოდის ჩვენთან.	
2. ჩვენი ნათესავები მოდიან მატარებლით.	
3. ცხელი ორთქლი მიდის ზევით.	

Group # 1	Lesson #55
4. ჩემი ძმები მიდიან სანაპიროსკენ.	
5. ბოლი ადის მათი მილიდან.	
6. ჩვენი ბავშვები ადიან ხეზე.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out in exactly the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-fifth lesson.

The Georgian interrogative sentences with pronouns

The content of the fifty-sixth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Today we will continue to get acquainted with the personal forms of those verbal action names that we learned during the 53rd lesson. In particular, today we will get acquainted with such forms for the second grammatical person of the present tense. To simplify the perception of these forms, we will use those verbs that we got acquainted with during the previous lesson”.

2. “For clarity, let's take one of the familiar verbs - „მოდის“ (“mo-di-s”), the English synonyms of which are the words “He (she, it) comes” (expresses pedestrian traffic) and “He (she, it) arrives” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to say in Georgian “Come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “Arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian movement) for the second grammatical person, you need to do the following work: we take the verb “მოდის” (“mo-di-s”) and from of this word, we delete the ending “-ს” (“-s”). After that, to the word “მოდი” (“mo-di”) we add the ending “-ხარ” (“-khar”). We got acquainted with the phrase “-ხარ” (“-khar”) during the 39th lesson, when we learned the forms of the verbal name of the action “ყოფა” (“qkopa”). Let's get the verb we need - “მოდიხარ” (“mo-di-khar”). We already know that in the second person singular the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “შენ” (“shen”). Therefore, in Georgian the words “You come” and “You arrive” sound the same - “შენ მოდიხარ” (“shen mo-di-khar”).

3. “In order to say in Georgian “You come” (expresses pedestrian traffic) and “You arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian movement) in the plural number, you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მოდიხარ” (“mo-di-khar”) and add the ending “-თ” (“-th”) to this word. Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the second person plural - “მოდიხართ” (“mo-di-khar-t”). We already know that in the second person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “თქვენ” (“thqven”). Therefore, in Georgian the words “You come” and “You arrive” sound the same - “თქვენ მოდიხართ” (“thqven mo-di-khar-th”).

4. “Similarly, using the example of the verbs “მოდიხარ” (“mo-di-khar”) and “მოდიხართ” (“mo-di-khar-th”), we can form Georgian verbs for the second person of the present tense based on the verbs we learned in the previous lesson.

5. “Let's look at table #67, which shows all the forms of those verbal action names that we learned during the previous lesson. All these forms for the second person of the present tense are presented both in the singular and in the plural”.

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 67 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice both the already familiar basic (initial) forms of Georgian verbal action names (column 3), and the corresponding forms of these names in the second grammatical person (columns 4 and 5).

Table No. 67

Forms of 13 Georgian verbal action nouns with personal pronouns

Sequence number		13 basic (initial) forms	13 forms of present tense for the second person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	ის მო-დო-ს	შენ მო-დო-ხარ	თქვენ მო-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is mo-di-s	shen mo-di-khar	thqven mo-di-khar-th
	***	He comes here	You come here	You come here
2	*	ის მი-დო-ს	შენ მი-დო-ხარ	თქვენ მი-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is mi-di-s	shen mi-di-khar	thqven mi-di-khar-th
	***	He goes there	You go there	You go there
3	*	ის ჩა-დო-ს	შენ ჩა-დო-ხარ	თქვენ ჩა-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is cha-di-s	shen cha-di-khar	thqven cha-di-khar-th
	***	He goes down there	You go down there	You go down there
4	*	ის ჩა-მო-დო-ს	შენ ჩა-მო-დო-ხარ	თქვენ ჩა-მო-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is cha-mo-di-s	shen cha-mo-di-khar	thqven cha-mo-di-khar-th
	***	He comes down here.	You come down here	You come down here
5	*	ის ა-დო-ს	შენ ა-დო-ხარ	თქვენ ა-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is a-di-s	shen a-di-khar	thqven a-di-khar-th
	***	He goes up there	You go up there	You go up there
6	*	ის ა-მო-დო-ს	შენ ა-მო-დო-ხარ	თქვენ ა-მო-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is a-mo-di-s	shen a-mo-di-khar	thqven a-mo-di-khar-th
	***	He comes up here.	You come up here	You come up here
7	*	ის შე-დო-ს	შენ შე-დო-ხარ	თქვენ შე-დო-ხარ-თ
	**	is she-di-s	shen she-di-khar	thqven she-di-khar-th
	***	He goes into there	You go into there	You go into there

8	*	ის შე-მო-დი-ს	შენ შე-მო-დი-ხარ	თქვენ შე-მო-დი-ხარ-თ
	**	is she-mo-di-s	shen she-mo-di-khar	thqven she-mo-di-khar-th
	***	He enters here	You enter here	You enter here
9	*	ის გა-დი-ს	შენ გა-დი-ხარ	თქვენ გა-დი-ხარ-თ
	**	is ga-di-s	shen ga-di-khar	thqven ga-di-khar-th
	***	He goes out there	You go out there	You go out there
10	*	ის გა-მო-დი-ს	შენ გა-მო-დი-ხარ	თქვენ გა-მო-დი-ხარ-თ
	**	is ga-mo-di-s	shen ga-mo-di-khar	thqven ga-mo-di-khar-th
	***	He comes out here.	You come out here	You come out here
11	*	ის გადა-დი-ს	შენ გადა-დი-ხარ	თქვენ გადა-დი-ხარ-თ
	**	is gada-di-s	shen gada-di-khar	thqven gada-di-khar-th
	***	He crosses over there	You cross over there	You cross over there
12	*	ის გად-მო-დი-ს	შენ გად-მო-დი-ხარ	თქვენ გად-მო-დი-ხარ-თ
	**	is gad-mo-di-s	shen gad-mo-di-khar	thqven gad-mo-di-khar-th
	***	He crosses over here	You cross over here	You cross over here
13	*	ის და-დი-ს	შენ და-დი-ხარ	თქვენ და-დი-ხარ-თ
	**	is da-di-s	shen da-di-khar	thqven da-di-khar-th
	***	He walks (rides)	You walk (ride)	You walk (ride)
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of the Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are reversed, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “შენ მო-დი-ხარ” (“shen mo-di-khar”) → “მო-დი-ხარ შენ?” (“mo-di-khar shen?”) and so on.”

7. "If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word "არ" (in English - "not"), then we get a negative phrase. For example, "შენ მო-დო-ხარ" ("shen mo-di-khar") → "შენ არ მო-დო-ხარ" ("shen ar mo-di-khar") and so on."

2) Next, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. "Familiarization with Georgian verbs for the second person of the present tense (in the table No. 67) provides an occasion to learn those certain Georgian question words with which you can construct interrogative sentences. These question words include:

- სად? (sad?), whose English synonyms are "Where?" and "To where?";
- საიდან? (saidan?), whose English synonym is "From where?";
- როდის? (rodis?), whose English synonym is "When?";
- რატომ? (ratom?), whose English synonyms are "Why?" and "For what?";
- როგორ? (rogor?), whose English synonyms are "How?" and "In what way?";
- სადამდე? (sadamde?), whose English synonyms are "Until what place?" and "Until what time?"

2. "The above-considered Georgian word-questions partially resemble those interrogative pronouns that we met during the 24th lesson. Both those and others begin Georgian interrogative sentences".

3 "Let's look at Table 68 to find out how you can use the verbs „მო-დო-ხარ“ (“mo-di-khar”), „მო-დო-ხარ-თ“ (“mo-di-khar-th”) and others in interrogative sentences together with the above-mentioned verb words, both in the singular and in the plural. In some cases, interrogative pronouns from Lesson 24 will be used. These interrogative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent interrogative sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous sentence”.

Note: Georgian language has no phrases like “You come” and “You are coming” – instead the meaning of one and the same verb is understood from the context.

Then, with the help of a projector, the listeners watch table No. 68 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that the listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table No. 68

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian interrogative sentences using forms of verbal action nouns for the second grammatical person				
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	Singular	რომელ	საათზე	მოდობარ	შენ	სახლში?
	**		romel	saathze	modikhar	shen	sakhlshi?
	***		What	time	do you come		home?
2	*	Plural	რატომ	მოდობართ	თქვენ	ჩვენთან	ასე იშვიათად?
	**		ratom	modikharth	thqven	chventhan	ase ishviathad?
	***		Why	do you come		to us	so rarely?
3	*	Singular	სად	მიდობარ	ამ	ბნელ	ღამეში?
	**		sad	midikhar	am	bnel	grameshi?
	***		Where	are you going	on such	a dark	night?
4	*	Plural	სადამდე		მიდობართ	ამ	მატარებლით?
	**		sadamde		midikharth	am	matareblith?
	***		To what place		are you going	by this	train?
5	*	Singular	რა	გზით	ადობარ	იმ მაღალ	მთაზე?
	**		ra	gzith	adikhar	im magral	mthaze?
	***		On which	road	do you go up	that high	mountain?
6	*	Plural	რომელ	სართულზე	ადობართ	თქვენ	ლიფტით?
	**		romel	sarthulze	adikharth	thqven	liptith?
	***		Which	floor	are you going up		by the elevator?
7	*	Singular	რამდენად	დაღლილი	ამოდობარ	შენ	სარდაფიდან?
	**		ramdenad	dagrlili	amodikhar	shen	sardapidan?

	***		How	tired	do you come up		from the cellar?
8	*	Plural	ვისი	ცხენებით	ამოდიხართ	ჩვენს	სამოვრებზე?
	**		visi	tskhenebith	amodikharth	chvens	sadzovrebze?
	***		By whose	horses	do you go up	to our	pastures?
9	*	Singular	რომელ	გაჩერებაზე	ჩადიხარ	შენ	ტრამვაიდან?
	**		romel	gacherebaze	chadikhar	shen	tramvaidan?
	***		At which	stop	are you getting you		off the tram?
10	*	Plural	წელიწადში	რამდენჯერ	ჩადიხართ	თქვენ	ამერიკაში?
	**		tzelitzadshi	ramdenjer	chadikharth	thqven	amerikashi?
	***		How many times in a year		do you go		to America?
11	*	Singular	როგორ	ჩამოდიხარ	ასეთი	მაღალი	ხიდან?
	**		rogor	chamodikhar	asethi	magrali	khidan?
	***		How	do you come down	from such	a tall	tree?
12	*	Plural	ვისთან	ერთად	ჩამოდიხართ	ზღვის	სანაპიროზე?
	**		visthan	erthad	chamodikharth	zgrvis	sanaπiroze?
	***		Together with whom		are you coming	to the sea	coast?
13	*	Singular	რითი	შედიხარ	შენ	შენს	სახლში?
	**		rithi	shedikhar	shen	shens	sakhlshi?
	***		With what	are you going into		your	house?
14	*	Plural	რატომ	არ შედიხართ	თქვენ	მესამე	ლექციაზე?
	**		ratom	ar shedikharth	thqven	mesame	leqtsiaze?
	***		Why	are not you going to		the third	lecture?
15	*	Singular	ვისთან	ერთად	შემოდიხარ	ჩვენს	ბიზნესში?
	**		visthan	erthad	shemodikhar	chvens	biznesshi?
	***		Together with whom		do you enter	our	business?

16	*	Plural	რატომ	არ შემოდისხართ	ჩვენს	საავადმყოფოში	სამკურნალოდ?
	**		ratom	ar shemodikharth	chvens	saavadmqkoposhi	samkurnalod?
	***		Why	do not you come	to our	hospital	for treatment?
17	*	Singular	რომელი	მატარებლით	გადისხარ	ჩვენი	ქალაქიდან?
	**		romeli	matareblith	gadikhar	chveni	qalaqidan?
	***		By what	train	do you go	from our	city?
18	*	Plural	რა	საგნებს	გადისხართ	სოფლის	სკოლაში?
	**		ra	sagnebs	gadikharth	soplis	skolashi?
	***		What	subjects	do you pass	in a rural	school?
19	*	Singular	რომელ	საათზე	გამოდისხარ	შენ	სიტყვით?
	**		romel	saathze	gamodikhar	shen	sitqkvith?
	***		At what	hour	are you giving		a speech?
20	*	Plural	რატომ	არ გამოდისხართ	სახლიდან	სუფთა	ჰაერზე?
	**		ratom	ar gamodikharth	sakhlidan	suptha	haerze?
	***		Why	do not you come	out off house	for fresh	air?
21	*	Singular	როდის	გადადისხარ	შენ	ახალ	სამინისტროში?
	**		rodis	gadadikhar	shen	akhal	saministroshi?
	***		When	do you move		to the new	ministry?
22	*	Plural	რატომ	გადადისხართ	თქვენ	კლასიდან	კლასში?
	**		ratom	gadadikharth	thqven	klasidan	klasshi?
	***		Why	do you move		from class	to class?
23	*	Singular	რატომ	არ გადმოდისხარ	ჩვენს	სავაჭრო	სააგენტოში?
	**		ratom	ar gadmodikhar	chvens	savatchro	saagentoshi?
	***		Why	do not you move	to our	sales	agency?
	*	Plura I	როდის	გადმოდისხართ	საცხოვრებლად	ჩვენთან	ქალაქში?

24	**		rodis	gadmodikharth	satskhovreblad	chventhan	qalaqshi?
	***		When	do you move	to live	with us	in the city?
25	*	Singular	ვისთან	ერთად	დადიხარ	შენ	სასადილოში?
	**		visthan	erthad	dadikhar	shen	sasadioshi?
	***		Together with whom		do you go to		the dining room?
26	*	Plural	სად	დადიხართ	თქვენ	შაბათს და	კვირას?
	**		sad	dadikharth	thqven	shabaths da	kviras?
	***		Where	do you go		on Saturday and	Sunday?
27	*	Singular	რამდენ	კილომეტრს	საათში	გადიხარ	ავტომობილით?
	**		ramden	kilometrs	saathshi	gadixar	avtomobilith?
	***		How many	kilometers	per hour	do you travel	by car?
28	*	Plural	რომელ	სასურსათო	მალაზიაში	დადიხარ?	
	**		romel	sasursatho	magraziashi	dadikhar?	
	***		Which	grocery	store	do you go to?	
29	*	Singular	რომელ	ნათესავებთან	ჩადიხარ	შენს	სოფელში?
	**		romel	nathesavebthan	chadikhar	shens	sopelshi?
	***		With what	relatives	do you go	to your	village?
30	*	Plural	რა	დროში	ჩადიხართ	მდინარის	ხეობაში?
	**		ra	droshi	chadikharth	mdinaris	kheobashi?
	***		In how much	time	do you go down	into the river	valley?
31	*	Singular	რომელი	ბილიკით	შედიხარ	ამ ღრმა	ხევში?
	**		romeli	bilikith	shedikhar	am grma	khevshi?
	***		By which	path	do you enter	this deep	ravine?
32	*	Plural	რამდენჯერ	გადიხართ	თქვენი	თეატრის	სცენაზე?
	**		ramdenjer	gadikharth	thqveni	theatris	stsenaze?

	***		How many times	do you go	on the stage of your theater?		
33	*	Singular	რომელ	რესტორანში	დადიხარ	ამდენი	ფულით?
	**		romel	restoranshi	dadikhar	amdeni	pulith?
	***		Which	restaurant	do you go to	with that much	money?
34	*	Plural	როდის	დადიხართ	ინგლისური	ენის	მასწავლებელთან?
	**		rodis	dadikharth	inglisuri	enis	mastzavlabelthan?
	***		When	do you go	to a teacher of the English language?		
35	*	Singular	რატომ	გადიხარ	სახლიდან	ამ	წვიმაში?
	**		ratom	gadikhar	sakhlidan	am	tzvimashi?
	***		Why	are you leaving	the house	in this	rain?
36	*	Plural	როდის	გადიხართ	საზღვაო	სანაპიროსკენ?	
	**		rodis	gadikharth	sazgrvao	sanapirosken?	
	***		When	do you go	towards the sea coast?		
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

3) With the help of the leaders of the learning process, students are distributed among 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around the 6 tables in the same way as they did during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 251-256, "Supplement to Lesson No. 56" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

5) The facilitators explain to all groups the essence of the task: "each group has a list of 6 Georgian proposals. With the help of a marker, the listeners of the group write only sentences in Georgian on the flip sheet. Each of the 3 members of the group should write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. The combinations of

English letters and English synonyms for Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words”.

An example of the compilation by group No. 1 of flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 56
1. რომელ საათზე მოდიხარ შენ სახლში?	
2. რატომ მოდიხართ თქვენ ჩვენთან ასე იშვიათად?	
3. სად მიდიხარ ამ ბნელ ღამეში?	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 56
4. სადამდე მიდიხართ ამ მატარებლით?	
5. რა გზით ადიხარ იმ მაღალ მთაზე?	
6. რომელ სართულზე ადიხართ თქვენ ლიფტით?	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-sixth lesson.

Lesson fifty seven

The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences

Content of the fifty-seventh lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Today we will continue to get acquainted with the personal forms of those verbal names of action that we learned during the 53rd lesson. In particular, today we will familiarize ourselves with such forms for the first grammatical person of the present tense. To simplify the perception of these forms, we will use the verbs that we became familiar with in the penultimate lesson.”

2. “For clarity, let’s take one of the familiar verbs - “მოდის” (“mo-di-s”), English synonyms of which are the words “He (she, it) comes” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “He (she, it) arrives” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to say “I’m coming” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “I’m arriving” (expresses non-pedestrian movement) in Georgian, you need to do the following work: take the verb „მოდის“ (“mo-di-s”) and from of this word we remove the ending „-ს“ (“-s”). After this, to the word „მოდი“ (“mo-di”) we add the ending „-ვარ“ (“-var”). We became familiar with the phrase “-ვარ” (“-var”) during the 39th lesson, when we learned the forms of the verbal name of the action “ყობა” (“qoba”). In addition, between the prefix „მო-“ (“mo-”) and the letter combination „-დი-“ (“-di-”) you should insert the letter „-ვ-“ (“-v-”). Let’s get the verb we need - „მოვდივარ“ (“mo-v-di-var”), English synonyms of which are the words “I come”. We already know that in the first person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “მე” (“me”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “I am coming” and “I come” sound the same - “მე მოვდივარ” (“me mo-v-di-var”).”

Note: Georgian language has no phrases like “I come” and “I am coming” – instead the meaning of one and the same verb is understood from the context.

3. “In order to say in Georgian “We are coming” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “We are arriving” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მოვდივარ” (“mo-v-di-var”) and to this word we add the ending “-თ” (“-th”). Let’s get the Georgian verb we need in the first person plural - „მოვდივართ“ (“mo-v-di-var-th”). We already know that in the first person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ჩვენ” (“chven”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “We are coming” and “We come” sound the same - “ჩვენ მოვდივართ” (“chven mo-v-di-var-th”).”

4. “In a similar way, using the example of the verbs “მოვდივარ” (“mo-v-di-var”) and “მოვდივართ” (“mo-v-di-var-th”), we can form Georgian verbs in the first person present tense on the basis of those verbs that we became familiar with in the penultimate lesson.”

5. “Let’s look at table No. 69, which shows the forms of those verbal names of action that we learned during the 55th lesson. All these forms for the first person present tense are presented in both singular and plural.”

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 69 on a large screen. The presenters alternately voice both the already familiar basic (initial) forms of Georgian verbal action names (column 3) and the corresponding forms of these names in the first grammatical person (columns 4 and 5).

Table No. 69

Forms of 13 Georgian verbal action nouns with personal pronouns				
Sequence number		13 basic (initial) forms	13 forms of present tense for the second person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	ის მო-დის	მე მო-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is mo-di-s	me mo-v-di-var	chven mo-v-di-var-th
	***	He comes here	I come here	We come here
2	*	ის მი-დის	მე მი-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ მი-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is mi-di-s	me mi-v-di-var	chven mi-v-di-var-th
	***	He goes there	I go there	We go there
3	*	ის ჩა-დის	მე ჩა-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ ჩა-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is cha-di-s	me cha-v-di-var	chven cha-v-di-var-th
	***	He goes down there	I go down there	We go down there
4	*	ის ჩა-მო-დის	მე ჩა-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ ჩა-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is cha-mo-di-s	me cha-mo-v-di-var	chven cha-mo-v-di-var-th
	***	He comes down here.	I come down here	We come down here
5	*	ის ა-დის	მე ა-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ ა-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is a-di-s	me a-v-di-var	chven a-v-di-var-th
	***	He goes up there	I go up there	We go up there
6	*	ის ა-მო-დის	მე ა-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ ა-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is a-mo-di-s	me a-mo-v-di-var	chven a-mo-v-di-var-th
	***	He comes up here.	I come up here	We come up here

7	*	ის შე-დი-ს	მე შე-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ შე-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is she-di-s	me she-v-di-var	chven she-v-di-var-th
	***	He goes into there	I go into there	We go into there
8	*	ის შე-მო-დი-ს	მე შე-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ შე-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is she-mo-di-s	me she-mo-v-di-var	chven she-mo-v-di-var-th
	***	He enters here	I enter here	We enter here
9	*	ის გა-დი-ს	მე გა-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ გა-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is ga-di-s	me ga-v-di-var	chven ga-v-di-var-th
	***	He goes out there	I go out there	We go out there
10	*	ის გა-მო-დი-ს	მე გა-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ გა-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is ga-mo-di-s	me ga-mo-v-di-var	chven ga-mo-v-di-var-th
	***	He comes out here.	I come out here	We come out here
11	*	ის გადა-დი-ს	მე გადა-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ გადა-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is gada-di-s	me gada-v-di-var	chven gada-v-di-var-th
	***	He crosses over there	I cross over there	We cross over there
12	*	ის გად-მო-დი-ს	მე გად-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ გად-მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is gad-mo-di-s	me gad-mo-v-di-var	chven gad-mo-v-di-var-th
	***	He crosses over here	I cross over here	We cross over here
13	*	ის და-დი-ს	მე და-ვ-დი-ვარ	ჩვენ და-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ
	**	is da-di-s	me da-v-di-var	chven da-v-di-var-th
	***	He walks (rides)	I walk (ride)	We walk (ride)
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of the Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, „მე მო-ვ-დი-ვარ“ (“me mo-v-di-var”) → „მო-ვ-დი-ვარ მე?“ (“mo-v-di-var me?”) and etc”.

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English – “not”), then we get a negative phrase. For example, „მე მო-ვ-დი-ვარ“ (“me mo-v-di-var”) → „მე არ მო-ვ-დი-ვარ“ (“me ar mo-v-di-var”) and etc”.

2) Next, the facilitator explains the following to the audience: “Let’s look at table No. 70, where the verbs “მო-ვ-დი-ვარ” (“mo-v-di-var”), “მო-ვ-დი-ვარ-თ” (“mo-v-di-var-th”) and others are used“, both in the singular and in the plural. Both already familiar and new Georgian words are used in these affirmative and negative sentences. It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one”.

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 70 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table No. 70

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian sentences using forms of verbal action nouns for the first grammatical person				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	2	3					
1	*	Singular	მე	ხშირად	მოვდივარ	თქვენს	სოფელში.
	**		me	khshirad	movdivar	thqvens	sopelshi.
	***		I	often	come	to your	village.
2	*	Plural	ჩვენ	არასოდეს	მოვდივართ	სახლში	გვიან.
	**		chven	arasodes	movdivarth	sakhlshi	gvian.
	***		We	never	come	home	late.
3	*	Singular	მე	ხშირად	მივდივარ	მდინარის	ნაპირთან.
	**		me	khshirad	mivdivar	mdinaris	napirthan.
	***		I	often	go	to the river	bank.
	*	Plural I	ჩვენ	ზოგჯერ	მივდივართ	ზღვის	სანაპიროსკენ.

4	**		chven	zogjer	mivdivarth	zgrvis	sanapiroshken.
	***		We	sometimes	go	towards the sea coast.	
5	*	Singular	მე	არასოდეს	ავდივარ		კლდეზე.
	**		me	arasodes	avdivar		kldeze.
	***		I	never	climb up		a rock.
6	*	Plural	ჩვენ	იშვიათად	ავდივართ	მაღალ	ხეებზე.
	**		chven	ishviathad	avdivarth	magral	kheebze.
	***		We	rarely	climb up	high	trees.
7	*	Singular	ზაფხულში	მე ხშირად	ავდივარ	სოფლის	გორაკზე.
	**		zaphulshi	me khshirad	avdivar	soplis	gorakze.
	***		In the summer	I often	go up	to the village	hill.
8	*	Plural	თვეში ორჯერ	ჩვენ	ავდივართ	მეომრების	სასაფლაოზე.
	**		thveshi orjer	chven	avdivarth	meomrebis	sasaplaoze.
	***		Twice a month	we	go up	to the warrior	cemetery.
9	*	Singular	მე	ყოველთვის	ჩავდივარ	წყაროზე	დოქით.
	**		me	qkovelthvis	chavdivar	tzqkaroze	doqith.
	***		I	always	go down	to the spring	with a jug.
10	*	Plural	ჩვენ	იშვიათად	ჩავდივართ	მოსკოვში	თვითმფრინავით.
	**		chven	ishviathad	chavdivarth	moskovshi	thvithmprinavith.
	***		We	rarely	arrive	in Moscow	by plane.
11	*	Singular	საზღვარგარეთიდან	მე	ყოველთვის	ჩამოვდივარ	საქონლით.
	**		sazgrvargarethidan	me	qkovelthvis	chamovdivar	saqonlith.
	***		From abroad,	I	always	come	with the goods.
12	*	Plural	ყოველ	შაბათს	ჩვენ	ჩამოვდივართ	მშობლებთან.
	**		qkovel	shabaths	chven	chamovdivarth	mshoblebthan.

	***		Each	Saturday	we	go	to the parents.
13	*	Singular	მე	შევდივარ	ახალ	პოლიტიკურ	პარტიაში.
	**		me	shevdivar	akhal	politikur	partiasi.
	***		I	am entering	a new	political	party.
14	*	Plural	ყოველ	საღამოს	ჩვენ	შევდივართ	ბაზარში.
	**		qkovel	sagramos	chven	shevdivarth	bazarshi.
	***		Every	evening	we	go into	the market.
15	*	Singular	მე	შემოვდივარ	თქვენს	ახალ	ინსტიტუტში.
	**		me	shemovdivar	thqvens	akhal	institutshi.
	***		I	am entering	your	new	institute.
16	*	Plural	ჩვენ	შემოვდივართ	თქვენს	სახანძრო	რაზმში.
	**		chven	shemovdivarth	thqvens	sakhandzro	razmshi.
	***		We	are entering	your	fire	brigade.
17	*	Singular	მე	გავდივარ	10 მილს	საათში	მანქანით.
	**		me	gavdivar	10 mils	saathshi	manqanith.
	***		I	pass	10 miles	per hour	by car.
18	*	Plural	სკოლაში	ჩვენ	გავდივართ	მრავალ	საგანს.
	**		skolashi	chven	gavdivarth	mraval	sagans.
	***		At school	we	go through	a lot of	subjects.
19	*	Singular	კრებაზე	მე	გამოვდივარ	გრძელი	სიტყვით.
	**		krebaze	me	gamovdivar	grdzeli	sitqkvith.
	***		At the meeting,	I	am giving	a long	speech.
20	*	Plural	ჩვენ	გამოვდივართ	სცენაზე	კვირაში	სამჯერ.
	**		chven	gamovdivarth	stsenaze	kvirashi	samjer.
	***		We	go	on stage	three times a week.	

21	*	Singular	ახლა	მე	გადავდივარ	საქმის	განხილვაზე.
	**		akhla	me	gadavdivar	saqmis	gankhilvaze.
	***		Now	I am	turning	to analysis of the case.	
22	*	Plural	დღეს	ჩვენ	გადავდივართ	ახალ	სამსახურში.
	**		dgres	chven	gadavdivarth	akhal	samsakhurshi.
	***		Today	we	are moving	to a new	office.
23	*	Singular	მე	გადმოვდივარ	თქვენს	რაიონში	საცხოვრებლად.
	**		me	gadmovdivar	thqvens	raionshi	satskhovreblad.
	***		I	am transferring	to your	area	for accommodation.
24	*	Plural	ჩვენ	გადმოვდივართ	თქვენს	განყოფილებაში	სამუშაოდ.
	**		chven	gadmovdivarth	thqvens	ganqopilebashi	samushaod.
	***		We	are moving	into your	department	for work.
25	*	Singular	ორჯერ	კვირაში	მე	დავდივარ	ბიბლიოთეკაში.
	**		orjer	kvirashi	me	davdivar	bibliothekashi.
	***		Twice	a week	I	go	to the library.
26	*	Plural	ექვსი დღე	კვირაში	ჩვენ	დავდივართ	ლექციებზე.
	**		eqvsi dgre	kvirashi	chven	davdivarth	leqtsiebze.
	***		Six days	a week	we	go	to lectures.
27	*	Singular	ყოველ	სადამოს	მე	გავდივარ	აივანზე.
	**		qkovel	sagramos	me	gavdivar	aivanze.
	***		Every	evening	I	go out	onto the balcony.
28	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ყველა	გავდივართ	თქვენი	პარტიიდან.
	**		chven	qkvela	gavdivarth	thqveni	partiidan.
	***		We	all	are going out	of your	party.
	*	Plura 1	მე	და ჩემი	საცოლო	გავდივართ	საცეკვაოდ.

29	**		me	da chemi	satsolo	gavdivarth	satsekvaod.
	***		I	and my	fiancee	are going out	to dance.
30	*	Singular	მე	ხშირად	ჩავდივარ	სოფლის	მდინარეში.
	**		me	khshirad	chavdivar	soplis	mdinareshi.
	***		I	often	go down	into the village	river.
31	*	Plural	დღეს	ჩვენ	ჩამოვდივართ	თქვენთან	სანადიროდ.
	**		dgres	chven	chamovdivarth	thqventhan	sanadirod.
	***		Today	we	are coming	to you	for hunting.
32	*	Plural	სამზარეულოდან	გამოვდივართ	თეფშებით,	ჩანგლებით	და დანებით.
	**		samzareulodan	gamovdivarth	thepshebith,	changlebith	da danebith.
	***		From the kitchen	we go out	with plates,	forks	and knives.
33	*	Singular	მე შემოვდივარ	თქვენს	ბიზნესში	დიდი	ფულით.
	**		me shemovdivar	thqvens	biznesshi	didi	pulith.
	***		I enter	into your	business	with much	money.
34	*	Plural	ჩვენ	გავდივართ	იმათი	სატყეო	ბიზნესიდან.
	**		chven	gavdivarth	imathi	satqkeo	biznesidan.
	***		We	are going out	of their	forest	business.
35	*	Singular	სექტემბერში	მე	გადავდივარ	მეორე	კურსზე.
	**		seqtembershi	me	gadavdivar	meore	kursze.
	***		In September	I	am turning	to the second	year.
36	*	Singular	წელს	მე	შევდივარ	პირველ	კლასში.
	**		tzels	me	shevdivar	pirvel	klasshi.
	***		This year	I	am entering	the first	class.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							

4) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The presenters invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two loose-leaf sheets (on the assumption that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list each, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 257-262, "Supplement to Lesson No. 57" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate texts of the tables for each group.

6) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. Students of the group use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words."

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 57
1. მე ხშირად მოვდივარ თქვენს სოფელში.	
2. ჩვენ არასოდეს მოვდივართ სახლში გვიან.	
3. მე ხშირად მივდივარ მდინარის ნაპირთან.	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 57
4. ჩვენ ზოგჯერ მივდივართ ზღვის სანაპიროსკენ.	
5. მე არასოდეს ავდივარ კლდეზე.	
6. ჩვენ იშვიათად ავდივართ მაღალ ხეებზე.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-seventh lesson.

Lesson fifty eight

The negative particles in Georgian sentences

Content of the fifty-eighth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the facilitator explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Today we must begin to get acquainted with the past tense forms of those verbal names of action that we became familiar with during the 53rd lesson. Today we are talking about the grammatical third person.”

2. “For clarity, let’s take one of the familiar verbal names of action - “მო-სვლა” (“mo-svla”), English synonyms of which are the words “Come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “Arrival” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express the past action in Georgian in the third person singular - “Came” or “Arrived”, you need to do the following work: take the word “მო-სვლა” (“mo-svla”) and remove its main part from this word - „სვლა“ (“-svla”). In its place we must insert the letter combination “-ვიდა” (“-vida”). We get the Georgian verb we need - „მო-ვიდა“ (“mo-vida”), English synonyms of which are the words “He (she, it) came” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “He (she, it) arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian traffic). We already know that in the third person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ის” (“is”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “He (she, it) came” or “He (she, it) arrived” sound the same - “ის მო-ვიდა” (“is mo-vida”).”

3. “In order to say in Georgian “They came” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “They arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მო-ვიდა” (“mo-vida”) and from this word we remove the final letter “ა” (“a”). After this, to the remaining part of the word „მო-ვიდ“ (“mo-vid”) we add the ending „-ნენ“ (“-nen”). Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the third person plural - „მო-ვიდ-ნენ“ (“mo-vid-nen”). We already know that in the third person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ისინი” (“isini”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “They came” or “They arrived” sound the same - “ისინი მო-ვიდ-ნენ“ (“isini mo-vid-nen”).”

4. “In a similar way, using the example of the verbs “მო-ვიდა” (“mo-vida”) and “მო-ვიდ-ნენ” (“mo-vid-nen”), we can form other Georgian verbs in the third person of past time based on other verbal names of action.”

5. “Let's look at table No. 71, which shows all the verb forms in the third person of past tense based on those verbal names of action that we learned during the 53rd lesson. Verb forms in the third person are presented in both singular and plural number.”

Using a projector, listeners watch table No. 71 on a large screen. The facilitators alternately voice both the Georgian verbal names of the action (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian verb forms of the past tense (columns 4 and 5).

Table №71

Forms of verbal nouns of action for the third person of the past tense
--

Sequence number		Verbal names of action	13 forms of past tense for the third person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-სვლა	მო-ვიდა	მო-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	mo-svla	mo-vida	mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming here	Came here	Came here
2	*	მი-სვლა	მი-ვიდა	მი-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	mi-svla	mi-vida	mi-vid-nen
	***	Going there	Went there	Went there
3	*	ჩა-სვლა	ჩა-ვიდა	ჩა-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	cha-svla	cha-vida	cha-vid-nen
	***	Going down	Went down	Went down
4	*	ჩა-მო-სვლა	ჩა-მო-ვიდა	ჩა-მო-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	cha-mo-svla	cha-mo-vida	cha-mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming down	Came down	Came down
5	*	ა-სვლა	ა-ვიდა	ა-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	a-svla	a-vida	a-vid-nen
	***	Going up	Went up	Went up
6	*	ა-მო-სვლა	ა-მო-ვიდა	ა-მო-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	a-mo-svla	a-mo-vida	a-mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming up	Came up	Came up
7	*	შე-სვლა	შე-ვიდა	შე-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	she-svla	she-vida	she-vid-nen
	***	Going into	Went into	Went into
	*	შე-მო-სვლა	შე-მო-ვიდა	შე-მო-ვიდ-ნენ

8	**	she-mo-svla	she-mo-vida	she-mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming into	Came into	Came into
9	*	გა-სვლა	გა-ვიდა	გა-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	ga-svla	ga-vida	ga-vid-nen
	***	Going out	Went out	Went out
10	*	გა-მო-სვლა	გა-მო-ვიდა	გა-მო-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	ga-mo-svla	ga-mo-vida	ga-mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming out	Came out	Came out
11	*	გადა-სვლა	გადა-ვიდა	გადა-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	gada-svla	gada-vida	gada-vid-nen
	***	Going over	Went over	Went over
12	*	გად-მო-სვლა	გად-მო-ვიდა	გად-მო-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	gad-mo-svla	gad-mo-vida	gad-mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming over	Came over	Came over
13	*	წა-სვლა	წა-ვიდა	წა-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	tza-svla	tza-vida	tza-vid-nen
	***	Going to	Went to	Went to
14	*	წა-მო-სვლა	წა-მო-ვიდა	წა-მო-ვიდ-ნენ
	**	tza-mo-svla	tza-mo-vida	tza-mo-vid-nen
	***	Coming to	Came to	Came to
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of the Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “ის მო-ვიდა“ (“is mo-vida”) → “მო-ვიდა ის?” (“mo-vida is?”) and so on.”

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), we get a negative phrase. For example, “ის მო-ვიდა” (“is mo-vida”) → “ის არ მო-ვიდა” (“is ar mo-vida”) and so on.”

2) Next, the facilitator explains to the audience the following:

1. “Acquaintance with Georgian verbs for the third person of past tense (in table No. 71) provides a reason to once again pay attention to Georgian negative particles. There are three such particles [“არ” (“ar”), “ვერ” (“ver”) and “ნუ” (“nu”)], and there is a semantic difference between them . We will get acquainted with the particle “ნუ” (“nu”) in detail during one of the following lessons. As for the first two mentioned particles, the difference between them is as follows:

- the particle “არ” (“ar”) denotes the negation of an action when the actor is unwilling to commit it (for example, “I didn’t go”);

- the particle “ვერ” (“ver”) denotes the negation of an action that a person wanted, but for some reason could not perform (for example, “I could not go”);

- when using particles “არ” (“ar”) and “ვერ” (“ver”), Georgian verbs are used in the same form.”

2. “Let’s look at table No. 72 to find out how you can use the verbs “მო-ვიდა” (“mo-vida”), “მო-ვიდ-ნენ” (“mo-vid-nen”) and others in negative sentences together with the above-mentioned particles “არ” (“ar”) and “ვერ” (“ver”), both in the singular and in the plural number. These negative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each next sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one.

Then, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 72 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce Georgian words in negative sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №72

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian sentences using verb forms of action for the third person of past tense				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	2	3					
1	*	Singular	ჩემი მამა	ვერ	მოვიდა	სახლში	ადრე.
	**		chemi mama	ver	movida	sakhlshi	adre.
	***		My father	could not	come	home	early.
	*	Plura 1	მოსწავლეები	ვერ	მოვიდნენ	სკოლაში	დროზე.

2	**		mostzavleebi	ver	movidnen	skolashi	droze.
	***		Schoolchildren	could not	come	to school	on time.
3	*	Plural	გუშინ	ჩვენი ბავშვები	არ მივიდნენ	მდინარის	ნაპირთან.
	**		gushin	chveni bavshvebi	ar mividnen	mdinaris	napirthan.
	***		Yesterday	our children	did not go	to the river	bank.
4	*	Singular	დღეს	ჩემი შვილი	არ	მივიდა	სკოლაში.
	**		dgres	chemi shvili	ar	mivida	skolashi.
	***		Today	my son	did not	go	to school.
5	*	Singular	ჩემი ძმა	ვერ	ავიდა	იმ მაღალ	ხეზე.
	**		chemi dzma	ver	avida	im magral	kheze.
	***		My brother	could not	climb	that tall	tree.
6	*	Plural	იმ ღამეს	ჩვენი სპორტსმენები	ვერ	ავიდნენ	მთაზე.
	**		im grames	chveni sportsmenebi	ver	avidnen	mthaze.
	***		That night	our athletes	could not	climb	the mountain.
7	*	Singular	შუადღემდე	ჩემი პაპა	არ ამოვიდა	ღვინის	სარდაფიდან.
	**		shuadgremde	chemi papa	ar amovida	grvinis	sardapidan.
	***		Until noon	my grandfather	did not come out	from the wine	cellar.
8	*	Singular	დღეს	ჩვენი ბებია	არ ამოვიდა	მთის	წყლის წყაროზე.
	**		dgres	chveni bebia	ar amovida	mthis	tzqklis tzqkaroze.
	***		Today,	our grandmother	did not rise	to the mountain	water source.
9	*	Singular	შენი მეგობარი	ვერ	ჩავიდა	ავტობუსიდან	დროზე.
	**		sheni megobari	ver	chavida	avtobusidan	droze.
	***		Your friend	could not	get off	the bus	on time.
10	*	Plural	მათი ბავშვები	ვერ	ჩავიდნენ	ვიწრო	კიბეზე.
	**		mathi bavshvebi	ver	chavidnen	vitzro	kibeze.

	***		Their children	were not able to	go down	the narrow	stairs.
11	*	Singular	ჩემი ბიძა	არ ჩამოვიდა	აქ	თავისი	მანქანით.
	**		chemi bidza	ar chamovida	aq	thavisi	manqanith.
	***		My uncle	did not arrive	here	in his	car.
12	*	Plural	საღამომდე	ჩვენი მეცხვარეები	არ	ჩამოვიდნენ	საძოვრებიდან.
	**		sagramomde	chveni metskhvareebi	ar	chamovidnen	sadzovrebidan.
	***		Until the evening	our shepherds	did not	come down	from the pastures.
13	*	Singular	ჩემი და	ვერ	შევიდა	საავადმყოფოში	ავადმყოფთან.
	**		chemi da	ver	shevida	saavadmqkoposhi	avadmqkopthan.
	***		My sister	could not	enter	the hospital	with the patient.
14	*	Plural	მეთევზეები	ვერ	შევიდნენ	ღრმა	წყალში.
	**		methevzeebi	ver	shevidnen	grma	tzqkalshi.
	***		Fishermen	could not	go into	the deep	water.
15	*	Singular	საზღვარგარეთიდან	იაფი	საქონელი	არ	შემოვიდა.
	**		sazgrvargarethidan	iapi	saqoneli	ar	shemovida.
	***		From abroad,	cheap	goods	were not	received.
16	*	Singular	ბანკის	სალაროში	არ შემოვიდა	ბევრი	ფული.
	**		bankis	salaroshi	ar shemovida	bevri	puli.
	***		The bank	cashier	did not receive	a lot of	money.
17	*	Singular	ჩვენი ბებია	ვერ	გავიდა	დიდ	ბაღში.
	**		chveni bebia	ver	gavida	did	bagrshi.
	***		Our grandmother	could not	go	into the large	garden.
18	*	Plural	გუშინ	სამგზავრო	ავტობუსები	არ გავიდნენ	ქალაქიდან.
	**		gushin	samgzavro	avtobusebi	ar gavidnen	qalaqidan.
	***		Yesterday,	passenger	buses	did not go	out of the city.

19	*	Singular	წელს	არც ერთი	მისი	წიგნი	არ გამოვიდა.
	**		tzels	arts erthi	misi	tzigni	ar gamovida.
	***		This year,	none of	his	books	have come out.
20	*	Plural	კრებაზე	თქვენი	ხელმძღვანელები	არ გამოვიდნენ	სიტყვით.
	**		krebaze	thqveni	khelmdzgrvanelebi	ar gamovidnen	sitqkvith.
	***		At the meeting,	your	leaders	did not deliver	speeches.
21	*	Singular	შენი სტუდენტი	ძმა ვერ	გადავიდა	მომდევნო	კურსზე.
	**		sheni studenti	dzma ver	gadavida	momdevno	kursze.
	***		Your student	brother could not	transfer (move)	to the next	course.
22	*	Plural	ვაჭრები	ვერ	გადავიდნენ	საქმის	განხილვაზე.
	**		vachrebi	ver	gadavidnen	saqmis	gankhilvaze.
	***		The traders	could not	proceed	to the analysis of case.	
23	*	Singular	მოხუცი კაცი	ვერ	გადმოვიდა	ქუჩის	ამ მხარეს.
	**		mokhutsi katsi	ver	gadmovida	quchis	am mkhares.
	***		The old man	could not	come	on this side of the street.	
24	*	Singular	ის ინჟინერი	არ	გადმოვიდა	ჩვენს	სააგენტოში.
	**		is inzhineri	ar	gadmovida	chvens	saagentoshi.
	***		That engineer	did not	move	to our	agency.
25	*	Singular	ავადმყოფი	ბავშვი	ვერ	წავიდა	სკოლაში.
	**		avadmqkopi	bavshvi	ver	tzavida	skolashi.
	***		Sick	child	could not	go	to the school.
26	*	Plural	დილით	მშობლები	არ	წავიდნენ	სამუშაოზე.
	**		dilith	mshoblebi	ar	tzavidnen	samushaoze.
	***		In the morning	the parents	did not	go	to work.
	*	Singular	მეზობელი	ვერ	წამოვიდა	ჩვენთან	ერთად.

27	**		mezobeli	ver	tzamovida	chventhan	erthad.
	***		The neighbor	could not	come	together with us.	
28	*	Plural	ჩემი	ძმები არ	წამოვიდნენ	სოფლიდან	ქალაქში.
	**		chemi	dzmebi ar	tzamovidnen	soplidan	qalaqshi.
	***		My	brothers did not	come	from the village	to the city.
29	*	Singular	გაზაფხულზე	კარგი	ბალახი	არ ამოვიდა	სოფელში.
	**		gazapkhulze	kargi	balakhi	ar amovida	sopelshi.
	***		In the spring,	good	grass	did not rise	in the village.
30	*	Singular	ჩემი	მოწინააღმდეგე	არ გამოვიდა	სპორტულ	არენაზე.
	**		chemi	motzinaagrmdede	ar gamovida	sportul	arenaze.
	***		My	opponent	didn't come out	in the sports	arena.
31	*	Singular	იმათი	სავაჭრო	საქმე	არ წავიდა	კარგად.
	**		imathi	savatchro	saqme	ar tzavida	kargad.
	***		Their	trading	business	did not go	well.
32	*	Singular	ჩემი და	ვერ	შევიდა	პედაგოგიურ	ინსტიტუტში.
	**		chemi da	ver	shevida	pedagogiur	institutshi.
	***		My sister	could not	enter	the Pedagogical	Institute.
33	*	Singular	სამი ლიტრი	ღვინო	არ ჩავიდა	ამ	დოქში.
	**		sami litri	grvino	ar chavida	am	doqshi.
	***		Three liters	of wine	didn't go into	this	jug.
34	*	Singular	ბევრი	ფული	წავიდა	ამ	საქმეზე.
	**		bevri	puli	tzavida	am	saqmeze.
	***		A lot of	money	went to	this	business (case).
35	*	Singular	სოფელში	მდინარე	არ	გადმოვიდა	ნაპირებიდან.
	**		sopelshi	mdinare	ar	gadmovida	napiirebidan.

	***		In the village	the river	did not	did not overflow	its banks.
36	*	Singular	ბევრი	დრო გავიდა	ჩვენი	ქორწილის	შემდეგ.
	**		bevri	dro gavida	chveni	qortzilis	shemdeg.
	***		A lot of	time has passed	since our wedding.		
	* Words in Georgian language						
	** English transliteration of the Georgian words						
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words						

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The presenters invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 263-268, a “Supplement to Lesson No. 58” on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

5) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: “Each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. The group's listeners use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 58
1. ჩემი მამა ვერ მოვიდა სახლში ადრე. 2. მოსწავლეები ვერ მოვიდნენ სკოლაში დროზე. 3. გუმინ ჩვენი ბავშვები არ მოვიდნენ მდინარის ნაპირთან.	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 58
4. დღეს ჩემი შვილი არ მოვიდა სკოლაში.	

5. ჩემი ძმა ვერ ავიდა იმ მაღალ ხეზე.

6. იმ ღამეს ჩვენი სპორტსმენები ვერ ავიდნენ მთაზე.

7) After the simultaneous completion of the group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-eighth lesson.

Lesson fifty nine

The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences

Content of the fifty-ninth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Today we must continue our acquaintance with the past tense forms of those verbal names of action that we became familiar with during the 53rd lesson. This time we will study these forms in relation to the first grammatical person. To simplify the perception of these forms, we will use the verbs that we learned in the previous lesson.”

2. “For clarity, let’s take a verb already familiar to us - “მო-ვიდა” (“mo-vida”), English synonyms of which are the words “He (she, it) came” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “He (she, it) arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express the past action in the first person singular in Georgian, you need to do the following work: take the word “მო-ვიდა” (“mo-vida”) and remove its second half from it - “-ვიდა” (“-vida”). Instead of the deleted part we put the letter combination „ვედი“ (“-vedi”). Let's get the verb we need - „მო-ვედი“ (“mo-vedi”), English synonyms of which are the words “I came” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “I arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). We already know that in the first person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “მე” (“me”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “I have come” or “I have arrived” sound the same - “მე მო-ვედი“ (“me mo-vedi”).”

3. “In order to say in Georgian “We have come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “We have arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), we need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მო-ვედი” (“mo-vedi”) and to this word we add the ending “-თ” (“-th”). Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the first person plural - „მო-ვედი-თ“ (“mo-vedi-th”). We already know that in the first person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ჩვენ” (“chven”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “We have come” or “We have arrived” sound the same - “ჩვენ მო-ვედი-თ“ (“chven mo-vedi-th”).”

4. “In a similar way, using the example of the verbs “მო-ვედი” (“mo-vedi”) and “მო-ვედი-თ” (“mo-vedi-th”), we can form Georgian verbs in the first person of past tense based on the verbs that we learned in the previous lesson.”

5. “Let's look at table No. 73, which shows all the verb forms in the first person in past tense based on those verbal names of action that we learned during the 53rd lesson. Verb forms in the first person are presented in both singular and plural.”

Using a projector, listeners watch table No. 73 on a large screen. The presenters alternately voice both Georgian verbs in the third person singular (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian verbs in the first person singular and plural (columns 4 and 5).

Table №73

Forms of verbal nouns of action in the first person of past tense

Sequence number		Forms in the third person of past tense	13 forms of past tense for first person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-ვიდა	მო-ვედი	მო-ვედი-თ
	**	mo-vida	mo-vedi	mo-vedi-th
	***	Came here	I came here	We came here
2	*	მი-ვიდა	მი-ვედი	მი-ვედი-თ
	**	mi-vida	mi-vedi	mi-vedi-th
	***	Went there	I went there	We went there
3	*	ჩა-ვიდა	ჩა-ვედი	ჩა-ვედი-თ
	**	cha-vida	cha-vedi	cha-vedi-th
	***	Went down	I went down	We went down
4	*	ჩა-მო-ვიდა	ჩა-მო-ვედი	ჩა-მო-ვედი-თ
	**	cha-mo-vida	cha-mo-vedi	cha-mo-vedi-th
	***	Came down	I came down	We came down
5	*	ა-ვიდა	ა-ვედი	ა-ვედი-თ
	**	a-vida	a-vedi	a-vedi-th
	***	Went up	I went up	We went up
6	*	ა-მო-ვიდა	ა-მო-ვედი	ა-მო-ვედი-თ
	**	a-mo-vida	a-mo-vedi	a-mo-vedi-th
	***	Came up	I came up	We came up
7	*	შე-ვიდა	შე-ვედი	შე-ვედი-თ
	**	she-vida	she-vedi	she-vedi-th
	***	Went into	I went into	We went into
	*	შე-მო-ვიდა	შე-მო-ვედი	შე-მო-ვედი-თ

8	**	she-mo-vida	she-mo-vedi	she-mo-vedi-th
	***	Came into	I came into	We came into
9	*	გა-ვიდა	გა-ვედი	გა-ვედი-თ
	**	ga-vida	ga-vedi	ga-vedi-th
	***	Went out	I went out	We went out
10	*	გა-მო-ვიდა	გა-მო-ვედი	გა-მო-ვედი-თ
	**	ga-mo-vida	ga-mo-vedi	ga-mo-vedi-th
	***	Came out	I came out	We came out
11	*	გადა-ვიდა	გადა-ვედი	გადა-ვედი-თ
	**	gada-vida	gada-vedi	gada-vedi-th
	***	Went over	I went over	We went over
12	*	გად-მო-ვიდა	გად-მო-ვედი	გად-მო-ვედი-თ
	**	gad-mo-vida	gad-mo-vedi	gad-mo-vedi-th
	***	Came over	I came over	We came over
13	*	წა-ვიდა	წა-ვედი	წა-ვედი-თ
	**	tza-vida	tza-vedi	tza-vedi-th
	***	Went to	I went to	We went to
14	*	წა-მო-ვიდა	წა-მო-ვედი	წა-მო-ვედი-თ
	**	tza-mo-vida	tza-mo-vedi	tza-mo-vedi-th
	***	Came to	I came to	We came to
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of the Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “მე მო-ვედი” (“me mo-vedi”) → “მო-ვედი მე?” (“mo-vedi me?”) and so on.”

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), we get a negative phrase. For example, “მე მო-ვედი“ (“me mo-vedi”) → “მე არ მო-ვედი“ (“me ar mo-vedi”) and so on.”

2) Next, the presenter explains to the listeners the following: “Let's look at table No. 74, where the verbs “მო-ვედი” (“mo-vedi”), “მო-ვედი-თ” (“mo-vedi-th”) and others are used , both singular and plural. These affirmative and negative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one.”

Using a projector, listeners watch table No. 74 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №74

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian sentences using verbal action noun forms for the first grammatical person				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	*	Singular число	მე	მოვედი	შენთან	საქმეზე	სალაპარაკოდ.
	**		me	movedi	shenthan	saqmeze	salaπarakod.
	***		I	came	to you	for business talks.	
2	*	Plural	გუშინ	ჩვენ	მოვედით	თქვენთან	ორჯერ.
	**		gushin	chven	movedith	thqventhan	orjer.
	***		Yesterday	we	came	to you	twice.
3	*	Singular	მე	თვითონ	მივედი	ამ	დასკვნამდე.
	**		me	thvithon	mivedi	am	daskvnamde.
	***		I	myself	went	to this	conclusion.
4	*	Plural	ჩვენ	მივედით	ჩვენი	სკოლის	მასწავლებელთან.
	**		chven	mivedith	chveni	skolis	mastzavlebelthan.
	***		We	went	to the teacher of our school.		
	*	Singular	სამ	საათში	მე	ავედი	მთაზე.

5	**		sam	saathshi	me	avedi	mthaze.
	***		In three	hours,	I	climbed	the mountain.
6	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ადვილად	ავედით	მუხის	ხეზე.
	**		chven	advilad	avedith	mukhis	kheze.
	***		We	easily	climbed	the oak	tree.
7	*	Singular	თქვენს	სოფელში	მე	ამოვედი	მანქანით.
	**		thqvns	sopelshi	me	amovedi	manqanith.
	***		In your	village	I	came up	by car.
8	*	Plural	ბილიკებით	ჩვენ	ამოვედით	მთის	წყაროზე.
	**		bilikebith	chven	amovedith	mthis	tzqkaroze.
	***		Along the paths	we	came up	mountain	spring.
9	*	Singular	მე	ჩამოვედი	ძირს	თოკით.	
	**		me	chamovedi	dzirs	thokith.	
	***		I	came	down	by the rope.	
10	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ძლივს	ჩამოვედით	მთიდან.	
	**		chven	dzlivs	chamovedith	mthidan.	
	***		We	hardly	came down	from the mountain.	
11	*	Singular	სამ	დღეში	მე ჩავედი	თბილისიდან	მოსკოვში.
	**		sam	dgreshi	me chavedi	tbilisisidan	moskovshi.
	***		In three	days	I arrived	from Tbilisi	to Moscow.
12	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ჩავედით	სამეცნიერო	კონფერენციაზე.	
	**		chven	chavedith	sametsniero	konperentsiaze.	
	***		We	arrived	at a scientific	conference.	
13	*	Singular	მე	შევედი	ეზოში	ჩემი	მანქანით.
	**		me	shevedi	ezoshi	chemi	manqanith.

	***		I	drove	into the yard	with my	car.
14	*	Plural	მე და	ჩემი	ბავშვი	შევედით	სკოლაში.
	**		me da	chemi	bavshvi	shevedith	skolashi.
	***		I and	my	child	went into	the school.
15	*	Singular	მე	შემოვედი	ახალ	როლში	კარგად.
	**		me	shemovedi	akhal	rolshi	kargad.
	***		I	stepped into	new	role	well.
16	*	Plural	მე და	ჩემი ძმა	შემოვედით	სასოფლო-სამეურნეო	ინსტიტუტში.
	**		me da	chemi dzma	shemovedith	sasoplo-sameurneo	institutshi.
	***		I and	my brother	entered	the Agricultural	Institute.
17	*	Singular	მე	გავედი	დიდ	მინდორში.	
	**		me	gavedi	did	mindorshi.	
	***		I	went out	into a large	field.	
18	*	Plural	ადრე	დილით	ჩვენ	გავედით	სახლიდან.
	**		adre	dilith	chven	gavedith	sakhlidan.
	***		Early,	in the morning,	we	went out	of the house.
19	*	Singular	გუშინ	მე	გამოვედი	სახელმწიფო	კომისიიდან.
	**		gushin	me	gamovedi	sakhelmtzipo	komisiidan.
	***		Yesterday	I	resigned from	the state	commission.
20	*	Plural	სადილის	შემდეგ	ჩვენ	გამოვედით	სამზარეულოდან
	**		sadilis	shemdeg	chven	gamovedith	samzareulodan.
	***		After dinner,		we	came out	of the kitchen.
21	*	Singular	მე	ვერ	გადავედი	მეორე	კურსზე.
	**		me	ver	gadavedi	meore	kursze.
	***		I	could not	transfer	to the second	year.

22	*	Plural	ჩვენ	გადავედით	თურქეთში	ახალ	სამუშაოზე.
	**		chven	gadavedith	thurqethshi	akhal	samushaoze.
	***		We	moved	to Turkey	for a new	job.
23	*	Singular	მე	გადმოვედი	ხიდზე	ჩემი	მანქანით.
	**		me	gadmovedi	khidze	chemi	manqanith.
	***		I	came over	the bridge	with my	car.
24	*	Plural число	ჩვენ	ყველა	გადმოვედით	აქეთა	ნაპირზე.
	**		chven	qkvela	gadmovedith	aqetha	napirze.
	***		We	all	moved	to this	shore.
25	*	Singular	კვირას	მე	წავედი	სანადიროდ	მთაში.
	**		kviras	me	tzavedi	sanadirod	mthashi.
	***		On Sunday	I	went	for hunting	in the mountains.
26	*	Plural	გუშინ	სალამოს	ჩვენ	წავედით	თეატრში.
	**		gushin	sagramos	chven	tzavedith	theatrshi.
	***		Yesterday	evening	we	went	to the theater.
27	*	Singular	სამი	დღის წინ	მე	გამოვედი	საავადმყოფოდან.
	**		sami	dgris tzin	me	gamovedi	saavadmqkopodan.
	***		Three	days ago	I	came out	of the hospital.
28	*	Plural	ოლიმპიადაზე	ჩვენ	გამოვედით	პირველ	ადგილზე.
	**		olimpiadaze	chven	gamovedith	pirvel	adgilze.
	***		At the Olympics,	we	took	the first	place.
29	*	Singular	მე	სწრაფად	ჩამოვედი	სამგზავრო	გემიდან.
	**		me	stzrapad	chamovedi	samgzavro	gemidan.
	***		I	quickly	got off	the passenger	ship.
	*	Plura I	ჩვენ	გადავედით	ტროტუარიდან	ფენილზე.	

30	**		chven	gadavedith	trotuaridan	penilze.	
	***		We	crossed	from the sidewalk	to the street.	
31	*	Singular	მე	ვერ	წავედი	ჩვენს	მაღაზიაში.
	**		me	ver	tzavedi	chvens	magraziashi.
	***		I	could not	go	to our	store.
32	*	Plural	ჩვენ	წავედით	ხიდს	იქით.	
	**		chven	tzavedith	khids	iqith.	
	***		We	went	beyond the bridge.		
33	*	Singular	მე	შევედი	სამინისტროში	ჩემს	მეგობართან.
	**		me	shevedi	saministroshi	chems	megobarthan.
	***		I	went	into the ministry	to my	friend.
34	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ჯერ არ	შემოვედით	თქვენს	პარტიაში.
	**		chven	jer ar	shemovedith	thqvens	partiasi.
	***		We	have not yet	entered	your	party.
35	*	Singular	კრებაზე	მე	გამოვედი	სიტყვით	ორჯერ.
	**		krebaze	me	gamovedi	sitqkvith	orjer.
	***		At the meeting,	I	made	a speech	twice.
36	*	Plural	გვიან	საღამოს	ჩვენ	წავედით	სამსახურიდან.
	**		gvian	sagramos	chven	tzavedith	samsakhuridan.
	***		Late	in the evening,	we	went out	of the office.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The presenters invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 269-274, “Supplement to Lesson No. 59” on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

5) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. Students of the group use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 59
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. მე მოვედი უნთან საქმეზე სალაპარაკოდ. 2. გუშინ ჩვენ ორჯერ მოვედით თქვენთან. 3. მე თვითონ მივედი ამ დასკვნამდე. 	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 59
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. ჩვენ მივედით ჩვენი სკოლის მასწავლებელთან. 5. სამ საათში მე ავედი მთაზე. 6. ჩვენ ადვილად ავედით მუხის ხეზე. 	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the fifty-ninth lesson.

Lesson sixty

The Georgian interrogative sentences with pronouns

Content of the sixtieth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Today we must complete our acquaintance with the past tense forms of those verbal names of action that we became familiar with during the 53rd lesson. This time we will study these forms in relation to the second grammatical person. To simplify the perception of these forms, we will use the verbs that we learned in the previous lesson.”

2. “For clarity, let’s take a verb that is already familiar to us - “მო-ვედი” (“mo-vedi”), English synonyms of which are the words “I came” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “I arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express the past action of the second person singular in Georgian, you need to do the following work: take the word “მო-ვედი” (“mo-vedi”) and in this word, between the prefix “მო-“ (“mo-”) and the letter combination „ვედი“ (“-vedi”), add the letter „ბ-“ (“-kh-”). We get the verb we need - „მო-ბ-ვედი“ (“mo-kh-vedi”), English synonyms of which are the words “You came” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “You arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). We already know that in the second person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “შენ” (“shen”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “You have come” or “You have arrived” sound the same - “შენ მო-ბ-ვედი” (“shen mo-kh-vedi”).”

3. “In order to say in Georgian “You have arrived” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “You have arrived” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), both in plural, you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მო-ბ-ვედი” (“mo-kh-vedi”) and to this word we add the ending “-თ” (“-th”). Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the second person plural - „მო-ბ-ვედი-თ“ (“mo-kh-vedi-th”). We already know that in the second person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “თქვენ” (“thqven”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “You have come” or “You have arrived” sound the same - “თქვენ მო-ბ-ვედი-თ“ (“thqven mo-kh-vedi-th”).”

4. “In a similar way, using the example of the verbs “მო-ბ-ვედი” (“mo-kh-vedi”) and “მო-ბ-ვედი-თ” (“mo-kh-vedi-th”), we can form Georgian verbs in the first person of past tense based on those verbs that we learned in the previous lesson.”

5. “Let's look at table No. 75, which shows all the verb forms for the second person of past tense based on those verbal names of action that we learned during the 53rd lesson. Verb forms in the second person are presented in both singular and plural.”

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 75 on a large screen. The presenters take turns voicing both Georgian verbs in the first person singular (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian verbs in the second person singular and plural (columns 4 and 5).

Table №75

Forms of verbal nouns of action for the second person of past tense

Forms of verbal nouns of action for the second person of past tense				
Sequence number		Forms for the first person of past tense	13 forms of past tense for the second person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-ვედი	მო-ხ-ვედი	მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	mo-vedi	mo-kh-vedi	mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came here	You came here	You came here
2	*	მი-ვედი	მი-ხ-ვედი	მი-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	mi-vedi	mi-kh-vedi	mi-kh-vedi-th
	***	I went there	You went there	You went there
3	*	ჩა-ვედი	ჩა-ხ-ვედი	ჩა-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	cha-vedi	cha-kh-vedi	cha-kh-vedi-th
	***	I went down	You went down	You went down
4	*	ჩა-მო-ვედი	ჩა-მო-ხ-ვედი	ჩა-მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	cha-mo-vedi	cha-mo-kh-vedi	cha-mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came down	You came down	You came down
5	*	ა-ვედი	ა-ხ-ვედი	ა-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	a-vedi	a-kh-vedi	a-kh-vedi-th
	***	I went up	You went up	You went up
6	*	ა-მო-ვედი	ა-მო-ხ-ვედი	ა-მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	a-mo-vedi	a-mo-kh-vedi	a-mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came up	You came up	You came up
7	*	შე-ვედი	შე-ხ-ვედი	შე-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	she-vedi	she-kh-vedi	she-kh-vedi-th

	***	I went into	You went into	You went into
8	*	შე-მო-ვედი	შე-მო-ხ-ვედი	შე-მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	she-mo-vedi	she-mo-kh-vedi	she-mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came into	You came into	You came into
9	*	გა-ვედი	გა-ხ-ვედი	გა-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	ga-vedi	ga-kh-vedi	ga-kh-vedi-th
	***	I went out	You went out	You went out
10	*	გა-მო-ვედი	გა-მო-ხ-ვედი	გა-მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	ga-mo-vedi	ga-mo-kh-vedi	ga-mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came out	You came out	You came out
11	*	გადა-ვედი	გადა-ხ-ვედი	გადა-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	gada-vedi	gada-kh-vedi	gada-kh-vedi-th
	***	I went over	You went over	You went over
12	*	გად-მო-ვედი	გად-მო-ხ-ვედი	გად-მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	gad-mo-vedi	gad-mo-kh-vedi	gad-mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came over	You came over	You came over
13	*	წა-ვედი	წა-ხ-ვედი	წა-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	tza-vedi	tza-kh-vedi	tza-kh-vedi-th
	***	I went to	You went to	You went to
14	*	წა-მო-ვედი	წა-მო-ხ-ვედი	წა-მო-ხ-ვედი-თ
	**	tza-mo-vedi	tza-mo-kh-vedi	tza-mo-kh-vedi-th
	***	I came to	You came to	You came to
	* Words in Georgian language			
	** English transliteration of the Georgian words			
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words			

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “შენ მო-ხ-ვედი“ (“shen mo-kh-vedi”) → “მო-ხ-ვედი შენ?” (“mo-kh-vedi shen?”) and so on.”

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), we get a negative phrase. For example, “შენ მო-ხ-ვედი” (“shen mo-kh-vedi”) → “შენ არ მო-ხ-ვედი” (“shen ar mo-kh-vedi”) and so on.”

2) Next, the presenter explains to the listeners the following: “Let's look at table No. 76, where the verbs “მო-ხ-ვედი” (“mo-kh-vedi”), “მო-ხ-ვედი-თ” (“mo-kh-vedi-th”) and others are used, both in the singular and in the plural. These interrogative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent interrogative sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one.”

Next, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 76 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce Georgian words in the interrogative sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can clearly hear the sounds.

Table №76

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian interrogative sentences using action verb forms for the second grammatical person				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	2	3					
1	*	Singular	რატომ	არ	მოხვედი	ჩემს	ქორწილში?
	**		ratom	ar	mokhvedi	chems	qortzilshi?
	***		Why	did not you	come	to my	wedding?
2	*	Plural	როგორ	ამოხვედით	მეათე	სართულზე?	
	**		rogor	amokhvedith	meathe	sarthulze?	
	***		How	did you come up	to the tenth	floor?	
3	*	Singular	ვისთან	მიხვედი	შენ	გასულ	კვირას?
	**		visthan	mikhvedi	shen	gasul	kviras?
	***		To whom	did you go		last	week?
4	*	Plural	რა	საჩუქრებით	მიხვედით	თქვენს	მშობლებთან?
	**		ra	sachuqrebith	mikhvedith	thqvens	mshoblebthan?

	***		With what	gifts	did you go	to your	parents?
5	*	Singular	საიდან	ახვედი	იმ	მაღალ	კლდეზე?
	**		saidan	akhvedi	im	magral	kldeze?
	***		From where	did you climb	on that	high	rock?
6	*	Plural	რატომ	ვერ	ახვედით	სამეფო	ტახტზე?
	**		ratom	ver	akhvedith	samepo	takhtze?
	***		Why	could not you have	ascended	the royal	throne?
7	*	Singular	როდის	მოხვედი	ჩვენს	მთიან	რაიონში?
	**		rodis	moxvedi	chvens	mthian	raionshi?
	***		When	did you come	to our	mountainous	district?
8	*	Plural	რა	გზით	ამოხვედით	მთის	სადოვრებზე?
	**		ra	gzith	amokhvedith	mthis	sadzovrebze?
	***		By what	road	did you come up	to the mountain	pastures?
9	*	Singular	რატომ	არ	ჩახვედი	ღვინის	სარდაფში?
	**		ratom	ar	chakhvedi	grvinis	sardapshi?
	***		Why	did not you	go down	into the wine	cellar?
10	*	Plural	ავტობუსის	რომელ	გაჩერებაზე	ჩახვედით	თქვენ?
	**		avtobusis	romel	gacherebaze	chakhvedith	thqven?
	***		At which bus		stop	did you get off?	
11	*	Singular	რომელ	საათზე	ჩამოხვედი	აქ	თვითმფრინავით?
	**		romel	saathze	chamokhvedi	aq	thvithmprinavith?
	***		At what	time	did you arrive	here	by plane?
12	*	Plural	ვისთან	ერთად	ჩამოხვედით	მდინარის	ხეობაში?
	**		visthan	erthad	chamokhvedith	mdinaris	kheobashi?
	***		Together with whom		did you descend	into the river	valley?

13	*	Singular	რატომ	არ	შეხვედი	სამედიცინო	ინსტიტუტში?
	**		ratom	ar	sekhvedi	sameditsino	institutshi?
	***		Why	did not	you enroll	in the Medical	Institute?
14	*	Plural	როდის	და	რომელ	პარტიაში	შეხვედით?
	**		rodis	da	romel	partiasihi	shekhvedith?
	***		When	and	in which	party	have you entered?
15	*	Singular	როგორ	შემოხვედი	ჩემს	სამუშაო	ოთახში?
	**		rogor	shemokhvedi	chems	samushao	othakhshi?
	***		How	did you come	into my	working	room?
16	*	Plural	რატომ	არ შემოხვედით	ჩვენს	სპორტულ	დარბაზში?
	**		ratom	ar shemokhvedith	chvens	sportul	darbazshi?
	***		Why	did not you come	into our	sports	hall?
17	*	Singular	როდის	გახვედი	თეატრალურ	სცენაზე	პირველად?
	**		rodis	gakhvedi	theatralur	stsenaze	pirvelad?
	***		When	did you go on	the theatrical	stage	for the first time?
18	*	Plural	გახვედით	თქვენ	ახალ	სამუშაო	ადგილზე?
	**		gakhvedith	thqven	akhal	samushao	adgilze?
	***		Did you go		to a new	job site?	
19	*	Singular	როდის	გამოხვედი	შენ	ქირურგიული	საავადმყოფოდან?
	**		rodis	gamokhvedi	shen	qirurgiuli	saavadmqkopodan?
	***		When	did you come out		of the surgical	hospital?
20	*	Plural	როგორი	მოხსენებებით	გამოხვედით	გუშინ	კონფერენციაზე?
	**		rogori	mokhsenebith	gamokhvedith	gushin	konperentsiaze?
	***		With what	reports	did you speak	at yesterday's	conference?
	*	Singular	რანაირად	გადახვედი	ერთი	ფაკულტეტიდან	მეორეზე?

21	**		ranairad	gadakhvedi	erthi	pakultetidan	meoreze?
	***		How	did you move	from one	faculty	to another?
22	*	Plural	რომელ	ახალ	ბინაში	გადახვედით?	
	**		romel	akhal	binashi	gadakhvedith?	
	***		Into what	new	apartment	did you move?	
23	*	Singular	როგორ	გადმოხვედი	ამ ქუჩაზე	ბავშვებთან	ერთად?
	**		rogor	gadmokhvedi	am quchaze	bavshvebthan	erthad?
	***		How	did you cross	this street	with the children?	
24	*	Plural	რატომ	ვერ გადმოხვედით	ჩემთან	გუშინ	საღამოს?
	**		ratom	ver gadmokhvedith	chemthan	gushin	sagramos?
	***		Why	could not you come	out with me	last	night?
25	*	Singular	ვისთან	ერთად	წახვედი	შენ	მოსკოვში?
	**		visthan	erthad	tzakhvedi	shen	moskovshi?
	***		Together with whom		did you go		to Moscow?
26	*	Plural	წახვედით	თქვენ	ახალ	სასოფლო	სკოლაში?
	**		tzakhvedith	thqven	akhal	sasoplo	skolashi?
	***		Have you gone		to a new	rural	school?
27	*	Singular	რატომ	გამოხვედი	შენ	ამ	პარტიიდან?
	**		ratom	gamokhvedi	shen	am	partiidan?
	***		Why	did you leave		that	party?
28	*	Plural	რომელ	უმაღლეს	სასწავლებელში	შეხვედით	წელს?
	**		romel	umagrles	sastzavlebelshi	shekhvedith	tzels?
	***		In which	higher	education institution	did you enroll	this year?
29	*	Singular	რა	ადგილას	გადახვედი	ამ	მდინარეზე?
	**		ra	adgilas	gadakhvedi	am	mdinareze?

	***		In what	place	did you cross	this	river?
30	*	Singular	წახვედი	შენ	ზღვის	სანაპიროსკენ	გუშინ?
	**		tzakhvedi	shen	zgrvis	sanapiroshken	gushin?
	***		Did you go		in the direction of the sea coast		yesterday?
31	*	Plural	რომელი	გემით	ჩამოხვედით	ბათუმში?	
	**		romeli	gemith	chamokhvedith	bathumshi?	
	***		By which	ship	did you arrive	in Batumi?	
32	*	Singular	რომელი	თვითმფრინავით	წამოხვედი	შენ	ჩვენთან?
	**		romeli	thvithmprinavith	tzamokhvedi	shen	chventhan?
	***		By which	plane	have you come		to us?
33	*	Singular	რა	ფულით	შემოხვედი	საბანკო	ბიზნესში?
	**		ra	pulith	shemokhvedi	sabanko	biznesshi?
	***		With what	money	have you entered	the banking	business?
34	*	Singular	როგორ	გადახვედი	ასეთ	დიდ	თანამდებობაზე?
	**		rogor	gadakhvedi	aseth	did	thanamdebobaze?
	***		How	did you move	to such	a great	position?
35	*	Plural	რამდენ	საათში	ჩახვედით	თქვენს	სოფელში?
	**		ramden	saathshi	chakhvedith	thqvens	sopelshi?
	***		How many	hours	did you arrive	in your	village?
36	*	Singular	რა	სიმაღლეზე	ახვედი	შენი	თვითმფრინავით?
	**		ra	simagrzeze	akhvedi	sheni	thvithmprinavith?
	***		How high		did you go	by your	plane?
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 275-280, a “Supplement to Lesson No. 60” on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

5) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: “each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. The group's listeners use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 60
1. რატომ არ მოხვედი ჩემს ქორწილში?	
2. როგორ ამოხვედით მეათე სართულზე?	
3. ვისთან მიხვედი შენ გასულ კვირას?	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 60
4. რა საჩუქრებით მიხვედით თქვენს მშობლებთან?	
5. საიდან ახვედი იმ მაღალ კლდეზე?	
6. რატომ ვერ ახვედით სამეფო ტახტზე?	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixtieth lesson.

Lesson sixty one

The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences

Content of the sixty-first lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. "Today we must begin to get acquainted with the forms of the future tense of those verbal names of action that we met during the 53rd lesson. It's about the grammatical third person."

2. "For clarity, let's take one of the familiar verbal names of action - "მო-სვლა" ("mo-svla"), English synonyms of which are the words "Come" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "Arrival" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express a future action in Georgian in the third person singular - "He will come" or "He will arrive", you need to do the following work: take the word "მო-სვლა" ("mo-svla") and remove its main part from this word - „-სვლა“ (“-svla”). In its place we must insert the letter combination “-ვა” (“-va”). Let's get the Georgian verb we need - „მო-ვა“ (“mo-va”), English synonyms of which are the words “He (she, it) will come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “He (she, it) will arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian traffic). We already know that in the third person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ის” (“is”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “He (she, it) will come” or “He (she, it) will arrive” sound the same - “ის მო-ვა (“is mo-va”).”

3. "In order to say in Georgian “They will come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “They will arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian movement), you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - “მო-ვა” (“mo-va”) and from the second part of this word - „-ვა“ (“-va”) we remove the final letter „ა“ (“a”). After this, we add the ending „-ლენ“ (“-len”) to the letter combination „მო-ვ“ (“mo-v”). Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the third person plural - „მო-ვლენ“ (“mo-vlen”). We already know that in the third person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “ისინი” (“isini”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “They will come” or “They will arrive” sound the same - „ისინი მო-ვლენ“ (“isini mo-vlen”).”

4. "In a similar way, using the example of the verbs “მო-ვა” (“mo-va”) and “მო-ვლენ” (“mo-vlen”), we can form Georgian verbs for the first person of future tense on the basis of those verbal names actions that we met during the 53rd lesson."

5. "Let's look at table No. 77, which shows all the verb forms of the future tense for the third person based on those verbal names of action that we learned during the 53rd lesson. Verb forms in the third person are presented in both singular and plural numbers.”

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 77 on a large screen. The presenters alternately voice both the Georgian verbal names of the action (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian verbal forms of the future tense (columns 4 and 5).

Table №77

Forms of verbal nouns of action for the third person of future tense
--

Sequence number		Verbal names of action	13 forms of past tense for the third person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-სვლა	მო-ვა	მო-ვლენ
	**	mo-svla	mo-va	mo-vlen
	***	Coming here	He will come here	They will come here
2	*	მი-სვლა	მი-ვა	მი-ვლენ
	**	mi-svla	mi-va	mi-vlen
	***	Going there	He will go there	They will go there
3	*	ჩა-სვლა	ჩა-ვა	ჩა-ვლენ
	**	cha-svla	cha-va	cha-vlen
	***	Going down	He will go down	They will go down
4	*	ჩა-მო-სვლა	ჩა-მო-ვა	ჩა-მო-ვლენ
	**	cha-mo-svla	cha-mo-va	cha-mo-vlen
	***	Coming down	He will come down	They will come down
5	*	ა-სვლა	ა-ვა	ა-ვლენ
	**	a-svla	a-va	a-vlen
	***	Going up	He will go up	They will go up
6	*	ა-მო-სვლა	ა-მო-ვა	ა-მო-ვლენ
	**	a-mo-svla	a-mo-va	a-mo-vlen
	***	Coming up	He will come up	They will come up
7	*	შე-სვლა	შე-ვა	შე-ვლენ
	**	she-svla	she-va	she-vlen
	***	Going into	He will go into	They will go into
	*	შე-მო-სვლა	შე-მო-ვა	შე-მო-ვლენ

8	**	she-mo-svla	she-mo-va	she-mo-vlen
	***	Coming into	He will come into	They will come into
9	*	გა-სვლა	გა-ვა	გა-ვლენ
	**	ga-svla	ga-va	ga-vlen
	***	Going out	He will go out	They will go out
10	*	გა-მო-სვლა	გა-მო-ვა	გა-მო-ვლენ
	**	ga-mo-svla	ga-mo-va	ga-mo-vlen
	***	Coming out	He will come out	They will come out
11	*	გადა-სვლა	გადა-ვა	გადა-ვლენ
	**	gada-svla	gada-va	gada-vlen
	***	Going over	He will go over	They will go over
12	*	გად-მო-სვლა	გად-მო-ვა	გად-მო-ვლენ
	**	gad-mo-svla	gad-mo-va	gad-mo-vlen
	***	Coming over	He will come over	They will come over
13	*	წა-სვლა	წა-ვა	წა-ვლენ
	**	tza-svla	tza-va	tza-vlen
	***	Going to	He will go to	They will go to
14	*	წა-მო-სვლა	წა-მო-ვა	წა-მო-ვლენ
	**	tza-mo-svla	tza-mo-va	tza-mo-vlen
	***	Coming to	He will come to	They will come to
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of the Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “ის მო-ვა” (“is mo-va”) → “მო-ვა ის?” (“mo-va is?”) and so on.”

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), we get a negative phrase. For example, “ის მო-ვა“ (“is mo-va”) → “ის არ მო-ვა“ (“is ar mo-va”) and so on.”

2) Next, the presenter explains to the listeners the following: “Let's look at table No. 78, where the verbs “მო-ვა” (“mo-va”) and others are used, both in the singular and in the plural. These affirmative and negative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one.”

Next, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 78 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №78

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian sentences using verb action noun forms for the third grammatical person				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	2	3					
1	*	Singular	მოხუცი	ვერ	ამოვა	ამ	კიბეზე.
	**		mokhutsi	ver	amova	am	kibeze.
	***		The old man	will not be able	to climb	this	ladder.
2	*	Plural	სალამოდე	ისინი	ვერ	ამოვლენ	სოფელში.
	**		sagramomde	isini	ver	amovlen	sopelshi.
	***		Until evening	they	will not be able	to arrive	in the village.
3	*	Plural	ჩვენი	მეხანძრეები	ახლოს	მივლენ	ცეცხლთან.
	**		chveni	mekhandzreebi	akhlos	mivlen	tsetskhlthan.
	***		Our	firefighters	will go close		to the fire.
4	*	Singular	ჩემი	ცოლი	გვიან	მივა	სამსახურში.
	**		chemi	tsoli	gvian	miva	samsakhurshi.
	***		My	wife	will go later		at work.

5	*	Singular	მოსკოველი	სტუმარი	მოვა	თბილისში	მატარებლით.
	**		moskoveli	stumari	mova	tbilissshi	matareblith.
	***		Muscovite	guest	will arrive	in Tbilisi	by train.
6	*	Singular	ჩემი	ბავშვი	იოლად	ავა	ხეზე.
	**		chemi	bavshvi	iolad	ava	kheze.
	***		My	child	will easily	climb	the tree.
7	*	Singular	ზაფხულში	ის	ამოვა	ჩვენთან	მთაში.
	**		zapkhulshi	is	amova	chventhan	mthashi.
	***		In the summer	he	will come up	to us	in the mountains.
8	*	Plural	სულ	მალე	მშობლები	ამოვლენ	აივანზე.
	**		sul	male	mshoblebi	amovlen	aivanze.
	***		Very	soon,	parents	will come up	to the balcony.
9	*	Singular	რამდენი	ლიტრი	ჩავა	ამ	დოქში?
	**		ramdeni	litri	chave	am	doqshi?
	***		How many	liters	will go into	this	jug?
10	*	Plural	როდის	ჩავლენ	მგზავრები	მოსკოვში?	
	**		rodis	chavlen	mgzavrebi	moskovshi?	
	***		When	will the passengers arrive		in Moscow?	
11	*	Singular	ამ ხეზე	ჩამოვა	ორასი	კილოგრამი	ვაშლი.
	**		am kheze	chamova	orasi	kilogrami	vashli.
	***		This tree	will yield	two hundred	kilograms	of apples.
12	*	Plural	ხვალ	ჩვენი	მშობლები	ჩამოვლენ	სოფლიდან.
	**		khval	chveni	mshoblebi	chamovlen	soplidan.
	***		Tomorrow	our	parents	will come	from the village.
	*	Singular	მისი ძმა	მალე	შევა	დემოკრატიულ	პარტიაში.

13	**		misi dzma	male	sheva	demokratiul	partiasi.
	***		His brother	will soon join		the democratic	party.
14	*	Singular	ჩემი	და	შევა	სამედიცინო	ინსტიტუტში.
	**		chemi	da	sheva	sameditsino	institutshi.
	***		My	sister	will enroll	in the Medical	Institute.
15	*	Singular	ორ	კვირაში	ხენდრო	შემოვა	ბაზარში.
	**		or	kvirashi	khendro	shemova	bazarshi.
	***		Two weeks later,		a strawberry	will appear	in the market.
16	*	Plural	ახალწვეულები	შემოვლენ	ჩვენს	სასაზღვრო	რაზმში.
	**		akhaltzveulebi	shemovlen	chvens	sasazgrvro	razmshi.
	***		The recruits	will come to	our	border	squad.
17	*	Singular	ასეთი	ტანსაცმელი	მალე	გავა	ხმარებიდან.
	**		asethi	tansatsmeli	male	gava	khmarebidan.
	***		Such	clothes	will soon be		out of use.
18	*	Plural	წლის ბოლოს	მათი	მშობლები	გავლენ	პენსიაზე.
	**		tzlis bolos	mathi	mshoblebi	gavlen	pensiaze.
	***		At the end of year,	their	parents	will retire	
19	*	Singular	მისგან	კარგი	ინჟინერი	გამოვა.	
	**		misgan	kargi	inzhineri	gamova.	
	***		From him,	a good	engineer	will emerge.	
20	*	Plural	მათგან	საიმედო	ექიმები	გამოვლენ.	
	**		mathgan	saimedo	eqimebi	gamovlen.	
	***		From them,	reliable	doctors	will emerge.	
21	*	Singular	თქვენი	მეზობელი	გადავა	ახალ	ბინაში.
	**		thqveni	mezobeli	gadava	akhal	binashi.

	***		Your	neighbor	will move	to a new	apartment.
22	*	Singular	ეს	წიგნი	გადავა	თაობიდან	თაობაში.
	**		es	tzigni	gadava	thaobidan	thaobashi.
	***		This	book	will pass	from generation	to generation.
23	*	Singular	საღამოს	ჩემი	ძმა	გადმოვა	შენთან.
	**		sagramos	chemi	dzma	gadmova	shenthan.
	***		In the evening	my	brother	will come over	to you.
24	*	Plural	ჩემი	მშობლები	გადმოვლენ	საცხოვრებლად	ჩემთან.
	**		chemi	mshoblebi	gadmovlen	satskhovreblad	chemthan.
	***		My	parents	will come	to live	with me.
25	*	Plural	ჩვენი	ნათესავეები	მალე	წავლენ	ბათუმში.
	**		chveni	nathesavebi	male	tzavlen	bathumshi.
	***		Our	relatives	will soon	go to	Batumi.
26	*	Singular	ალბათ	ბევრი	ფული	წავა	მშენებლობაზე.
	**		albath	bevri	puli	tzava	msheneblobaze.
	***		Probably	a lot of	money	will go	to construction
27	*	Singular	ჩემი	მეგობარი	წამოვა	შენსკენ	ფეხით.
	**		chemi	megobari	tzamova	shensken	pekhith.
	***		My	friend	will go	to you	on foot.
28	*	Plural	ჩვენი	სტუმრები	წამოვლენ	სოფელში	მანქანით.
	**		chveni	stumrebi	tzamovlen	sopelshi	manqanith.
	***		Our	guests	will come	to the village	by car.
29	*	Singular	საღამოს	კვამლი	ამოვა	საკვამურიდან.	
	**		sagramos	kvamli	amova	sakvamuridan.	
	***		In the evening,	smoke	will come out	of the chimney.	

30	*	Singular	რამდენიმე	საგზაო	მონაკვეთი	გავა	მიწის ქვეშ.
	**		ramdenime	sagzao	monakvethi	gava	mitzis qvesh.
	***		Several	road	sections	will pass	under the ground.
31	*	Singular	თქვენი	მატარებელი	საცაა	გავა	სოხუმისკენ.
	**		thqveni	matarebeli	satsaa	gava	sokhumisken.
	***		Your	train	just now	will depart	to Sukhumi.
32	*	Singular	ეს მაგიდა	არ	გამოვა	ამ კარებში.	
	**		es magida	ar	gamova	am karebshi.	
	***		This table	will not be	taken through	these doors.	
33	*	Singular	კრებაზე	შენი	წინადადება	ვერ	გავა.
	**		krebaze	sheni	tzinadadeba	ver	gava.
	***		At the meeting,	your	proposal	will not be	accepted.
34	*	Singular	მალე	მატარებელი	გამოვა	იმ	სადგურიდან.
	**		male	matarebeli	gamova	im	sadguridan.
	***		Soon	the train	will depart from	that	station.
35	*	Singular	ხვალ	ჩვენი	ხელმძღვანელი	გამოვა	რადიოთი.
	**		khval	chveni	khelmdzgrvani	gamova	radiothi.
	***		Tomorrow	our	leader	will come out	on the radio.
36	*	Singular	ვნახოთ,	ვინ	გამოვა	მართალი!	
	**		vnakhoth,	vin	gamova	marthali!	
	***		Let's see	who	comes out	right!	
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 281-286, "Supplement to Lesson No. 61" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

6) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. Students of the group use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words."

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 61
1. მოხუცი ვერ ამოვა ამ კიბეზე.	
2. საღამომდე ისინი ვერ ამოვლენ სოფელში.	
3. ჩვენი მეხანძრეები ახლოს მივლენ ცეცხლთან.	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 61
4. ჩემი ცოლი გვიან მივა სამსახურში.	
5. მოსკოველი სტუმარი მოვა თბილისში მატარებლით.	
6. ჩემი ბავშვი იოლად ავა ხეზე.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-first lesson.

Lesson sixty two

The Georgian affirmative and negative sentences

Content of the sixty-second lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. "Today we must continue our acquaintance with the forms of the future tense of those verbal names of action that we became familiar with during the 53rd lesson. This time we will study these forms in relation to the first grammatical person."

2. "For clarity, let's take a verb that is already familiar to us - "მო-ვა" ("mo-va"), English synonyms of which are the words "He (she, it) will come" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "He (she, it) will arrive" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express a future action for the first person in singular number in Georgian, you need to do the following work: take the word "მო-ვა" ("mo-va") and add the letter "ლ" ("l") at the end. Let's get the verb we need - „მო-ვა-ლ“ ("mo-va-l"), English synonyms of which are the words "I will come" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "I will arrive" (expresses non-pedestrian movement). We already know that in the first person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun "მე" ("me"). Consequently, in Georgian the words "I will come" or "I will arrive" sound the same - „მე მო-ვა-ლ“ ("me mo-va-l")."

3. "In order to say in Georgian "We will come" (expresses pedestrian movement) and "We will arrive" (expresses non-pedestrian movement), you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - "მო-ვა-ლ" ("mo-va-l") and to this word we add the ending „-თ“ ("-th"). Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the first person plural - „მო-ვა-ლ-თ“ ("mo-va-l-th"). We already know that in the first person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun "ჩვენ" ("chven"). Consequently, in Georgian the words "We will come" or "We will arrive" sound the same - "ჩვენ მო-ვა-ლ-თ" ("chven mo-va-l-th")."

4. "In a similar way, using the example of the verbs "მო-ვა-ლ" ("mo-va-l") and "მო-ვა-ლ-თ" ("mo-va-l-th"), we can form Georgian verbs for the first person of future tense based on those verbs that we met during the previous lesson".

5. "Let's look at table No. 79, which shows all the verb forms of the future tense for the first person based on the verbs that we met during the previous lesson. Verb forms in the first person are presented in both singular and plural numbers."

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 79 on a large screen. The presenters alternately voice both Georgian verbs for the third person singular (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian verbs for the first person in singular and plural tenses (columns 4 and 5).

Table №79

Forms of verbal names of action for the first person of future tense
--

Sequence number		Verb forms for the third person in future tense	13 forms of the future tense for the first person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-ვა	მო-ვა-ლ	მო-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	mo-va	mo-va-l	mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come here	I will come here	We will come here
2	*	მი-ვა	მი-ვა-ლ	მი-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	mi-va	mi-va-l	mi-va-l-th
	***	He will go there	I will go there	We will go there
3	*	ჩა-ვა	ჩა-ვა-ლ	ჩა-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	cha-va	cha-va-l	cha-va-l-th
	***	He will go down	I will go down	We will go down
4	*	ჩა-მო-ვა	ჩა-მო-ვა-ლ	ჩა-მო-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	cha-mo-va	cha-mo-va-l	cha-mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come down	I will come down	We will come down
5	*	ა-ვა	ა-ვა-ლ	ა-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	a-va	a-va-l	a-va-l-th
	***	He will go up	I will go up	We will go up
6	*	ა-მო-ვა	ა-მო-ვა-ლ	ა-მო-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	a-mo-va	a-mo-va-l	a-mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come up	I will come up	We will come up
7	*	შე-ვა	შე-ვა-ლ	შე-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	she-va	she-va-l	she-va-l-th
	***	He will go into	I will go into	We will go into
	*	შე-მო-ვა	შე-მო-ვა-ლ	შე-მო-ვა-ლ-თ

8	**	she-mo-va	she-mo-va-l	she-mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come into	I will come into	We will come into
9	*	გა-ვა	გა-ვა-ლ	გა-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	ga-va	ga-va-l	ga-va-l-th
	***	He will go out	I will go out	We will go out
10	*	გა-მო-ვა	გა-მო-ვა-ლ	გა-მო-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	ga-mo-va	ga-mo-va-l	ga-mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come out	I will come out	We will come out
11	*	გადა-ვა	გადა-ვა-ლ	გადა-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	gada-va	gada-va-l	gada-va-l-th
	***	He will go over	I will go over	We will go over
12	*	გად-მო-ვა	გად-მო-ვა-ლ	გად-მო-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	gad-mo-va	gad-mo-va-l	gad-mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come over	I will come over	We will come over
13	*	წა-ვა	წა-ვა-ლ	წა-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	tza-va	tza-va-l	tza-va-l-th
	***	He will go to	I will go to	We will go to
14	*	წა-მო-ვა	წა-მო-ვა-ლ	წა-მო-ვა-ლ-თ
	**	tza-mo-va	tza-mo-va-l	tza-mo-va-l-th
	***	He will come to	I will come to	We will come to
* Words in Georgian language				
** English transliteration of the Georgian words				
*** English synonyms of Georgian words				

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “მე მო-ვა-ლ” (“me mo-va-l”) → “მო-ვა-ლ მე?” (“mo-va-l me?”) and so on.”

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), we get a negative phrase. For example, “მე მო-ვა-ლ” (“me mo-va-l”) → “მე არ მო-ვა-ლ” (“me ar mo-va-l”) and so on.”

2) Next, the presenter explains the following to the listeners: “Let's look at table No. 80, where the verbs “მო-ვა-ლ” (“mo-va-l”) and others are used, both in the singular and in the plural numbers. These affirmative and negative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one.”

Then, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 80 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №80

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian sentences using forms of verbal action nouns for the first grammatical person				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	2	3					
1	*	Singular	მე	მოვალ	თქვენთან	ერთ	საათში.
	**		me	moval	thqventhan	erth	saathshi.
	***		I	will come	to you	in an hour.	
2	*	Plural	ჩვენ	მოვალთ	სახელმწიფო	უნივერსიტეტიდან	გვიან.
	**		chven	movalth	sakhelmtzipo	universitetidan	gvian.
	***		We	will come	from the State	University	late.
3	*	Singular	მე	მივალ	შენს	მასწავლებელთან	ახლავე.
	**		me	mival	shens	mastzavlebelthan	akhlave.
	***		I	will go	to your	teacher	right now.
4	*	Plural	ჩვენ	მივალთ	საზღვაო	ნავსადგურში	მანქანით.
	**		chven	mivalth	sazgrvao	navsadgurshi	manqanith.

	***		We	will go	to the sea	port	by car.
5	*	Singular	მე	ვერ	ავალ	მთაზე	სწრაფად.
	**		me	ver	aval	mthaze	stzrapad.
	***		I	will not be able	to climb	the mountain	quickly.
6	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ავალთ	მეთე	სართულზე	ლიფტით.
	**		chven	avalth	meathe	sarthulze	liptith.
	***		We	will go up	to the tenth	floor	by elevator.
7	*	Singular	მე	ამოვალ	აივანზე	სადილის	შემდეგ.
	**		me	amoval	aivanze	sadilis	shemdeg.
	***		I	will come up	to the balcony	after dinner.	
8	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ამოვალთ	წყაროზე	დიდი	დოქებით.
	**		chven	amovalth	tzqkaroze	didi	doqebith.
	***		We	will go up	to the spring	with big	jugs.
9	*	Singular	მე	ჩავალ	ტრამვაიდან	მეხუთე	გაჩერებაზე.
	**		me	chaval	tramvaidan	mekhuthe	gacherebaze.
	***		I	will get	off the tram	at the fifth	stop.
10	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ჩავალთ	ბათუმში	მომდევნო	შაბათს.
	**		chven	chavalth	bathumshi	momdevno	shabaths.
	***		We	will arrive	in Batumi	next	Saturday.
11	*	Singular	მე	ჩამოვალ	თქვენთან	ამ ღამეს	ვერტგრენით.
	**		me	chamoval	thqventhan	am grames	vertprenith.
	***		I	will arrive	to you	this night	by helicopter.
12	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ჩამოვალთ	სოფელში	სტუმრებთან	ერთად.
	**		chven	chamovalth	sopelshi	stumrebthan	erthad.
	***		We	will arrive	in the village	with the guests.	

13	*	Singular	წელს	მე	შევალ	სამშენებლო	ინსტიტუტში.
	**		tzels	me	sheval	samsheneblo	institutshi.
	***		This year	I	will enter	the construction	institute.
14	*	Plural	ჩვენ	შევალთ	ახალ	პოლიტიკურ	პარტიაში.
	**		chven	shevalth	akhal	politikur	partiasi.
	***		We	will enter	a new	political	party.
15	*	Singular	მე	შემოვალ	ბიზნესში	დიდი	ფულით.
	**		me	shemoval	biznesshi	didi	pulith.
	***		I	will enter	business	with much	money.
16	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ვერ	შემოვალთ	ეზოში	მანქანით.
	**		chven	ver	shemovalth	ezoshi	manqanith.
	***		We	will not be able	to come into	the courtyard	by car.
17	*	Singular	ხვალ	მე	გავალ	სახლიდან	ადრე.
	**		khval	me	gaval	sakhlidan	adre.
	***		Tomorrow	I	will go out	of the house	early.
18	*	Plural	ჩვენ	გავალთ	ქალაქიდან	სწრაფი	მატარებლით.
	**		chven	gavalth	qalaqidan	stzrapi	matareblith.
	***		We	will go out	of the city	by high-speed	train.
19	*	Singular	მე	გამოვალ	საავადმყოფოდან	ოპერაციის	შემდეგ.
	**		me	gamoval	saavadmqkopodan	operatsiis	shemdeg.
	***		I	will go out	of the hospital	after the operation.	
20	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ვერ	გამოვალთ	გაჭირვებიდან	მალე.
	**		chven	ver	gamovalth	gatchirvebidan	male.
	***		We	will not be able	to get out	of the trouble	soon.
	*	Singular	ალბათ	მე	გადავალ	ახალ	სამუშაოზე.

21	**		albath	me	gadaval	akhal	samushaoze.
	***		Perhaps	I	will move	to a new	office.
22	*	Plural	ახლა	ვერ	გადავალთ	საქმის	განხილვაზე.
	**		akhla	ver	gadavalth	saqmis	gankhilvaze.
	***		Now	we can not	move	on to the discussion of the case.	
23	*	Singular	მე გადმოვალ	თქვენს	სასტუმროში	შვიდ	საათზე.
	**		me gadmoval	thqvens	sastumroshi	shvid	saathze.
	***		I will come	at your	hotel	at seven	o'clock.
24	*	Plural	ჩვენ	გადმოვალთ	ქალაქის	მთავარ	ხიდზე.
	**		chven	gadmovalth	qalaqis	mtthavar	khidze.
	***		We	will come over	the city's	main	bridge.
25	*	Singular	მე	წავალ	საქართველოში	როგორც	ტურისტი.
	**		me	tzaval	saqarthveloshi	rogorts	turisti.
	***		I	will go	to Georgia	as	a tourist.
26	*	Plural	ჩვენ	წავალთ	თბილისის	უნივერსიტეტში	მეტროთი.
	**		chven	tzavalth	tbilisis	universitetshi	metrothi.
	***		We	will go	to the Tbilisi	University	by subway.
27	*	Singular	მე წამოვალ	ახალ	თეატრში	შენთან	ერთად.
	**		me tzamoval	akhal	theatrshi	shenthan	erthad.
	***		I will come	to the new	theater	together with you.	
28	*	Plural	ჩვენ	ყველა	წამოვალთ	ეკლესიაში	სალოცავად.
	**		chven	qkvela	tzamovalth	eklesiashi	salotsavad.
	***		We	all will	come	to church	to pray.
29	*	Singular	წლის	ბოლოს	მე	გავალ	პენსიაზე.
	**		tzlis	bolos	me	gaval	πensiaze.

	***		At the end of the year		I	will retire.	
30	*	Singular	დღეს	მე	ვერ	გამოვალ	რინგზე.
	**		dgres	me	ver	gamoval	ringze.
	***		Today,	I	will not be able	to go	to the ring.
31	*	Plural	მომავალ	თვეში	ჩვენ	გამოვალთ	ციხიდან.
	**		momaval	thveshi	chven	gamovalth	tsikhidan.
	***		Next	month,	we	will get out	of jail.
32	*	Singular	ორ	კვირაში	მე	წავალ	საზღვარგარეთ.
	**		or	kvirashi	me	tzaval	sazgrvargareth.
	***		In two	weeks	I	will go	abroad.
33	*	Singular	მე	გავალ	სამუშაოდ	ქართულ	ბანკში.
	**		me	gaval	samushaod	qarthul	bankshi.
	***		I	will go	to work	in the Georgian	bank.
34	*	Singular	ტურნირზე	მე	გავალ	პირველ	ადგილზე.
	**		turnirze	me	gaval	pirvel	adgilze.
	***		In tournament,	I	will take	the first	place.
35	*	Plural	ახლა	ჩვენ	გადავალთ	სურსათის	მაღაზიაში.
	**		akhla	chven	gadavalth	sursathis	magraziashi.
	***		Now	we	will go	to the grocery	store.
36	*	Singular	მალე	მე	გადმოვალ	თქვენს	ფაკულტეტზე.
	**		male	me	gadmoval	thqvens	pakultetze.
	***		Soon	I	will transfer	to your	faculty.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 287-292, "Supplement to Lesson No. 62" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

6) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. The group's listeners use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words."

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 62
1. მე მოვალ თქვენთან ერთ საათში.	
2. ჩვენ მოვალთ სახელმწიფო უნივერსიტეტიდან გვიან	
3. მე ახლავე მივალ შენს მასწავლებელთან.	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 62
4. ჩვენ მივალთ საზღვაო ნავსადგურში მანქანით.	
5. მე ვერ ავალ მთაზე სწრაფად.	
6. ჩვენ ავალთ მეათე სართულზე ლიფტით.	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-second lesson.

Lesson sixty three

The negative particles in Georgian sentences

Content of the sixty-third lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Today we must complete our acquaintance with the forms of the future tense of those verbal names of action that we became familiar with during the 53rd lesson. This time we will study these forms in relation to the second grammatical person.”

2. “For clarity, let’s take a verb that is already familiar to us - “მო-ვა-ლ” (“mo-va-l”), English synonyms of which are the words “I will come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “I will arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). In order to express a future action for the second person singular in Georgian, you need to do the following work: take the word “მო-ვა-ლ” (“mo-va-l”) and in this word, between the prefix “მო-“ (“mo-”) and the letter combination „-ვა-ლ“ (“-va-l”), add the letter „-ხ-“ (“-kh-”). Let's get the verb we need - „მო-ხ-ვა-ლ“ (“mo-kh-va-l”), English synonyms of which are the words “You will come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “You will arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian movement). We already know that in the second person singular, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “შენ” (“shen”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “You will come” or “You will arrive” sound the same - “შენ მო-ხ-ვა-ლ” (“shen mo-kh-va-l”).”

3. “In order to say in Georgian “You will come” (expresses pedestrian movement) and “You will arrive” (expresses non-pedestrian movement) for plural time, you need to do the simplest work: we take the already familiar Georgian verb - „მო-ხ-ვა-ლ“ (“mo-kh-va-l”) and to this word we add the ending “-თ” (“-th”). Let's get the Georgian verb we need in the second person plural - „მო-ხ-ვა-ლ-თ“ (“mo-kh-va-l-th”). We already know that in the second person plural, the Georgian noun in the nominative case is replaced by the personal pronoun “თქვენ” (“thqven”). Consequently, in Georgian the words “You will come” or “You will arrive” sound the same - “თქვენ მო-ხ-ვა-ლ-თ“ (“thqven mo-kh-va-l-th”).”

4. “In a similar way, using the example of the verbs “მო-ხ-ვა-ლ” (“mo-kh-va-l”) and “მო-ხ-ვა-ლ-თ” (“mo-kh-va-l-th”), we can form Georgian verbs for the second person of future tense based on those verbs that we met during the previous lesson”.

5. “Let's look at table No. 81, which shows all the verb forms for the second person of future tense based on the verbs that we met during the previous lesson. Verb forms for the second person are presented in both singular and plural.”

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 81 on a large screen. The presenters alternately voice both Georgian verbs for the first person singular (column 3) and the corresponding Georgian verbs for the second person singular and plural (columns 4 and 5).

Table №81

Forms of verbal nouns of action for the second person of future tense

Sequence number		Verb forms for the first person of future tense	13 forms of the future tense for the second person	
			Singular number	Plural number
1	2	3	4	5
1	*	მო-ვა-ლ	მო-ხ-ვალ	მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	mo-va-l	mo-kh-va-l	mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come here	You will come here	You will come here
2	*	მი-ვა-ლ	მი-ხ-ვალ	მი-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	mi-va-l	mi-kh-va-l	mi-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will go there	You will go there	You will go there
3	*	ჩა-ვა-ლ	ჩა-ხ-ვალ	ჩა-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	cha-va-l	cha-kh-va-l	cha-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will go down	You will go down	You will go down
4	*	ჩა-მო-ვა-ლ	ჩა-მო-ხ-ვალ	ჩა-მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	cha-mo-va-l	cha-mo-kh-va-l	cha-mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come down	You will come down	You will come down
5	*	ა-ვა-ლ	ა-ხ-ვალ	ა-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	a-va-l	a-kh-va-l	a-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will go up	You will go up	You will go up
6	*	ა-მო-ვა-ლ	ა-მო-ხ-ვალ	ა-მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	a-mo-va-l	a-mo-kh-va-l	a-mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come up	You will come up	You will come up
7	*	შე-ვა-ლ	შე-ხ-ვალ	შე-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	she-va-l	she-kh-va-l	she-kh-va-l-th

	***	I will go into	You will go into	You will go into
8	*	შე-მო-ვა-ლ	შე-მო-ხ-ვალ	შე-მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	she-mo-va-l	she-mo-kh-va-l	she-mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come into	You will come into	You will come into
9	*	გა-ვა-ლ	გა-ხ-ვალ	გა-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	ga-va-l	ga-kh-va-l	ga-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will go out	You will go out	You will go out
10	*	გა-მო-ვალ	გა-მო-ხ-ვალ	გა-მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	ga-mo-va-l	ga-mo-kh-va-l	ga-mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come out	You will come out	You will come out
11	*	გადა-ვა-ლ	გადა-ხ-ვალ	გადა-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	gada-va-l	gada-kh-va-l	gada-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will go over	You will go over	You will go over
12	*	გად-მო-ვა-ლ	გად-მო-ხ-ვალ	გად-მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	gad-mo-va-l	gad-mo-kh-va-l	gad-mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come over	You will come over	You will come over
13	*	წა-ვა-ლ	წა-ხ-ვალ	წა-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	tza-va-l	tza-kh-va-l	tza-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will go to	You will go to	You will go to
14	*	წა-მო-ვა-ლ	წა-მო-ხ-ვალ	წა-მო-ხ-ვალ-თ
	**	tza-mo-va-l	tza-mo-kh-va-l	tza-mo-kh-va-l-th
	***	I will come to	You will come to	You will come to
	* Words in Georgian language			
	** English transliteration of the Georgian words			
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words			

6. “If in the above affirmative phrases the personal pronoun and the verb are swapped, then we get an interrogative phrase. For example, “შენ მო-ხ-ვა-ლ” (“shen mo-kh-va-l”) → “მო-ხ-ვალ შენ?” (“mo-kh-va-l shen?”) and so on.”

7. “If in the above affirmative phrases between the personal pronoun and the verb we insert the word “არ” (in English - “not”), we get a negative phrase. For example, “შენ მო-ხ-ვა-ლ” (“shen mo-kh-va-l”) → “შენ არ მო-ხ-ვა-ლ” (“shen ar mo-kh-va-l”) and so on.”

2) Next, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Acquaintance with Georgian verbs for the second person of future tense (in table No. 81) provides a reason to once again pay attention to Georgian negative particles. During the 58th lesson, we already mentioned the particle “ნუ” (“nu”), which is translated into English by the particle “Do not”. This Georgian particle has a different meaning than the other two Georgian negative particles - “არ” (“ar”) and “ვერ” (“ver”). This feature is as follows: the particle “ნუ” (“nu”) has the meaning of prohibiting action, but there is no categorical tone. This tone is soft and pleading. It implies such subtext in relation to the second or third person as: “Please don’t go there” or “Don’t let him go there.”

2. “Let’s look at table No. 82 in order to find out how you can use the verbs “მო-ხ-ვა-ლ” (“mo-kh-va-l”) and others in negative sentences together with the above-mentioned particle “ნუ” (“nu”) in singular as well as in plural. These negative sentences use both familiar and new Georgian words. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous one.”

Then, using a projector, listeners watch table No. 82 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce the Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №82

Sequence number		Verb grammatical number	Georgian sentences using action verb forms for the second grammatical person				
			4	5	6	7	8
1	2	3					
1	*	Singular	ნუ	მოხვალ	სახლში	ძალიან	გვიან.
	**		nu	mokhval	sakhlshi	dzalian	gvian.
	***		Do not	come	home	very	late.
2	*	Plural	ახლა	ნუ	მოხვალთ	მოსალაპარაკებლად	ჩვენთან.
	**		akhla	nu	mokhvalth	mosalaparakeblad	chventhan.
	***		Now	do not	come	for talking	to us.

3	*	Singular	ნუ	მიხვალ	ახლოს	მდინარესთან	ასეთ ამინდში.
	**		nu	mikhval	akhlos	mdinarestan	aseth amindshi.
	***		Do not	go	near	to the river	in such weather.
4	*	Plural	ნუ	მიხვალთ	ავადმყოფთან	წამლების	გარეშე.
	**		nu	mikhvalth	avadmqopthan	tzamlebis	gareshe.
	***		Do not	go	to the patient	without medication.	
5	*	Singular	ნუ	ახვალ	ამ	გრძელ	კიბეზე.
	**		nu	akhval	am	grdzel	kibeze.
	***		Do not	climb	that	long	ladder.
6	*	Plural	ნუ	ახვალთ	მთაზე	ღამის	საათებში.
	**		nu	akhvalth	mt haze	gramis	saathebshi.
	***		Do not	climb	the mountain	during the night hours.	
7	*	Singular	ნუ	ამოხვალ	ავარიული	სახლის	სახურავზე.
	**		nu	amokhval	avariuli	sakhlis	sakhuravze.
	***		Do not	climb	onto the roof of the damaged house.		
8	*	Plural	ნუ	ამოხვალთ	წყაროზე	დოქების	გარეშე.
	**		nu	amokhvalth	tzqkaroze	doqebis	gareshe.
	***		Do not	come up	to the spring	without jugs.	
9	*	Singular	ახლა	ნუ	ჩახვალ	ღვინის	მარანში.
	**		akhla	nu	chakhval	grvinis	maranshi.
	***		Now	do not	go down	to the wine	cellar.
10	*	Plural	ნუ ჩახვალთ	საცურაო	აუზში.	იქ არის ცივი	წყალი.
	**		nu chakhvalth	satsurao	auzshi.	iq aris tsivi	tzqkali.
	***		Do not go down	to the swimming	pool.	There is cold	water.
	*	Singular	ნუ	ჩამოხვალ	მანქანით.	ჩამოდი	მატარებლით!

11	**		nu	chamokhval	manqanith.	chamodi	matareblith!
	***		Do not	come	by car.	Come	by train!
12	*	Plural	ნუ	ჩამოხვალთ	კიბეზე	მძიმე	ტვირთით.
	**		nu	chamokhvalth	kibeze	mdzime	tvirthith.
	***		Do not	come down	the ladder	with a heavy	load.
13	*	Singular	ნუ	შეხვალ	ამ	პოლიტიკურ	პარტიაში.
	**		nu	shekhval	am	politikur	partiashi.
	***		Do not	join	that	political	party.
14	*	Plural	ნუ	შეხვალთ	მის	სადინებელ	ოთახში.
	**		nu	shekhvalth	mis	sadzinebel	othakhshi.
	***		Do not	go into	her	bedroom.	
15	*	Singular	ნუ	შემოხვალ	ეზოში	დიდი	მანქანით.
	**		nu	shemokhval	ezoshi	didi	manqanith.
	***		Do not	come	into the yard	with a big	car.
16	*	Plural	ჯერჯერობით	ნუ	შემოხვალთ	ჩვენ	რაზმში.
	**		jerjerobith	nu	shemokhvalth	chven	razmshi.
	***		So far	do not	join	our	squad.
17	*	Singular	ნუ	გახვალ	სახლიდან	მსუბუქი	ტანსაცმლით.
	**		nu	gakhval	saxhlidan	msubuqi	tansatsmlith.
	***		Do not	go out	of the house	in light	clothes.
18	*	Plural	ნუ	გახვალთ	ქვეყნიდან	დოკუმენტების	გარეშე.
	**		nu	gakhvalth	qveqknidan	dokumentebis	gareshe.
	***		Do not	go out	of the country	without documents.	
19	*	Singular	დღეს	ნუ	გამოხვალ	თეატრის	სცენაზე.
	**		dgres	nu	gamokhval	theatris	stsenaze.

	***		Today,	do not	come out	on the stage of the theater.	
20	*	Plural	ახლა	ნუ	გამოხვალთ	მოხსენებებით	კრებაზე.
	**		akhla	nu	gamokhvalth	mokhsenebebith	krebaze.
	***		Now	do not	come out	with reports	at the meeting.
21	*	Singular	ნუ	გადახვალ	ინსტიტუტის	სხვა	ფაკულტეტზე.
	**		nu	gadakhval	institutis	sxva	pakultetze.
	***		Do not	switch	to another faculty of the institute.		
22	*	Plural	ნუ	გადახვალთ	გზის	მეორე	მხარეზე.
	**		nu	gadakhvalth	gzis	meore	mkhareze.
	***		Do not	cross over	to the other side of the road.		
23	*	Singular	ნუ	გადმოხვალ	ჩვენს	განყოფილებაში	სამუშაოდ.
	**		nu	gadmokhval	chvens	ganqkopilebashi	samushaod.
	***		Do not	come	to our	department	to work.
24	*	Plural	ნუ	გადმოხვალთ	ჩვენს	სოფელში	საცხოვრებლად.
	**		nu	gadmokhvalth	chvens	sopelshi	satskhovreblad.
	***		Do not	move	to our	village	to live.
25	*	Singular	ნუ	წახვალ	მოსკოვში	ასეთ	ზამთარში.
	**		nu	tzakhval	moskovshi	aseth	zamtharshi.
	***		Do not	go	to Moscow	in a such	winter.
26	*	Plural	ნუ	წახვალთ	ტყეში	იარაღის	გარეშე.
	**		nu	tzakhvalth	tqkeshi	iaragris	gareshe.
	***		Do not	go	into the woods	without a weapon (gun).	
27	*	Singular	ნუ	წამოხვალ	ღამის	ჩქარი	მატარებლით.
	**		nu	tzamokhval	gramis	chqari	matareblith.
	***		Do not	come	by night	high-speed	train.

28	*	Plural	ნუ	წამოხვალთ	ხვალ.	წამოდიოთ	ზეგ.
	**		nu	tzamokhvalth	khval.	tzamodith	zeg.
	***		Do not	come	tomorrow.	Come	day after tomorrow!
29	*	Singular	ახლა	ნუ	გადახვალ	ტროტუარიდან	ფენილზე.
	**		akhla	nu	gadakhval	trotuaridan	penilze.
	***		Now	do not	go	off the sidewalk	onto the street.
30	*	Plural	ნუ	წახვალთ	ასე	შორს.	
	**		nu	tzakhvalth	ase	shors.	
	***		Do not	go	that	far.	
31	*	Plural	ნუ	შეხვალთ	ტბაში	პატარა	ნავით.
	**		nu	shekhvalth	tbashi	patara	navith.
	***		Do not	go	into the lake	in a small	boat.
32	*	Singular	ნუ	გამოხვალ	აბაზანიდან	ძალიან	მალე.
	**		nu	gamokhval	abazanidan	dzalian	male.
	***		Do not	get out of	the bathroom	too	soon.
33	*	Singular	ნუ	წახვალ	ხეობაში	ცხენის	გარეშე.
	**		nu	tzakhval	kheobashi	tskhenis	gareshe.
	***		Do not	go	to the valley	without a horse.	
34	*	Plural	ახლა	ნუ	გახვალთ	ოთახიდან	ეზოში.
	**		akhla	nu	gakhvalth	othakhidan	ezoshi.
	***		Now	do not	go out	of the room	into the yard.
35	*	Singular	ნუ	მიხვალ	ჩვენი	სახლის	ჭიშკართან.
	**		nu	mikhval	chveni	sakhlis	tchishkarthan.
	***		Do not	come	to the gate of our house.		
	*	Plura 1	ნუ	გადახვალთ	ამ	ავარიულ	ხიდზე.

36	**		nu	gadakhvalth	am	avariul	khidze.
	***		Do not	go over	this	damaged	bridge.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

4) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

5) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian simple sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 293-298, "Supplement to Lesson No. 63" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

6) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. Students of the group use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words."

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 63
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. ნუ მოხვალ სახლში ძალიან გვიან. 2. ახლა ნუ მოხვალთ მოსალაპარაკებლად ჩვენთან. 3. ნუ მიხვალ ახლოს მდინარესთან ასეთ ამინდში. 	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 63
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. ნუ მიხვალთ ავადმყოფთან წამლების გარეშე. 5. ნუ ახვალ ამ გრძელ კიბეზე. 6. ნუ ახვალთ მთაზე ღამის საათებში. 	

7) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-third lesson.

Lesson sixty-four

The Georgian compound sentences

Content of the sixty-fourth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. "Every business and every work has its own beginning and its end. Our work together must also be completed. We met and studied many affirmative, interrogative and negative Georgian sentences. However, all the previously discussed proposals are among simple proposals."

2. "Let us remember that a Georgian sentence, like a English one, can be simple or complex. A complex sentence consists of two or more simple sentences that are connected by either a conjunction or intonation. As part of our educational process, today we will devote one lesson to Georgian complex sentences."

3. "Compound sentences are those ones that consist of relatively independent sentences in meaning (for example, "The wind blows and the tree sways")."

4. "Complex sentences are those ones where the subordinate clause depends on the main clause (for example, "The tree swings because the wind blows")."

5. "For the formation of Georgian complex sentences, 16 Georgian conjunctions and allied words are most often used. Let's look at table No. 83, which shows these words."

With the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 83 on a large screen. The presenters alternately voice Georgian conjunctions and allied words in columns 2, 3 and 4.

Table №83

Georgian conjunctions and allied words			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	2	3	4
1	და	da	And
2	მაგრამ	magram	But
3	რაც	rats	Since
4	რომ	rom	So that, What, When
5	როცა	rotsa	When

6	როდესაც	rodesats	When
7	საიდანაც	saidanats	Where from
8	სადაც	sadats	Where
9	ვინც	vints	Who
10	იმიტომ, რომ	imitom, rom	Because
11	თუ	thu	If
12	თუმცა	thumtsa	Although, However
13	ან	an	Either, Or
14	თორემ	thorem	Otherwise
15	როგორც კი	rogorts ki	As soon as
16	რომელიც	romelits	Which

2) Next, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “Familiarization with Georgian conjunctions and union words does not in itself give an idea of the semantic meanings of certain words in certain situations. Therefore, we should devote at least one lesson to Georgian compound sentences.”

2. “Let's look at table No. 84 in order to understand the semantic meanings of certain Georgian conjunctions and allied words in complex sentences. These sentences use those several daily used verbs that we have already become familiar with in previous lessons. We also use those words and phrases that we studied during previous lessons. Sometimes new Georgian words will be used. It should also be taken into account that each subsequent complex sentence is not necessarily a logical continuation of the previous ones.”

Then, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 84 on a large screen. The presenters alternately pronounce Georgian words in the sentences shown in columns 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №84

Sequence number	Georgian complex sentences using Georgian conjunctions and allied words
-----------------	---

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	კვირა	დღე	იყო და	ყველა	ვიყავით	ქალაქის გარეთ.
	**	kvira	dgre	iqko da	qkvela	viqkavith	qalaqis gareth.
	***	It was a Sunday, and			we all were		outside the city.
2	*	საიდანაც	ჩამოვიდა	ჩემი მეგობარი,	ისევ იქ	წავიდა	მალე.
	**	saidanats	chamovida	chemi megobari,	isev iq	tzavida	male.
	***	Where my friend came from,			he went there again		soon.
3	*	მე ვერ	მოვედი	იმიტომ,	რომ	მე არ მქონდა	დრო.
	**	me ver	movedi	imitom,	rom	me ar mqonda	dro.
	***	I could not	come	because		I did not have	time.
4	*	ერთი	კვირა	არის,	რაც	მე	ჩამოვედი.
	**	erthi	kvira	aris,	rats	me	chamovedi.
	***	It is a week			since	I	arrived.
5	*	ის	მოვა	შენთან,	თუ	მას ექნება	დრო.
	**	is	mova	shenthan,	thu	mas eqneba	dro.
	***	He	will come	to you,	if	he has time.	
6	*	როცა	მე ჩავალ	ამერიკაში,	მაშინ	მექნება	ფული.
	**	rotsa	me chaval	amerikashi,	mashin	meqneba	puli.
	***	When	I arrive	in America,	then	I will have	money.
7	*	თუმცა	პაპა	ხნერი არის,	ის	მაინც	მხნედ არის.
	**	thumtsa	παπα	aris khnieri,	is	maints	mkhned aris.
	***	Though	grandfather	is old,	he	is still vigorous.	
8	*	ჩემი	მეგობარი	წავიდა იქ,	სადაც	მისი მშობლები	არიან ახლა.
	**	chemi	megobari	tzavida iq,	sadats	misi mshoblebi	arian akhla.
	***	My	friend	went to	where	his parents	are now.

9	*	რომ	მოვიდა	მისი ჯერი,	ის	უკვე მზად	იყო.
	**	rom	movida	misi jeri,	is	ukve mzad	iqko.
	***	When	it was his turn,		he	was already ready.	
10	*	როდესაც	გექნება	დრო,	მაშინ	მოვალ	შენთან.
	**	rodesats	geqneba	dro,	mashin	moval	shenthan.
	***	When	you have	time,	then	I will come	to you.
11	*	ან	მე მოვალ	შენთან,	ან	შენ მოხვალ	ჩემთან.
	**	an	me moval	shenthan,	an	shen mokhval	chemthan.
	***	Either	I will come	to you,	or	you will come	to me.
12	*	წადი	შენ	ახლა,	თორემ	მერე გვიანი	იქნება.
	**	tzadi	shen	akhla,	thorem	mere gviani	iqneba.
	***	Go		now,	otherwise	it will be too late then.	
13	*	როგორც კი	საქონელი	ჩამოვა,	ჩვენ	გვექნება	ფული.
	**	rogorts ki	saqoneli	chamova,	chven	gveqneba	puli.
	***	As soon as	the goods	arrive,	we	will have	the money.
14	*	შენ	გამოხვედი	სიტყვით,	მაგრამ	ხალხი	არ იყო კმაყოფილი.
	**	shen	gamokhvedi	sitqkvith,	magram	khalkhi	ar iqko kmaqkopili.
	***	You	came out	with the word,	but	the people	were not satisfied.
15	*	ვინც	იყო	ჩემთან,	წავიდა	ერთი საათის	წინ.
	**	vints	iqko	chemthan,	tzavida	erthi saathis	tzin.
	***	Who	was	with me,	left	an hour	ago.
16	*	შენ	იყავი	სახლში,	რომელიც	მე მაქვს	საკუთრებაში.
	**	shen	iqkavi	sakhlshi,	romelits	me maqvs	sakuthrebashi.
	***	You	were	in the house	that	I have	in my possession.
	*	ამერიკელი	ჯარისკაცი	არის	მამაცი,	და ის ასევე	არის ამტანი.

17	**	amerikeli	jariskatsi	aris	mamatsi,	da is aseve	aris amtani.
	***	The American	soldier	is	brave,	and he is also	enduring.
18	*	დილა	იყო	მზიანი,	მაგრამ	ჰაერი იყო	ცივი.
	**	dila	iqko	mziani,	magram	haeri iqko	tsivi.
	***	The morning	was	sunny,	but	the air was	cold.
19	*	ჩემი	ბავშვი	არის	ჯანმრთელი,	თუმცა ის არის	გამხდარი.
	**	chemi	bavshvi	aris	janmrtheli,	thumtsa is aris	gamkhdari.
	***	My	child	is	healthy,	however he is	thin.
20	*	თვითმფრინავი	ვერ	გავიდა რეისში	იმიტომ, რომ	ამინდი იყო	ცუდი.
	**	thvithmprinavi	ver	gavida reishhi	imitom, rom	amindi iqko	tsudi.
	***	The plane	could not	take off in flight	because	the weather was	bad.
21	*	ჩვენ წავედით	კინოთეატრში,	როდესაც	ახალი ფილმი	გამოვიდა	ეკრანებზე.
	**	chven tzavedith	kinotheatrshi,	rodesats	akhali pilmi	gamovida	ekranze.
	***	We went	to the cinema	when	a new movie	came	on the screens.
22	*	ხვალ	მე	მოვალ შენთან,	თუ	მე ვიქნები	კარგად.
	**	khval	me	moval shenthan,	thu	me vignebi	kargad.
	***	Tomorrow	I	will come to you	if	I will be	fine.
23	*	ის არის	ჩემი	მეგობარი,	რომელიც	არის ცუდად	ახლა.
	**	is aris	chemi	megobari,	romelits	aris tsudad	akhla.
	***	He is	my	friend	who	is unwell	now.
24	*	მე	ვარ	ბედნიერი,	რომ	შენ ხარ	ჩემთან ერთად.
	**	me	var	bednieri,	rom	shen khar	chemthan erthad.
	***	I	am	happy	that	you are	with me.
25	*	მოდი	სკოლაში	მალე,	თორემ	გექნება	პრობლემა.
	**	modi	skolashi	male,	thorem	geqneba	problema.

	***	Come	to school	soon,	or	you will have	a problem.
26	*	ჩვენი	ბავშვები	წავიდნენ იქ,	სადაც	დიდი პარკი	არის.
	**	chveni	bavshvebi	tzavidnen iq,	sadats	didi parki	aris.
	***	Our	children	went to	where	the big park	is.
27	*	მას ჰყონდა	კარგი	სამუშაო,	როცა	ის იყო	სამინისტროში.
	**	mas hqonda	kargi	samushao,	rotsa	is iqko	saministroshi.
	***	He had	a good	job	when	he was	in the ministry.
28	*	ერთი წელი	გავიდა,	რაც	მამა	აღარ არის	ცოცხალი.
	**	erthi tzeli	gavida,	rats	mama	agrar aris	tsotskhali.
	***	One year	has passed	since	father	is no longer	alive.
29	*	ეს ის	კაცია,	ვინც	იყო	შენთან	სტუმრად.
	**	es is	katsia,	vints	iqko	shenthan	stumrad.
	***	This is	the man	who	was	your	guest.
30	*	მე	წავალ	ამერიკაში,	როგორც კი	მექნება	ფული.
	**	me	tzaval	amerikashi,	rogorts ki	meqneba	puli.
	***	I will	go	to America	as soon as	I have	money.
31	*	თბილისი	არის	ქალაქი,	სადაც	ის	გადადის.
	**	tbilisi	aris	qalaqi,	sadats	is	gadadis.
	***	Tbilisi	is	a city	where	he	moves.
32	*	ახლა	არის	ზამთარი,	მაგრამ	ამინდი	არის თბილი.
	**	akhla	aris	zamthari,	magram	amindi	aris thbili.
	***	Now	it is	winter	but	the weather	is warm.
33	*	მათ	ეყოლებათ	დელეგატი,	რომელიც	გამოვა	სიტყვით.
	**	math	eqkolebath	delegathi,	romelits	gamova	sitqkvith.
	***	They	will have	a delegate	who	will give	a speech.

34	*	დრო	გადის,	მაგრამ	არავინ	არ	მოდის.
	**	dro	gadis,	magram	aravin	ar	modis.
	***	Time	passes,	but	no one		comes.
35	*	თუ	იქნება	შენი	ნება,	მე წავალ	სამუშაოდ.
	**	thu	iqneba	sheni	neba,	me tzaval	samushaod.
	***	If	there is	your	will,	I will go	to work.
36	*	იქ	არის	კარგი,	სადაც	ჩვენ	არა ვართ.
	**	iq	aris	kargi,	sadats	chven	ara varth.
	***	There	it is good		where	we	are not.
* Words in Georgian language							
** English transliteration of the Georgian words							
*** English synonyms of Georgian words							

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The presenters invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive two flip-sheets (on the basis that one sheet will be enough to write three sentences) and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian complex sentences are written, as well as the pronunciation of these Georgian sentences using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian sentences. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 299-304, "Supplement to Lesson No. 64" on six pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 1 table on one page. It is necessary to make copies of these six pages and prepare separate text tables for each group.

5) The presenters explain to all groups the essence of the task: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian sentences. Students of the group use a marker to write only sentences in Georgian on a flip sheet. Each of the 3 group members must write two pairs of sentences in Georgian in the same way as during lesson No. 39. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian sentences are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words."

An example of group No. 1 compiling flip sheets under No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 64
1. კვირა დღე იყო და ყველა ვიყავით ქალაქის გარეთ.	

2. საიდანაც ჩამოვიდა ჩემი მეგობარი, ისევ იქ წავიდა მალე.
3. მე ვერ მოვედი იმიტომ, რომ მე არ მქონდა დრო.

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 64
<ol style="list-style-type: none">4. ერთი კვირა არის, რაც მე ჩამოვედი.5. ის მოვა შენთან, თუ დრო ექნება.6. როცა მე ჩავალ ამერიკაში, მაშინ მექნება ფული.	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation (presentation) of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly the same as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-fourth lesson.

Lesson sixty-five

The Georgian words from the vocabulary of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze

Content of the sixty-fifth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following:

1. “All the main lessons of our educational process are already behind us. However, it would be strange to complete the course of studying the Georgian language entitled “The Language of Poetic Dignity” [„პოეტური ღირსების ენა“ (“poeturi grirsebis ena”)] without familiarizing yourself with at least one work of Georgian poetry. We can use the book which is a bilingual volume of 25 poems by Galaktion Tabidze (1892-1959), one of the greatest poets of Georgia. This is the first and last name that we learned during the 16th lesson”.¹

2. “The English translations are by Innes Merabishvili, Professor of English and Linguistics of Translation at the State University of Tbilisi and well-known Byron scholar. She has rendered many of Byron’s poems into Georgian and published works on the English poet. She has captured the tone and rhythms of Galaktion’s poems. Making one of the Galaktion’s poems available to English-speaking students, in my view, justifies completed educational course. A poem by Galaktion Tabidze, which was composed in 1947, was selected from the book by Innes Merabishvili. This poem is called in Georgian "ქებათა ქება ნიკორწმინდას" (English transliteration: “qebatha qeba Nikortzmindas”). In English this name sounds like this: “In praise of Nikortsmina”.¹

¹ Source of information: “Galaktion Tabidze (poems)”. Translated by Inness Merabishvili. Tbilisi State University Press. The Byron Society of Georgia. Tbilisi. Year of publication - 2005.

3. “Before you get acquainted with the poem of Galaktion Tabidze, you should separately learn the words that make up the poem itself. So, we will have to devote this and subsequent lessons to individual study of the words that were used by the Georgian poet. We have already become familiar with some of these words, but most are new words that will add to our vocabulary. Please note the following: the vast majority of words are nouns, which are given in the nominative singular case. In addition, several English synonyms of one or another Georgian word are often given.”

2) Next, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 85 on a large screen. The presenter says: “We proceed to the first part of introducing the words and phrases of the Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze. This part covers 36 words and phrases.” The presenters take turns pronouncing the words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №85

Words and phrases from the Georgian poem "ქებათა ქება ნიკორწმინდას" ("In praise of Nikortsmina") by poet Galaktion Tabidze ¹			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	2	3	4

1	მაქვს	maqvs	I have
2	მკერდი	mkerdi	Breast; Chest
3	მიდებული	midebuli	Touched
4	ქნარი	qnari	Lyre
5	მინდა	minda	I wish
6	დიდებული	didebuli	Majestic; Grand; Sublime; Splended; magnificent; Excellent; Fine.
7	სხივი	skhivi	Ray; Beam; Flash.
8	გაბრწყინება	gabrtzqkineba	Light up; Illuminate; Illumine.
9	მკვიდრად	mkvidrad	Solidly; Firmly.
10	აშენება	asheneba	Build; Construct.
11	ცა	tsa	Sky; Heaven.
12	დამშვენება	damshveneba	Adorning (Adorn); Decoration (Decorate); Ornamentation (Ornament).
13	დიდი	didi	Big
14	გზნება	gzneba	Inflaming; Exciting; Passion; Excitement; Enthusiasm.
15	დამკარგავი	damkargavi	loser
16	გრძნეული	grdzneuli	Magician; Sorcerer; Wizard.
17	ჩუქურთმა	chuqurthma	Carving; Fretwork; Ornament.
18	ქარგი	qargi	Embroidery frame
19	დამქარგავი	damqargavi	Embroider
20	ნაზი	nazi	Tender; Delicate.
21	ნეტა	neta	I wonder
22	აზიდვა	azidva	Raising; Lifting; Picking up.
23	ხელი	kheli	Hand; Arm; Handle.

24	მაღლა	magrla	Up; Upward.
25	განძი	gandzi	Treasure
26	მხნე	mkhne	Cheerful
27	მდიდარი	mdidari	Rich; Wealthy.
28	ჟღერა	zhgrera	Sounding; Phonation.
29	ქვა	qva	Stone; Rock.
30	ჰარმონია	harmonia	Harmony
31	დარი	dari	Good weather
32	დარობს	darobs	There is a spell of good weather
33	კარგად	kargad	Well
34	გამოკვეთა	gamokvetha	Hewing/Cutting out; Sculpting/Carving; Taking shape.
35	სიბრძნე	sibrdze	Wisdom
36	მძლავრი	mdzlavri	Strong; Powerful.

¹ When drawing up column 4, author of that textbook used “Georgian-English dictionary” compiled by Tamar and Isidore Gvarjaladze.

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 305-307, “Supplement to Lesson No. 65” on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. You need to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate table texts for each group.

5) The facilitators explain the essence of the task to all groups: “Each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. Listeners of the group use a marker to write only words in Georgian on a flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of compiling flip sheet No. 1 by group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 65
-------------	---------------

1. მაქვს

2. მკერდი

3. მიღებული

4. ქნარი

5. მინდა

6. დიდებული

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-fifth lesson.

Lesson sixty six

The Georgian words from the vocabulary of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze

Content of the sixty-sixth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following: "This lesson is a continuation of the previous lesson, when we became acquainted with a group of words and phrases used in a Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze. Today we need to get acquainted with the second group of words and phrases."

2) Next, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 86 on a large screen. The presenter says: "Let's start getting acquainted with the second group of words and phrases used in the Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze." The presenters take turns pronouncing the Georgian words shown in column 2 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №86

Words and phrases from a Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze ¹			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	თაღი	thagri	Arch
2	სვეტი	sveti	Post; Pillar; Column.
3	შეკონვა	shekonva	Bind
4	ნაგები	nagebi	Built
5	სიზმარი	sizmari	Dream
6	ვით	vith	As; Like.
7	აგება	ageba	Build; Construct; Erect
8	ნიჭი	nitchi	Talent; Gift.
9	მადლი	madli	Mercy; Charity; Clemency.
10	გრძნობა	grdznoba	Sense; Feeling.
11	დიადი	diadi	Great
12	სარკმელი	sarkmeli	Window
13	ხაზი	khazi	Line

14	ანთება	antheba	Light
15	ცეცხლი	tsetskhli	Fire
16	ჟღერს	zhgrers	Sound; Ring.
17	წლები	tzlebi	Years
18	შიგ	shig	Inside
19	ნათლად	nathlad	Clear; Clearly.
20	ხვეული	khveuli	Twisted
21	დიადემა	diadema	Diadem
22	ვხედავ	vkhedav	I (can) see
23	უხვი	ukhvi	Abundant; Plentiful.
24	დრო	dro	Time
25	კრძალვა	krdzalva	Reverence; Veneration.
26	შეხვევა	shekhveva	Wrap up
27	მოქარგვა	moqargva	Embroiding
28	მკვეთრი	mkvethri	Sharp
29	მოქნილი	moqnili	Flexible; Pliable.
30	დასრულება	dasruleba	Finish; End.
31	ისე	ise	Thus
32	ნატვრა	natvra	Wish; Desire.
33	ასრულება	asruleba	Carry out; Fulfill; Execute; Accomplish.
34	სიმკეთრე	simkethre	Sharpness; Keeness; Clarity; Acuity.
35	სიმდიდრე	simdidre	Riches; Wealth.
36	ძეგლი	dzegli	Monument; Memorial; Statue.

¹ When drawing up column 4, author of that textbook used “Georgian-English dictionary” compiled by Thamar and Isidore Gvarjaladze.

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 308-310, “Supplement to Lesson No. 66” on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. You need to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate table texts for each group.

5) The facilitators explain the essence of the task to all groups: “Each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. Listeners of the group use a marker to write only words in Georgian on a flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of compiling flip sheet No. 1 by group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 66
	1. თალი
	2. სვეტი
	3. შეკონვა
	4. ნაგები
	5. სიზმარი
	6. ვით

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-sixth lesson.

Lesson sixty seven

The Georgian words from the vocabulary of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze

Content of the sixty-seventh lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following: "This lesson is a continuation of the previous lesson, when we became acquainted with a group of words and phrases used in a Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze. Today we need to get acquainted with the third and final group of words and phrases."

2) Next, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 87 on a large screen. The presenter says: "Let's start getting acquainted with the second group of words and phrases used in the Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze." The presenters take turns pronouncing the words shown in columns 2, 3 and 4 of this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №87

Words and phrases from a Georgian poem by poet Galaktion Tabidze ¹			
№	Words in Georgian language	English transliteration of Georgian words	English synonyms of Georgian words
1	სულმნათი	sulmnathi	Blessed; Rest their soul.
2	ასვლა	asvla	Rise up
3	ეროვანი	erovani	Good-looking
4	ყელი	qkeli	Neck
5	გუმბათი	gumbathi	Cupola; Dome.
6	ღეროვანი	grerovani	Stem-like
7	აღერილი	agrerili	Brandished
8	ნება	neba	Will
9	სათნო	sathno	Virtuous
10	შვენება	shveneba	Beauty; Charms.
11	მზერა	mzera	Look; Gaze.
12	ქართული	qarthuli	Georgian
13	სივრცე	sivrtse	Space

14	დაუნჯება	daunjeba	Hoarding; Heaping treasure.
15	თვალი	thvali	Eye
16	გართული	garthuli	Diverted
17	ფრთიანი	prthiani	Winged
18	ფასკუნჯი	paskunji	Fire-bird
19	გინდა	ginda	You want
20	კიდევ	kidev	Else; Again
21	გვინდა	gvinda	We want
22	დაუფლება	daupleba	Master; Mastering.
23	მოდულუნე	mogrugrune	Cooing
24	ჟამი	zhami	Time; Times.
25	სიმაღლე	simagrle	Height
26	საუკუნე	saukune	Century; Age.
27	გიცავს	gitsavs	It protects you
28	უახლესი	uakhlesi	The newest
29	ხელოვნება	khelovneba	Art
30	ხალხი	khalkhi	People; Nation.
31	საქართველო	saqarthvelo	Georgia
32	ქება	qeba	Praising; Laudation: Eulogy.
33	თორმეტი	thormeti	Twelve
34	ცამდის	tsamdis	To the skies
35	გართობა	garthoba	Entertainment; Amusement; Relaxation; Diversion.
36	ბრწყინვა	brtzcqinva	Lustre; Brilliancy; Magnificence; Shine; Glitter; Sparkle.

¹ When drawing up column 4, author of that textbook used “Georgian-English dictionary” compiled by Tamar and Isidore Gvarjaladze.

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 311-313, "Supplement to Lesson No. 67" on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. You need to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate table texts for each group.

5) The facilitators explain the essence of the task to all groups: "Each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. Listeners of the group use a marker to write only words in Georgian on a flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words."

An example of compiling flip sheet No. 1 by group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 67
1. სულმნათი	
2. ასვლა	
3. ეროვანი	
4. ყელი	
5. გუმბათი	
6. ღეროვანი	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson.

This concludes the sixty-seventh lesson.

Lesson sixty eight

The Georgian poem by Galaktion Tabidze

Content of the sixty-eighth lesson:

1) At the beginning, the presenter explains to the listeners the following: “Today is our last lesson. Let's take a look at the almost complete text of the poem by Galaktion Tabidze in Georgian and Inness Merabishvili’s translation of this text into English (The full scanned text of the poem from the book by Ines Merabishvili is placed in the section of this textbook called “literature used”). Georgian name of poem is “ქებათა ქება ნიკორწმინდას“ (“qebatha qeba nikortzmindas”), which is translated into English as “In Praise of Nikortsminda”. Nikortsminda (“tsminda” means “saint”) is the name of a monument of Georgian architecture, a domed cathedral, erected between 1010 and 1014, which is dedicated to St. Nicholas. It is clear that the translation of the poem is characterized by a peculiarity. In particular, the sequence of Georgian words in a line does not always coincide with the sequence of English words in that same line.”

2) Next, with the help of a projector, listeners watch table No. 88 on a large screen. The presenters take turns pronouncing the Georgian words shown in this table so that listeners can hear the sounds clearly.

Table №88

Sequence number	Lines from the text of the poem “ქებათა ქება ნიკორწმინდას“ (“In Praise of Nikortsminda”) by Georgian poet Galaktion Tabidze ¹						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	*	მაქვს	მკერდს	მიდებული	ქნარი,	როგორც	მინდა.
	**	maqvs	mkerds	midebuli	qnari,	rogorts	minda.
	***	I am holding my			lyre	As close as I wish,	
2	*	ჩემთვის	დიდებული	სხივი	გამობრწყინდა.		
	**	chemthvis	didebuli	skhivi	gamobrtzqkinda.		
	***	A glamorous light for me			has been lit.		
3	*	მკვიდრად	ააშენა,	ვინაც	ააშენა		
	**	mkvidrad	aashena,	vinats	aashena		

	***	How solidly	built	By whom	it is built		
4	*	და	ცით	დაამშვენა	დიდი	ნიკორწმინდა	
	**	da	tsith	daamshvena	didi	nikortzminda	
	***	And	adorned with skies,		Great	Nikortsminda	
5	*	გზნებით	დამკარგავი	გრძნეულ	ჩუქურთმებით,		
	**	gznebith	damkargavi	grdzneul	chuqurthmebith,		
	***	Losing in passion,		The one who comes,			
6	*	ქარგით	დამქარგავი	ნაზი	ჩუქურთმებით,		
	**	qargith	damqargavi	nazi	chuqurthmebith,		
	***	The beams are so tender with magic lace carved.					
7	*	ნეტა	ვინ	აზიდა,	ან	როგორ	აზიდა,
	**	neta	vin	azida,	an	rogor	azida,
	***	I wonder	who	raised,	and	how	did he raise,
8	*	რა	ხელმა	აზიდა	მალლა	ნიკორწმინდა!	
	**	ra	khelma	azida	magrla	nikortzminda!	
	***	What	hands	ever raised	Great	Nikortsminda!	
9	*	რა	განძი	გვექონია,	რა	მხნე,	რა მდიდარი,
	**	ra	gandzi	gvqonia,	ra	mkhne,	ra mdidari,
	***	A treasure we own!			How	bold and	how rich,
10	*	ჟღერს	ქვის	ჰარმონია -	დარობს	რამდი	დარი.
	**	zhgrers	qvis	harmonia -	darobs	ramdi	dari.
	***	Harmony through stone like songs we may reach.					
11	*	კარგად	გამოჰკვეთა,	ვინაც	გამოჰკვეთა,		
	**	kargad	gamohketha,	vinats	gamohkvetha,		
	***	Well cut! Oh, well cut!		By whom	it is cut,		

12	*	სიბრძნით	გამოჰკვეთა	მძლავრი	ნიკორწმინდა.		
	**	sibrdnith	gamohkvetha	mdzlavri	nikortzminda.		
	***	Great Nikortsminda with wisdom is cut!					
13	*	აქ	რომ	თაღებია,	სვეტთა	შეკონება,	
	**	aq	rom	thagrebia,	svettha	shekoneba,	
	***	The arches round here,			the pillars well tied,		
14	*	ისე	ნაგებია,	სიზმრის	გეგონება.		
	**	ise	nagebia,	sizmrisk	gegoneba.		
	***	They look as if come		from our dreams and skies.			
15	*	ნეტა	ვინ	ააგო,	რა	ნიჭმა	ააგო,
	**	neta	vin	aago,	ra	nitchma	aago,
	***	I wonder,	who	built it,	a man of mercy,		
16	*	რა	მადლმა	ააგო	სვეტი -	ნიკორწმინდა!	
	**	ra	madlma	aago	sveti -	nikortzminda!	
	***	A man of gift made			Great	Nikortsminda!	
17	*	ნეტა ვინ აანთო, რომ გრძნობით აანთო			და წლებს გადაანდო ნათლად ნიკორწმინდა!		
	**	neta vin aantho, rom grdnobith aantho			da tzlebs gadaando nathlad nikortzminda!		
	***	Who lit the bright fire for us to amaze,			intrusting to years your beauty and fame!		
18	*	ხვეულთ	დიადემა	ვხედავ -	რა	უხვია,	
	**	khveulth	diadema	vkhedav -	ra	ukhvia,	
	***	The grandeur of twines		is in abundance,			
19	*	დრომ	მას	დიადემა	კრძალვით	შეუხვია.	
	**	drom	mas	diadema	krdzalvith	sheukhvia,	
	***	Time	wrapped a tiara in a gentle bondage.				
	*	ნეტა	ვინ	მოჰქარგა,	და	როცა	მოჰქარგა,

20	**	neta	vin	mohqarga,	da	rotsa	mohqarga,
	***	But	who	embroidered,	and	when	embroidered
21	*	შიგ	მიჰყარგ-მოჰყარგა		გზნება -	ნიკორწმინდა!	
	**	shig	mihqarg-mohqarga		gzneba -	nikortzminda!	
	***	With passion in tints, Great Nikortsminda!					
22	*	მკვეთრი და	მოქნილი	ხაზთა	დასრულება		
	**	mkvethri da	moqnili	khaztha	dasruleba		
	***	So sharp and		so mild	are ends of the lines		
23	*	არის	ამოდქმნილი	ნატურის	აღსრულება.		
	**	aris	amodqmnili	natvris	agrsruleba.		
	***	It feels – a dream fine came true with man’s mind.					
24	*	ეს	ის	სიმკვეთრეა,	ეს	ის	სიმდიდრეა,
	**	es	is	simkvethrea,	es	is	simdidrea,
	***	It is		due to the strength,	it is		due to the wealth,
25	*	რაითაც	მკვიდრია	ძეგლი	ნიკორწმინდა.		
	**	raithats	mkvidria	dzegli	nikortzminda.		
	***	Great Nikortsminda is solid and firm.					
26	*	შენის	სულმნათისად		ასვლა	ეროვანი:	
	**	shenis	sulmnathisad		asvla	erovani:	
	***	Your rise to the skies -			The rise	of the nation,	
27	*	ყელი	გუმბათისა	მაღალღეროვანი,			
	**	qkeli	gumbathisa	magralgrerovani,			
	***	High neck of the dome - What a creation!					
28	*	ცამდის	აღერილი,	ნებით	აღერილი		
	**	tsamdis	agrerili,	nebith	agrerili		

	***	That reaches the Heavens		and reaches with will,		
29	*	სათნოდ	აღერილი	გშვენის,	ნიკორწმინდა!	
	**	sathnod	agrerili	gshvenis,	nikortzminda!	
	***	It reaches with virtue,		with beauty to fill!		
30	*	მზერა	ქართულია	სივრცის	დაუნჯებით,	
	**	mzera	qarthulia	sivrtsis	daunjebith,	
	***	It looks with a gaze, that is Georgian true,				
31	*	თვალი	გართულია	ფრთიან	ფასკუნჯებით:	
	**	thvali	garthulia	prthian	paskunjebith:	
	***	With fire-birds are eyes in mute space amused.				
32	*	ფრთები, ფრთები გინდა კიდევ ფრთები გვინდა, გინდა დაეუფლო სივრცეს, ნიკორწმინდა!				
	**	prthebi, prthebi ginda kidev prthebi gvinda, ginda daeuplo sivrtses, nikortzminda!				
	***	To conquer the space you long for more wings, Great Nikortsminda, more wings we now need!				
33	*	შენ,	ფრთამოღულუნეს	ჟამთა	სიმაღლეზე,	
	**	shen,	prthamogrugrunes	zhamtha	simagrleze,	
	***	A singer through wings		on the height of times,		
34	*	ჩვენი	საუკუნე	გიცავს,	უახლესი:	
	**	chveni	saukune	gitsavs	uakhlesi:	
	***	Defended may feel by hands of our time.				
35	*	მძლავრი	ხელოვნება,	ხალხის	ხელოვნება -	
	**	mdzlavri	khelovneba,	khalkhis	khelovneba -	
	***	The power	of the arts,	the art of our folk,		
36	*	ბრწყინავს	საქართველოს		ქებად	ნიკორწმინდა!
	**	brtzqkinavs	saqarthvelos		qebad	nikortzminda!
	***	In praise of Georgia will shine evermore!				

	* Words in Georgian language
	** English transliteration of the Georgian words
	*** English synonyms of Georgian words

¹ Source of information: book by Inness Merabishvili “Galaktion Tabidze (poems), pages 84-87, year publication - 2005.

3) With the help of the facilitators of the learning process, students are distributed between 6 groups in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson.

4) The facilitators invite the groups to take their places around 6 tables in the same way as was done during the fifth lesson. All groups receive one flip sheet and one black marker. All formed groups receive one list, where 6 Georgian words are written, as well as the pronunciation of Georgian words using a combination of the corresponding English letters and English synonyms of these Georgian words. Section II of this self-instruction manual contains, on pages 314-319, “Supplement to Lesson No. 68” on three pages, where all 6 tables are given for each of the 6 groups, 2 tables on one page. You need to make copies of these three pages and use scissors to prepare separate table texts for each group.

5) The facilitators explain the essence of the task to all groups: “Each group has a list of 6 Georgian words. Listeners of the group use a marker to write only words in Georgian on a flip sheet: each of the 3 members of the group must write two words in Georgian. Combinations of English letters and English synonyms of Georgian words are given only to make it easier for listeners to understand, learn and remember the pronunciation of Georgian words.”

An example of compiling flip sheet No. 1 by group No. 1:

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 68
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. მაქვს მკერდს მიდებული ქნარი, როგორც მინდა. 2. ჩემთვის დიდებული სხივი გამობრწყინდა. 3. მკვიდრად ააშენა, ვინაც ააშენა 	

Group No. 1	Lesson No. 68
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. და ცით დაამშვენა დიდი ნიკორწმინდა 5. გზნებით დამკარგავი გრძნეულ ჩუქურთმებით, 6. ქარგით დამქარგავი ნაზი ჩუქურთმებით, 	

6) After the simultaneous completion of group work, the presentation of the work done begins. The presentation part is carried out exactly in the same way as during the fifth lesson [Note: before starting to read the 36 lines of the poem, each student must first mention the title of the poem - “ქებათა ქება ნიკორწმინდას“ (“qebatha qeba nikortzmindas”)].

This concludes the sixty-eighth lesson and our learning process.

Literature used:

1. "Self-teacher of Russian and Georgian languages." Compiled and published by S. Mdivanov. Fifth edition. Tiflis. Speedy printing house of A. Kutateladze. Nick. st., no. 21. 1903 (Allowed by censorship. Tiflis, February 8, 1903).
2. "The newest self-instruction manual for the Georgian language." Publication of the Georgian Press Association. Tiflis. Printing house of the Georgian Printing Association. Golovin st. 26. Year of publication - 1918.
3. "Self-instruction manual of the Georgian language." Author - George Tsibakhashvili. The third edition was printed by the Tbilisi State University Publishing House. Year of publication - 1978
4. "Electronic reference book of grammar of the Georgian language" (in Georgian). Web address: <http://ena.ge/georgian-grammar-electronic-book>
5. "Georgian-English and English-Georgian dictionary and phrasebook". Compiled by Nicholas Awde & Thea Khitarishvili. Published by Hippocrene books, New York. Third printing. Year of publication - 2006.
6. "Georgian-English dictionary". Compiled by Tamar and Isidore Gvarjaladze.
7. "Galaktion Tabidze (poems)". Translated by Inness Merabishvili. Tbilisi State University Press. The Byron Society of Georgia. Tbilisi. Year of publication - 2005.

The author of this manual expresses deep gratitude to the staff of the National Parliamentary Library of Georgia and the National scientific library of Georgia for their assistance in finding the necessary literature

491.71-825 + 499.962.1-825

САМОУЧИТЕЛЬ

РУССКАГО И ГРУЗИНСКАГО ЯЗЫКОВЪ

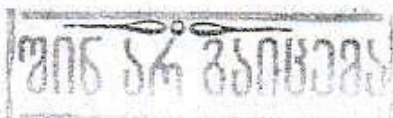
Состав. и изд. С. Мдивановымъ.

Издание пятое.

ბ. უ - 25631

თვით მასწავლებელი

რუსულსა და ქართულს ენისა.



შედგენილი და გამოცემული

სერგეი მდივანოვიძისაგან.

მეხუთედ გამოცემული.



ТИФЛИСЪ

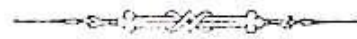
Скоропечатная типографія А. Кутателадзе. Ник. ул., № 21.

1903

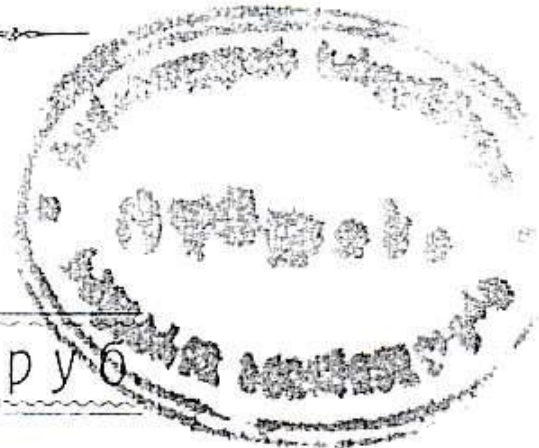


НОВѢЙШІЙ САМОУЧИТЕЛЬ
Грузинскаго языка

4147.538
3



Цѣна 5 руб



ТИФЛИСЪ,
Типографія „Грузинскаго Т-ва Печати“. Головинскій, 25.
1913.

Г. И. ЦИБАХАШВИЛИ

САМОУЧИТЕЛЬ ГРУЗИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

(элементарный курс)

ИЗДАНИЕ ТРЕТЬЕ

R
522014
2



ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО ТБИЛИССКОГО УНИВЕРСИТЕТА
ТБИЛИСИ 1978



HIPPOCRENE DICTIONARY
AND PHRASEBOOK

GEORGIAN

GEORGIAN-
ENGLISH

ENGLISH-
GEORGIAN

Nicholas Awde
and
Thea Khitarishvili

ქართულ-ინგლისური ლექსიკონი

შემდგენლები:

თამარ და ისიდორე გვარჯალაძეები

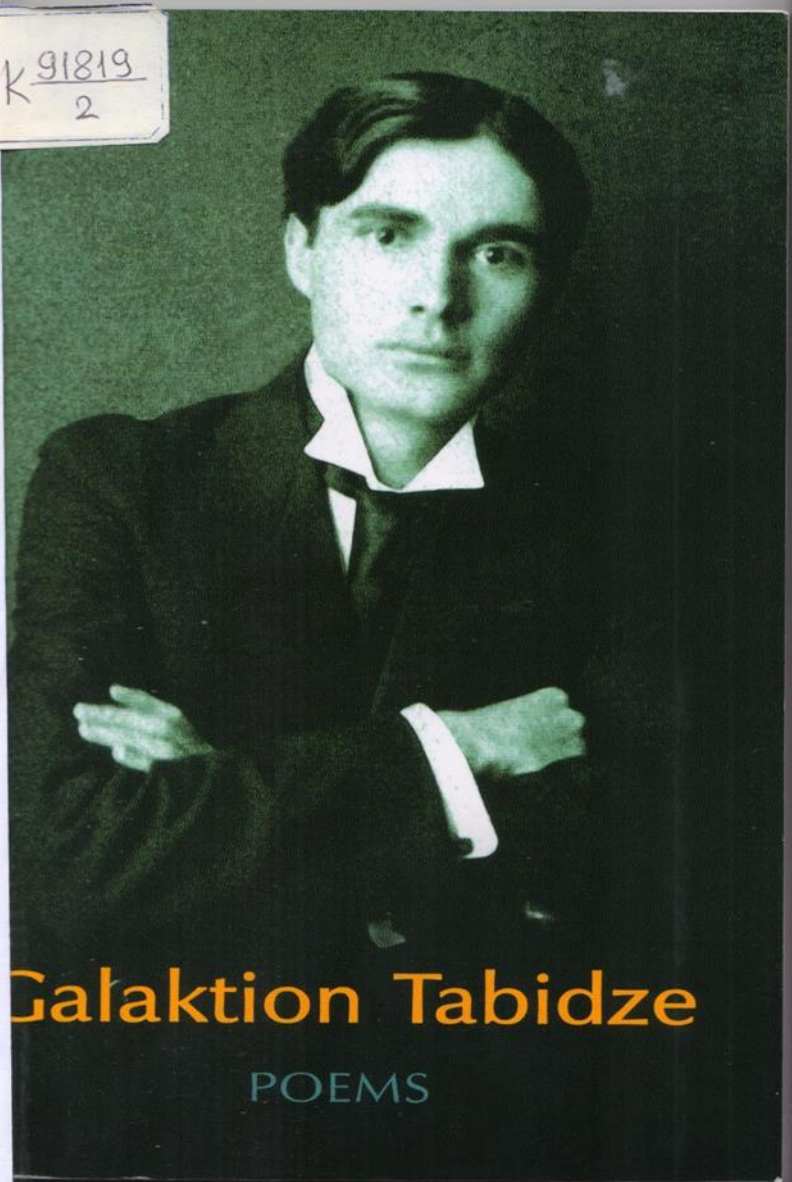
GEORGIAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

Compiled by THAMAR and ISIDOR GVARJALADZE

გამომცემლობა „საქართველოს მაცნე“

თბილისი

K 91819
2



Galaktion Tabidze
POEMS

გალაკტიონ ტაბიძე

ლექსები

ინგლისური თარგმანი ინესა მერაბიშვილისა



თბილისის სახელმწიფო უნივერსიტეტის
ბეჭდვითი ცენტრი

საქართველოს ბაირონის საზოგადოება

თბილისი
2005

GALAKTION TABIDZE

POEMS

Translated by Innes Merabishvili



TBILISI STATE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Byron Society of Georgia

Tbilisi
2005



ქებათა ქება ნიკორწმინდას

მაქვს მკერდს მიდებული
ქნარი, როგორც მინდა.
ჩემთვის დიდებული
სხივი გამობრწყინდა.
მკვიდრად ააშენა,
ვინაც ააშენა
და ცით დაამშვენა
დიდი ნიკორწმინდა.

გზნებით დამკარგავი
გრძნეულ ჩუქურთმებით,
ქარგით დამკარგავი
ნაზი შუქურთმებით,
ნეტა ვინ აზიდა,
ან როგორ აზიდა,
რა ხელმა აზიდა
მაღლა ნიკორწმინდა!

რა განძი გვექონია,
რა მხნე, რა მდიდარი,
ჟღერს ქვის ჰარმონია –
დარობს რამდი დარი.
კარგად გამოკვეთა,
ვინაც გამოკვეთა,
სიბრძნით გამოკვეთა
მძლავრი ნიკორწმინდა.

აქ რომ თაღებია,
სვეტთა შეკონება,

In Praise of Nikortsminda²¹

I'm holding my lyre
As close as I wish,
A glamorous light
For me has been lit.
How solidly built
And adorned with skies,
Great Nikortsminda,
That rises so high.

Losing in passion,
The one who comes,
The beams are so tender
With magic lace carved.
I wonder who raised,
And how did he raise?
What hands ever raised
Great Nikortsminda!

A treasure we own!
How bold and how rich,
Harmony through stone
Like songs we may reach.
Well cut! Oh, well cut!
By whom it is cut,
Great Nikortsminda
With wisdom is cut!

The arches round here,
The pillars well tied,

ისე ნაგებია,
სიზმრის გეგონება.
ნეტა ვინ ააგო,
რა ნიჭმა ააგო,
რა მადლმა ააგო
სვეტი – ნიკორწმინდა!

გრძნობ, ვით დიადია
თორმეტი სარკმელი,
ხაზებში ანთია
ცეცხლი მისარკმელი:
ნეტა ვინ აანთო,
რომ გრძნობით აანთო
და წლებს გადაანდო
ნათლად ნიკორწმინდა!

ხვეულთ დიადება
ვხედავ – რა უხვია,
ღრომ მას დიადება
კრძალვით შეუხვია.
ნეტა ვინ მოჰქარგა,
და როცა მოჰქარგა,
შიგ მიჰქარგ-მოჰქარგა
გზნება – ნიკორწმინდა!

მკვეთრი და მოჭილი
ხაზთა დასრულება
არის ამოდჭმული
ნატვრის ასრულება.
ეს ის სიმკვეთრეა,
ეს ის სიმდიდრეა,
რათაც მკვიდრია
ძველი ნიკორწმინდა.

They look as if come
From our dreams and skies.
I wonder, who built it,
A man of mercy?
A man of gift made
Great Nikortsmina!

You feel what is meant
By fire here in lines,
With twelve great casements
All burning till night.
Who lit the bright fire
For us to amaze,
Entrusting to years
Your beauty and fame!

The grandeur of twines
Is in abundance,
Time wrapped a tiara
In a gentle bondage.
But who embroidered?
And when embroidered
With passion in tints,
Great Nokortsmina?

So sharp and so mild
Are ends of the lines –
It feels – a dream fine
Came true with man's mind.
It's due to the strength,
It's due to the wealth,
Great Nikortsmina
Is solid and firm.

შენის სულმნათისად
ასვლა ეროვანი:
ყელი გუმბათისა
მაღალღეროვანი,
ცამდის აღერილი,
ნებით აღერილი,
სათნოდ აღერილი
გშვენის, ნიკორწმინდა!

მზერა ქართულია
სივრცის დაუნჯებით,
თვალი გართულია
ფრთიან ფასკუნჯებით:
ფრთები, ფრთები გინდა
კიდევ ფრთები გვინდა,
გინდა დაეუფლო
სივრცეს, ნიკორწმინდა!

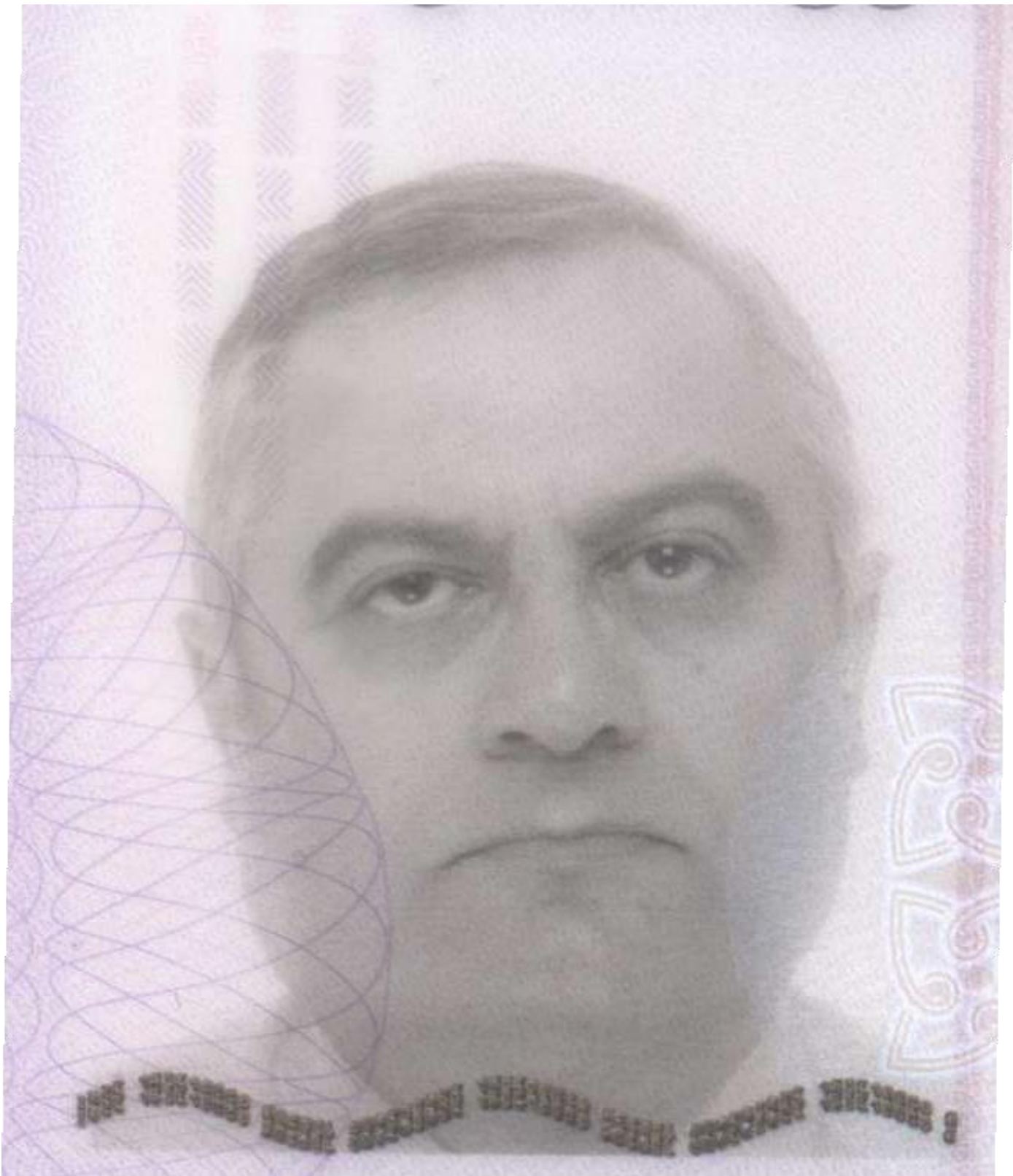
შენ, ფრთამოდულუნეს
ფამთა სიმაღლეზე,
ჩვენი საუკუნე
გიცავს, უახლესი:
მძლავრი ხელოვნება,
ხალხის ხელოვნება –
ბრწყინავს საქართველოს
ქებად ნიკორწმინდა!

1947

Your rise to the skies –
The rise of the nation,
High neck of the dome –
What a creation!
That reaches the Heavens
And reaches with will,
It reaches with virtue,
With beauty to fill!

It looks with a gaze,
That is Georgian true,
With fire-birds are eyes
In mute space amused.
To conquer the space
You long for more wings,
Great Nikortsinda,
More wings we now need!

A singer through wings
On the height of times,
Defended may feel
By hands of our time.
The power of the arts,
The art of our folk,
In praise of Georgia
Will shine evermore!



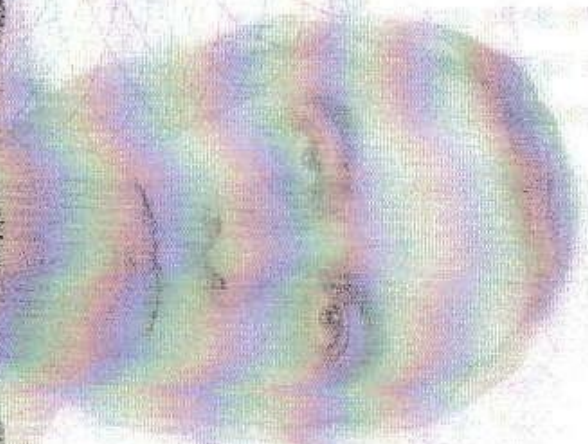
არჩილ ორდენიძე

АРЧИЛ ОРДЕНИДЗЕ
ARCHIL ORDENIDZE

საქართველო

საქართველოს შინაგან საქმეთა სამინისტრო

IDENTITY
CARD



სახელი / FIRST NAME

არჩილ

ARCHIL

გვარი / LAST NAME

ურდანიძე

ORDENIDZE

სქ / CIT

სქები / SEX

პირადი № / PERSONAL No

GEO

მ / M

01005005322

დაბადების თარიღი

სამომავლის ვადა

DATE OF BIRTH

DATE OF EXPIRY

10.04.1960

08.08.2026

ბარათის № / CARD No

15IE10220

ხელმოწერა
SIGNATURE

საქართველო

ს მ რ ტ ი ფ ი კ ა ტ ი

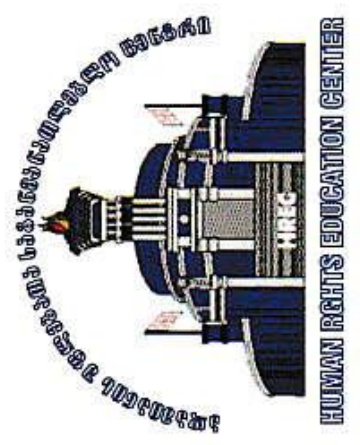
იძლევა ბ-ნ აბ ხომ თბფნიტხ

მასზე, რომ მონაწილეობა მიიღო სამოქალაქო ინსტიტუციონალიზმის განვითარების ფონდის მიერ დაფინანსებული და ადამიანის უფლებათა საგანმანათლებლო ცენტრის მიერ განხორციელებული პროექტის "გავშვის უფლებათა სწავლების ევროპულ სტანდარტებთან დასაბუთების ხელშეწყობა ქვემო ქართლის რეგიონში" ფარგლებში ჩატარებულ ტრენინგში "ადამიანის უფლებათა განათლება გავშვისათვის", ორგანიზებული ქრუსთავში, 2009 წლის 5-6 მაის 12-13 აგვისტოებზე, დაფუძნებული ევროპის საბჭოს სახელმძღვანელოზე "კომპასიტო"



გივი მიქანაძე
პროექტის დირექტორი

HREC



English translation of the Georgian text of the certificate

CERTIFICATE

given to Mr. Archil Ordenidze

that he took part in the training “Teaching human rights for children”, which was organized and conducted within the framework of the project “Promoting the convergence of teaching children’s rights in the Kwelo Kartli region to European standards”, carried out by the “Center for Human Rights Education” on the basis of the textbook Council of Europe “Compasito” and with the financial assistance of the “Fund for the Development of Civil Institutionalism”, December 5-6 and 12-13, 2009 in the city of Rustavi.

Signature: Givi Mikanadze, project director